

LATIN

1869

Standard Classical Works.

## Latin Text-Books.

**Arnold's First and Second Latin Book and Praetial Grammar.\*** Revised and Corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D.  
12mo. 359 pages.

**Arnold's First Latin Book;\*** remodelled and rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M. 12mo. 302 pages.

**Arnold's Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.\*** Revised and Corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D.  
12mo. 356 pages.

**Cornelius Nepos,\*** with Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, &c. 12mo. 350 pages.

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all of the leading educational institutions in the United States.

**A Second Latin Book;\*** Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a complete Analytical Syntax, in a Series of Lessons and Exercises involving the construction, analysis, and reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., of Brown University. (Recently published.) 12mo. 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's edition of "Arnold's First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

**Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament.** 12mo.  
291 pages.

**Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.** With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo. 403 pages.

**Cicero's Select Orations.** With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.



Ms Sheila T Lambrinos  
425151 Irish Lake Rd  
RR 1  
Markdale ON N0C 1H0

## Standard Classical Works.

**Cicero de Officiis.** With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

**Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

**Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the Use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

**Quintus Curtius:** Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 355 pages.

**Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.** With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGEON. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

**The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

**Tacitus' Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

**Virgil's Æneid.\*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

---


## Greek Text-Books.

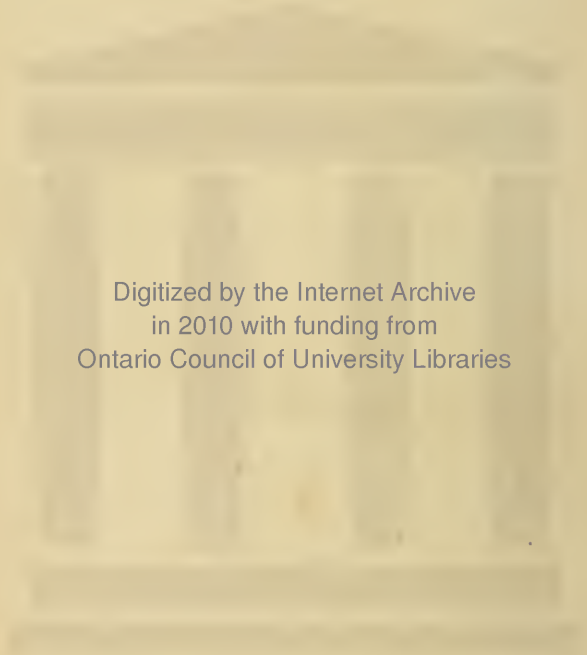
**A First Greek Book\* and Introductory Reader.**

By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book," "Second Latin Book," &c. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

**Acts of the Apostles,** according to the text of AUGUSTUS HARN, with Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

**Arnold's First Greek Book,\*** on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

 SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2010 with funding from  
Ontario Council of University Libraries







ARNOLD'S  
FIRST LATIN BOOK;

REMODELLED AND REWRITTEN,

AND ADAPTED TO THE

OLLENDORFF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, P. D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

TWENTY-EIGHTH EDITION.

NEW YORK:  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,  
90, 92 & 94 GRAND STREET.

1869.

---

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1851, by

D. APPLETON & CO.,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.

---



## P R E F A C E.

---

ARNOLD'S *First and Second Latin Book* was introduced to the American public some five years since, under the editorial care of Professor Spencer. As the system was, at that time, quite new in this country, and comparatively so in England, the American editor did not think it best "to make any material alteration in the original work." The marked favor with which the volume was at once received, and the almost unprecedented success which has since attended it, are a sufficient proof of its excellence. The test of the class-room and the improved methods of instruction have, however, convinced teachers that, with many rare merits, and with a general plan most happily adapted to the wants of the beginner in Latin, it was still, in some important respects, quite incomplete in its execution and details. The present volume, undertaken at the request of the publishers, is the result of an attempt to remove these defects, and thus to render

the work worthy of yet higher favor and success. The entire book has been rewritten and many important additions have been made.

The Latin of the *First and Second Latin Book* has been retained, so far as consistent with our purpose; but as it has been found necessary to add many new selections, care has been taken to secure pure classic Latin, by resorting exclusively to the pages of Caesar and Cicero.

In the preparation of this book, it has been a leading object with the editor, so to classify and arrange the various topics as to *simplify*, and, as far as possible, to *remove* the disheartening difficulties too often encountered by the learner at the very outset in the study of an ancient language. He has accordingly endeavored so to present each new subject as to enable the beginner fully to master it, before he is called upon to perplex himself with its more difficult combinations. The lessons have been prepared with constant reference to the Ollendorff method of instruction, while, at the same time, special pains have been taken to present a complete and systematic outline, both of the grammatical forms and of the elementary principles of the language. An effort has thus been made to combine the respective advantages of two systems, distinct in themselves, but by no means inconsistent with each other.

In the earlier portions of the book, the exercises for translation consist of two paragraphs of Latin sentences and two of English,

the first of each being designed to illustrate the particular topic which chances to be the subject of the lesson, and the second to furnish miscellaneous examples on the various subjects already learned. Thus each lesson becomes at once an *advance* and a *review*.

For convenience of reference and for the purposes of general review, a summary of Paradigms and an outline of Syntax have been appended to the lessons. The Syntax will be found, it is hoped, to be an improvement, at least in point of classification and arrangement, upon that ordinarily presented in Latin Grammars. In a Second Latin Book, now in preparation—being at once a Reader and an Exercise Book—the editor contemplates a fuller development and illustration of the Latin Syntax, in a series of exercises on the principle of *analysis* and *synthesis*.

The present volume, as already intimated, has been prepared *mainly* from Arnold's *First and Second Latin Book*; the editor has, however, had before him numerous other works of a kindred character, from some of which he has derived valuable aid. Among these may be mentioned, in addition to the various Latin Grammars in use in this country and in England, Allen's *New Latin Delectus*; *Analysis of Latin Verbs*, by the same author; and Pinnock's *First Latin Grammar*; together with numerous other elementary works, among which the editor is happy to specify the *First Latin Book*, by Professors M'Clintock and Crooks.

Professor Spencer's edition of Arnold's *Latin Prose Compo*

sition, one of the volumes of the excellent Classical Series published by the Messrs. Appleton, has been consulted with much advantage.

For valuable assistance in the preparation of the Syntax, the editor is happy to acknowledge his indebtedness to Greene's Analysis of the English Language.

A. HARKNESS.

Providence, July 18, 1851.



# CONTENTS.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.		Page.
I. Letters . . . . .		1
II. Syllables . . . . .		2
III. Quantity . . . . .		2
IV. Accentuation . . . . .		2
V. Sounds of the Letters . . . . .		3
I. The Continental Method . . . . .		3
II. The English Method . . . . .		4

## LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

Lesson.		
I. Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate . . . . .		7
II. Verbs.—First Conjugation . . . . .		8
III. First Conjugation—continued . . . . .		11
IV. Second Conjugation . . . . .		12
V. Third Conjugation . . . . .		14
VI. Fourth Conjugation . . . . .		16
VII. Four Conjugations.—Plural Number . . . . .		17
VIII. Nouns.—Nominative Case . . . . .		19
IX. Nominative Case—continued . . . . .		23
X. Vocative Case . . . . .		24
XI. Apposition.—Modified Subject . . . . .		26
XII. Genitive Case.—Modified Subject . . . . .		27
XIII. Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate . . . . .		31
XIV. Accusative—continued.—Adverbial Modifiers . . . . .		34
XV. Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate . . . . .		35
XVI. Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate . . . . .		38
XVII. First Declension . . . . .		40
XVIII. Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ūs</i> and <i>ūm</i> . . . . .		43

Lesson.	Page.
XIX. Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ēr</i> and <i>īr</i> . . .	46
XX. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension . . .	47
XXI. First and Second Declension—continued . . .	51
XXII. First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation . . . . .	55
XXIII. Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I. . . . .	55
XXIV. Third Declension.—Class II. . . . .	58
XXV. Third Declension.—Class III. . . . .	60
XXVI. Third Declension.—Class IV. . . . .	63
XXVII. Third Declension.—Genitives in <i>iūm</i> .—Gender . . .	66
XXVIII. Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other	68
XXIX. Adjectives.—Third Declension . . . . .	71
XXX. Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension	75
XXXI. Nouns.—Fifth Declension . . . . .	78
XXXII. Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender . . .	81
XXXIII. Verbs.— <i>Esse</i> , to be.—Predicate, <i>Essē</i> with a Noun or an Adjective . . . . .	85
XXXIV. Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with <i>Essē</i> in the Pre- dicate . . . . .	87
XXXV. Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations . . . . .	90
XXXVI. Third Conjugation.—Class I.— <i>Second Root the same as the First</i> . . . . .	93
XXXVII. Third Conjugation.—Class II.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i> . . . . .	96
XXXVIII. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i> . . . . .	97
XXXIX. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i> . . . . .	100
XL. Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity— <i>Radical Vowel lengthened (and often changed)</i> . . .	103
XLI. Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity— <i>Reduplication</i> . . . . .	105
XLII. Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity— <i>Second Root after the analogy of other conjugations</i>	107
XLIII. Subjunctive Mood . . . . .	110
XLIV. Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose . . . . .	113
XLV. Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation	115
XLVI. Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pro- nouns . . . . .	119
XLVII. Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations . . . . .	123

Lesson.	Page
XLVIII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in <i>iš</i> of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	127
XLIX. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun . . . . .	130
L. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	132
LI. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles . . . . .	134
LII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Indefinite and Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	136
LIII. Verb <i>Essě</i> , to be . . . . .	138
LIV. Verb <i>Essě</i> , continued.—Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	142
LV. Compounds of <i>Essě</i> .—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numerical Adjectives . . . . .	145
LVI. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Continued Action . . . . .	148
LVII. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action . . . . .	151
LVIII. Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice . . . . .	154
LIX. Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice . . . . .	158
LX. Imperative Mood—Active and Passive . . . . .	160
LXI. Infinitive Mood . . . . .	163
LXII. Participles.—Ablative Absolute . . . . .	166
LXIII. Gerunds and Supines . . . . .	169
LXIV. Participle in <i>dūs</i> . . . . .	172
LXV. First Conjugation . . . . .	174
LXVI. Second Conjugation . . . . .	175
LXVII. Third Conjugation . . . . .	176
LXVIII. Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	177
LXIX. Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object . . . . .	178
LXX. Deponent Verbs . . . . .	180
LXXI. Irregular Verbs.— <i>Possě, Vellě, Nollě, Mallě</i> . . . . .	182
LXXII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Ferrě, Fjērī</i> . . . . .	185
LXXIII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Irě, Eděřě</i> . . . . .	189
LXXIV. Periphrastic Conjugations . . . . .	191
LXXV. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	193
LXXVI. Impersonal Periphrastic . . . . .	195
LXXVII. Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions . . . . .	197
LXXVIII. Conjunctions . . . . .	199
LXXIX. Subjunctive Mood with <i>ūt, nē, quō</i> . . . . .	201

Lesson.	Page
LXXX. Subjunctive with <i>quimāññs</i> , <i>quñ</i> , and other Conjunctions . . . . .	203
LXXXI. Interrogative Sentences . . . . .	205
LXXXII. Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses and with <i>quim</i> . . . . .	207
LXXXIII. Participles . . . . .	209
LXXXIV. Participles, continued . . . . .	212
LXXXV. Derivation of Nouns . . . . .	215
LXXXVI. Derivation of Adjectives . . . . .	217
LXXXVII. Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs . . . . .	219
LXXXVIII. Composition of Words . . . . .	222

## PARADIGMS, &amp;c.

1. Nouns.—Endings of Genitive Singular . . . . .	227
2. Gender . . . . .	227
3. First Declension . . . . .	227
4. Second Declension . . . . .	228
5. Third Declension . . . . .	229
6. Fourth Declension . . . . .	232
7. Fifth Declension . . . . .	233
8. Case-Endings of Substantives . . . . .	233
9. Table of Genders . . . . .	234
10. Adjectives.—First and Second Declension . . . . .	235
11. Third Declension . . . . .	236
12. Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	238
13. Numerals . . . . .	238
14. Substantive Pronouns . . . . .	239
15. Adjective Pronouns . . . . .	239
16. Verbs.— <i>Essē</i> . . . . .	241
17. Infinitive Endings . . . . .	243
18. First Conjugation . . . . .	243
19. Second Conjugation . . . . .	245
20. Third Conjugation . . . . .	247
21. Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	250
22. Formation of Second Root . . . . .	252
23. Deponent Verbs . . . . .	252
24. Irregular Verbs . . . . .	252
25. Periphrastic Conjugations . . . . .	257
26. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	257



## SYNTAX.

	Page
Introduction . . . . .	259

## CHAPTER I.

*Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.*

Section I. Subject . . . . .	260
“ II. Predicate . . . . .	260

## CHAPTER II.

*Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.*

Section I. Use of Modifiers . . . . .	262
“ II. Modifiers of Nouns . . . . .	262
“ III. Modifiers of Adjectives . . . . .	263
“ IV. Modifiers of Verbs . . . . .	264
“ “ § I. Objects . . . . .	265
“ “ § II. Adverbial Modifiers . . . . .	268
“ V. Modifiers of Adverbs . . . . .	271

## CHAPTER III.

<i>Uses of Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines</i> . . . . .	271
---	-----

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM . . . . .	275
CAUTIONS . . . . .	277
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	279
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	291

## EXPLANATIONS.

The small numerals above the line in the Exercises refer to *Differences of Idiom*, page 275 ; the small letters to *Cautions*, page 277.

The numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to articles in the body of the work.

In the Exercises, words connected by hyphens are to be rendered into Latin by a single word ; as, *natural-to-man*, hūmānūs ; *it-is*, est, &c

# INTRODUCTION.

---

## PRONUNCIATION.

THE two Methods, the Continental and the English, which at present prevail in the pronunciation of Latin, differ from each other chiefly in the sounds of the vowels; we shall accordingly first state the settled principles in which they agree (as accent, quantity, &c.), and then present the vowel sounds of each separately, hoping, however, that, in this country, the Continental Method will soon commend itself to general favor. With the important merit of uniform consistency, it is, at the same time, the only pronunciation intelligible on the Continent of Europe, the very place where the American scholar will most need his Latin as a medium of communication.

### I. LETTERS.

The Latin Language has six characters, or letters, representing vowel sounds, and nineteen representing consonant sounds.

REM. 1. The vowel sounds are *a, e, i, o, u,* and *y*; the consonants are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*, which is not used in Latin.

REM. 2. Two vowels sometimes unite in sound, and form a diphthong, as in English; e. g., *æ* in *Cæsar*.

REM. 3. *X* and *z*\* are called double consonants. *l, m, n,* and *r*, liquids, and the other consonants, with the exception of *h* and *s*, mutes.

---

\* *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*.

## II. SYLLABLES.

In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade*, are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo-re*, *vi-ce*, *a-cu-te*, *per-sua-de*.

## III. QUANTITY.

Syllables are, in *quantity* or *length*, either *long*, *short*, or *common* (i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short).

1. A syllable is *long* in quantity:

1) When it contains a *diphthong*, as the first syllable of *cædo*.

2) When its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any *two consonants*, except a *mute* followed by a *liquid*; as the second syllables of *erexit* and *magister*.

2. A syllable is *short*, when its vowel is followed by another vowel, or a diphthong, as the second syllable of *indies*.

REM. The letter *h* does not affect the quantity of the preceding vowel

The quantity of syllables, when not determined by these rules, will be indicated in the vocabularies (and, in some instances, in the exercises) by the dash — when *long*, by the curve ~ when *short*, and by the two together ≈ when *common*.

## IV. ACCENTUATION.

1. The primary (or principal) accent, or stress of voice, is placed:

1) In words of two syllables, always on the first; as, *ho'mo*, a man.



2) In words of more than two syllables, on the *penult* (the last syllable but one), if that is *long* in quantity; otherwise on the *antepenult* (the last syllable but two); as, *rādī'cīs*, *con'sūlīs*.

2. An additional accent is placed on each second syllable preceding the *primary* accent; as, *dē'monstrātūr*.

## V SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

### I. THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.\*

#### 1. *The Sounds of the Vowels.*

The Continental sounds of the vowels are as follows —

a . . . . .	ä in <i>father</i> ; e. g.,	ārīs.
e . . . . .	{ 1. ā in <i>made</i> ; e. g., 2. ě in <i>met</i> ; e. g.,	ēdīt.
i . . . . .		āmēt.
o . . . . .	{ 1. ē in <i>me</i> ; e. g., 2. ě in <i>no</i> ; e. g.,	īrĕ.
u . . . . .		ōră.
y . . . . .	{ 1. ō in <i>no</i> ; e. g., 2. ȝ in <i>nor</i> ; e. g.,	āmōr.
		ūnă.
	ô in <i>do</i> ; e. g.,	ūnă.
	ē in <i>me</i> ; e. g.,	nŷmphă.

REM. *Y* is used only in words derived from the Greek.

These sounds are uniformly the same in all situations, except as modified by *quantity* and *accent*, (III and IV.)

#### 2. *The Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

æ and œ . . .	ā in <i>made</i> ; e. g.,	ætās, cœlŷm.
au . . .	ou in <i>out</i> ; e. g.,	aurŷm.

REM. The vowels in *ei* and *eu* are generally pronounced separately.

---

\* For the Continental Pronunciation the editor is indebted to the kindness of Mr. George W. Greene, Instructor in Modern Languages in Brown University.

### 3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The pronunciation of the consonants is nearly the same as in English, though it varies somewhat in different countries.

## II. THE ENGLISH METHOD.

### 1. *The Sounds of the Vowels* \*

In the English method, the vowels generally have the long or short English sounds: the length of the sound, however, is not dependent upon the quantity of the vowel, but must be determined by its situation or accent.

(a) In all *monosyllables*, vowels have

1) The *long* sound if at the end of the word; as, *si*, *re*.

2) The *short* sound if followed by a consonant; as, *sit*, *rem*; except *post*, *monosyllables* in *es*, and *plural cases* in *os*; as, *hos* (a plural case).

(b) In an *accented penult*, vowels have

1) The *long* sound before a vowel, diphthong, single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*; as, *deus* *pater*, *patres*; except *tibi* and *sibi*.

2) The *short* sound before a double consonant, or any two single consonants except a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*; as, *bellum*, *rexit*.

(c) In any *accented syllable* except the penult, vowels have

1) The *long* sound before a vowel or diphthong; as *e* in *éadem*.

---

\* The system of vowel sounds here presented is the same as that given in Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and, like that, is based upon Walker's Key to the Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names. The *rules*, however, unlike those of Andrews and Stoddard, are so prepared as to show the sounds of the vowels, in all their various situations, independently of the division of words into syllables. This, it is hoped, will facilitate their application.

2) The *short* sound before a consonant, as *o* in *dóminus*: except,

a) *U* before a single consonant, or a mute followed by *r* or *h* (and perhaps *l*); as, *Púnicus*, *salúbritas*.

b) *A*, *e*, and *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute before *l*, *r*, or *h*), followed by *e* or *i* before another vowel; as, *dóceo*, *ácria*.

(*d*) In all *unaccented syllables*, vowels have the *short* sound; as, *cantámus*, *vígilat*: except,

1) Final *a* in words of more than one syllable. This has the sound -of *ah*, as in the word *America*; e. g., *musa* (*musah*).

2) Final syllables in *i* (except *tibi* and *sibi*), *es*, and *os*, in *plural cases*; as, *hómini*, *dies*, *illos* (a plural case).

3) The first syllable of words accented on the second, when the first either begins with an *i* followed by a single consonant, or contains *i* before a vowel; as, *diébus*, *irátus*.

REM. *E*, *o*, and *u*, unaccented before a vowel, diphthong, a single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*, are not quite as short in sound as the other vowels in the same situations.

## 2. The Sounds of the Diphthongs.

Æ and œ, like *e* in the same situation; e. g., *Cæsar*, *Dædalus*.

Au, as in the English, *author*; e. g., *aurum*.

Eu, " " *neuter*; e. g., *neuter* (both Eng. and Latin).

Ei, as in the English, *height*; e. g., *dein*.

Oi, " " *coin*; e. g., *proin*.

REM. 1. The vowels in *ei* and *oi* are generally pronounced separately.

REM. 2. A few other combinations seem sometimes to be used as

diphthongs. *U* is always the first element of these combinations, and has then the sound of *w*; as, *suade* = swade: except, *Ui* in *huic*, and *cui*, which has the sound of long *i*.

### 3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; *c* and *g*, however, are soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*, and hard in other situations: *ch* is always hard, like *k*; as, *charta* (*kartuh*).

# FIRST LATIN BOOK.

---

## LESSON I.

*Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate.*

1. IN Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

2. These parts of speech, either singly or combined, form *propositions* or *sentences*; as, *āmās*, thou lovest; *puēr lūdīt*, the boy plays.

3. Every proposition, however simple, consists of two parts: (1.) the *subject*, or the person or thing of which it speaks; and, (2.) the *predicate*, or that which is said of the subject: thus, in the proposition, *puēr lūdīt*, *puēr* (the boy) is the subject of which the proposition speaks, and *lūdīt* (plays) is the predicate which is affirmed of the subject.

4. In Latin the subject is often omitted, because the form of the predicate shows what subject is meant; thus the proposition *āmās*, thou lovest, consists in Latin of a single word, because the ending *ās*, of *āmās*, shows (as we shall see by and by) that the subject cannot be *I, he, or they*, but must be *thou*.

5. When a proposition thus consists of a single word, that word is always a *verb*; e. g., *āmāt*, he loves.

6. The *analysis* of a proposition consists in separating it into its elements.

EXAMPLE 1.—Proposition, *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdīt* (plays).

*Puēr* (the boy) is the *subject*, because it is that of which the proposition speaks (3). *Lūdīt* (plays) is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject (3).

EXAMPLE 2.—Proposition, *Amās* (thou lovest).

*Amās* is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject. *Thou*, the subject in English, is omitted in Latin, because the ending *ās*, of the predicate *āmās*, fully implies it.

### 7. Exercise in Analysis.\*

*Puellā* (the girl) *cantāt* (sings). *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdēt* (will play). *Pātēr* (the father) *vīdēbīt* (will see). *Mātēr* (the mother) *rīdēbāt* (was laughing). *Currēbāt* (he was running). *Cantābīt* (he will sing). *Lūdēbāt* (he was playing). *Arābāt* (he was ploughing).

## LESSON II.

### Verbs.—First Conjugation.

8. A VERB expresses *existence, condition, or action* (generally the *existence, condition, or action* of some person

\* These propositions are to be analyzed according to the examples just given. The object is twofold: first, to fix definitely the distinction between *subject* and *predicate*; and, secondly, to show the learner that when the subject is a personal pronoun (English, *I, thou, he, &c.*), it is generally omitted in Latin. The use of the pronoun to express *emphasis* or *contrast* will be considered in another place.

or *thing*, called its *subject*): as, *est*, he is; *dormĭt*, he sleeps (is sleeping, or is asleep); *ămăt*, he loves.

9. When a verb expresses simply its *meaning*, without reference to any person or thing, as *ămără*, to love, it is said to be in the *Infinitive Mood*.

10. When a verb expresses its meaning in the form of an *assertion* or *question*, referring to its subject, as *ămăt*, he loves, it is said to be in the *Indicative Mood*.\*

11. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting in *present* time; as, *ămăt*, he loves. It is then said to be in the *Present Tense*.
- 2) As acting in *past* time; as, *ămăbăt*, he was loving. It is then said to be in the *Imperfect Tense*.
- 3) As acting in *future* time (i. e., about to act); as, *ămăbĭt*, he will love. It is then said to be in the *Future Tense*.\*

12. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As *speaking of himself*; as, *ămă*, I love, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *First Person*.
- 2) As *spoken to*; as, *ămăs*, thou lovest, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Second Person*.
- 3) As *spoken of*; as, *ămăt*, he loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Third Person*.

13. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As consisting of *only one* person or thing; as, *ămăt*, he, she, or it loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Singular Number*.

---

\* The other *moods* and *tenses* will be noticed in another place.

- 2) As consisting of *more than one* person or thing; as, *ămant*, they love; and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Plural Number*.

14. Every verb consists of two parts, viz.:

- 1) *The Root*, or that part of the verb which remains unchanged throughout the various moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; as, *ăm* in *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbăt*.
- 2) *The Endings* which are added to this root, to form the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; thus, in the forms just noticed—viz., *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbăt*—the endings are, *ără*, *ă*, *ăt*, and *ăbăt*.

15. Some verbs have the *infinitive* in *ără*; as, *ămără*, to love. These are said to be of

*The First Conjugation.*

16. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ără*; as, *ămără*; root, *ăm*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
ăt,	ăbăt,	ăbăt.

PARADIGM.

Amără, to love: root, *ăm*.

Present.	Am-ăt,	he, she, or it loves (or, is loving).
Imperfect.	Am-ăbăt,	“ “ “ was loving.
Future.	Am-ăbăt,	“ “ “ will love (will be loving).



## 17. VOCABULARY.

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>	<i>Key-words.*</i>
Amără,	to love	( <i>amorous</i> ).
Arără,	to plough	( <i>arable</i> ).
Cantără,	to sing	( <i>canto</i> ).
Lăbōrără,	to labor	( <i>labor</i> ).
Vigilară,	to watch	( <i>vigilant</i> ).

18. *Exercise.*

1. Labōrat.† 2. Cantat. - 3. Arat. 4. Arābat.  
 5. Amābat. 6. Vigilābat. 7. Vigilābit. 8. Cantābit.  
 9. Laborābit. 10. Vigilat. 11. Laborābat. 12. Amā-  
 bit. 13. Amat. 14. Cantābat. 15. Arābit.

## LESSON III.

*First Conjugation—continued.*

## 19. VOCABULARY.

Ambulără,	to walk	( <i>ambulatory</i> ).
Jūrără,	to swear.	
Pugnără,	to fight	( <i>pugnacious</i> ).
Saltără,	to dance.	
Șpērără,	to hope.	
Vocără,	to call	( <i>vocation</i> ).

\* These Key-words, derived from the Latin, are introduced partly as a key or help to the learner, in fixing the meaning of the Latin, and partly as specimens of English derivatives of Latin origin.

† The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he*, *she*, or *it*. The ending, *at*, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender (see *Paradigm*). When the subject is thus omitted in Latin, we can usually determine from the connection which subject to use, just as in English we determine the meaning of the pronoun *they*, which may represent either *things* or *persons*, and either *males* or *females*. In these exercises the pupil may use *he* as the subject.

20. In English, the *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs*; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>He loves,</i>	<i>He was loving,</i>	<i>He will love.</i>

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used; but their place is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs and express the *tense*, *number*, and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings*; e. g.:

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Eng.	<i>He loves,</i>	<i>He was loving,</i>	<i>He will love.</i>
Lat.	<i>Amat,</i>	<i>Amābat,</i>	<i>Amābit.</i>

### 21. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Cantat. 3. Ambulat. 4. Ambulābat. 5. Jurābat. 6. Vocābat. 7. Sperābat. 8. Sperābit. 9. Ambulābit. 10. Saltābit. 11. Jurat. 12. Cantābat. 13. Vocat. 14. Laborābat. 15. Jurābit.

(b) 1. He calls. 2. He is ploughing. 3. He hopes. 4. He swears. 5. He is laboring. 6. He was laboring. 7. He was walking. 8. He was dancing. 9. He was singing. 10. He was ploughing. 11. He will plough. 12. He will call. 13. He will swear. 14. He will hope. 15. He will labor. 16. He is walking. 17. He was hoping. 18. He will walk. 19. He dances. 20. He was fighting. 21. He will sing.

## LESSON IV.

### *Verbs.—Second Conjugation.*

22. SOME Verbs have the *infinitive* in *ērē*; as, *mōnērē*, to advise. These are said to be of

*The Second Conjugation.*

23. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ērē* ; as, *mōnērē* ; root, *mōn*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings* :

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
ēt,	ēbāt,	ēbīt.

## PARADIGM.

*Mōnērē*, to advise : root, *mōn*.

Present.	<i>Mōn-ēt</i> ,	he, she, or it advises (is advising).
Imperfect.	<i>Mōn-ēbāt</i> ,	“ “ “ was advising.
Future.	<i>Mōn-ēbīt</i> ,	“ “ “ will advise.

## 24. VOCABULARY.

<i>Dōcērē</i> ,	to teach	( <i>docile</i> ).
<i>Dōlērē</i> ,	to grieve	( <i>doleful</i> ).
<i>Flērē</i> ,	to weep.	
<i>Mānērē</i> ,	to remain.	
<i>Mōvērē</i> ,	to move	( <i>move</i> ).
<i>Nērē</i> ,	to spin.	
<i>Respondērē</i> ,	to answer	( <i>respond</i> ).
<i>Ridērē</i> ,	to laugh	( <i>ridicule</i> ).
<i>Tīmērē</i> ,	to fear, to be afraid	( <i>fear</i> ).

25. *Exercises.*

- (a) 1. *Ridet*. 2. *Docet*. 3. *Respondet*. 4. *Dolet*.  
 5. *Dolēbat*. 6. *Nebat*. 7. *Flebat*. 8. *Manēbat*. 9. *Movēbat*.  
 10. *Movēbit*. 11. *Dolēbit*. 12. *Docēbit*. 13. *Respondēbit*.  
 14. *Ridēbit*. 15. *Movet*. 16. *Docēbat*. 17. *Manēbit*.  
 18. *Flet*. 19. *Ridēbat*. 20. *Nebit*.

21. Pugnāt. 22. Manet. 23. Pugnābat. 24. Manēbat. 25. Pugnābit. 26. Manēbit. 27. Cantat. 28. Timet. 29. Saltābat. 30. Respondēbat. 31. Ambulābit. 32. Timēbit. 33. Labōrat. 34. Movet. 35. Saltābat. 36. Docēbat. 37. Vocābit. 38. Dolēbit.

(b) 1. He remains. 2. He moves. 3. He weeps. 4. He spins. 5. He was spinning. 6. He was laughing. 7. He was teaching. 8. He was grieving. 9. He was answering. 10. He will answer. 11. He will weep. 12. He will remain. 13. He will spin. 14. He is laughing. 15. He was weeping. 16. He will teach. 17. He teaches. 18. He was moving. 19. He will laugh.

20. He dances. 21. He laughs. 22. He was calling. 23. He was weeping. 24. He walks. 25. He answers. 26. He was ploughing. 27. He was laughing. 28. He will sing. 29. He will move.

## LESSON V.

### *Verbs.—Third Conjugation.*

26. SOME verbs have the *infinitive* in *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*, to rule. These are said to be of

### *The Third Conjugation.*

27. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*; root, *rĕg*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
īt,	ēbāt,	ēt.

## PARADIGM.

Rēgērē, to rule: root, *rēj*.

Present.	Rēg-īt,	he, she, or it rules (is ruling).
Imperfect.	Rēg-ēbāt,	“ “ “ was ruling.
Future.	Rēg-ēt,	“ “ “ will rule.

## 28. VOCABULARY.

Bibērē,	to drink	( <i>bibber</i> ; as, <i>wine-bibber</i> ).
Cādērē,	to fall	( <i>cadence</i> ).
Currērē,	to run	( <i>current</i> ).
Discērē,	to learn	( <i>disciple</i> ).
Lēgērē,	to read	( <i>legible</i> ).
Lūdērē,	to play	( <i>ludicrous</i> ).
Scribērē,	to write	( <i>scribe, scribble</i> ).

## 29. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ludit. 2. Currit. 3. Discit. 4. Discēbat. 5. Scribēbat. 6. Bibēbat. 7. Bibet. 8. Cadet. 9. Leget. 10. Legit. 11. Currēbat. 12. Scribet. 13. Scribit. 14. Ludēbat. 15. Discet.

16. Labōrat. 17. Movet. 18. Cadit. 19. Vocābat. 20. Ridēbat. 21. Legēbat. 22. Sperat. 23. Dolet. 24. Bibit. 25. Jurābat. 26. Flebat. 27. Cadēbat. 28. Arābit. 29. Respondēbit. 30. Ludet.

(b) 1. He writes. 2. He drinks. 3. He falls. 4. He was falling. 5. He was reading. 6. He was playing. 7. He will play. 8. He will run. 9. He will learn. 10. He learns. 11. He was writing. 12. He will read. 13. He is playing. 14. He was running. 15. He will fall.

16. He is fighting. 17. He fears. 18. He reads. 19. He was singing. 20. He was spinning. 21. He was learning. 22. He will labor. 23. He will remain. 24. He will write.

## LESSON VI.

*Verbs.—Fourth Conjugation.*

30. SOME verbs have the infinitive in *īrĕ*; as, *audīrĕ*, to hear. These are said to be of

*The Fourth Conjugation.*

31. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *īrĕ*; as, *audīrĕ*; root, *aud*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
īt,	iēbāt,	iēt.

## PARADIGM.

*Audīrĕ*, to hear : root, *aud*.

Present.	Aud-īt,	he, she, or it hears (is hearing).
Imperfect.	Aud-iēbāt,	“ “ “ was hearing.
Future.	Aud-iēt,	“ “ “ will hear.

## 32. VOCABULARY.

<i>Audīrĕ</i> ,	to hear	( <i>audible</i> ).
<i>Custōdirĕ</i> ,	to guard	( <i>custody</i> ).
<i>Dormirĕ</i> ,	to sleep	( <i>dormant</i> ).
<i>Erūdirĕ</i> ,	to instruct	( <i>erudition</i> ).
<i>Scīrĕ</i> ,	to know	( <i>science</i> ).
<i>Sitirĕ</i> ,	to thirst.	
<i>Vēnirĕ</i> ,	to come.	

33. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. *Custōdit.* 2. *Erūdit.* 3. *Sitit.* 4. *Sitiēbat.*  
 5. *Veniēbat.* 6. *Sciēbat.* 7. *Sciet.* 8. *Audiet.* 9.  
*Dormiet.* 10. *Dormit.* 11. *Erudiēbat.* 12. *Custodiet.*  
 13. *Venit.* 14. *Audiēbat.* 15. *Erudiet.*

16. Ambūlat. 17. Decet. 18. Currit. 19. Audit  
20. Cantābat. 21. Ridēbat. 22. Ludēbat. 23. Dormiē  
bat. 24. Saltābit. 25. Nebit. 26. Discet. 27. Veniet.

(b) 1. He thirsts. 2. He knows. 3. He guards. 4.  
He was guarding. 5. He was instructing. 6. He was  
coming. 7. He will come. 8. He will hear. 9. He  
will thirst. 10. He will know. 11. He hears. 12.  
He was thirsting. 13. He will instruct. 14. He sleeps.  
15. He was hearing. 16. He will guard.

17. He walks. 18. He spins. 19. He runs. 20. He  
comes. 21. He was dancing. 22. He was teaching.  
23. He was writing. 24. He was sleeping. 25. He will  
sing. 26. He will laugh. 27. He will play. 28. He  
will instruct. 29. He labors. 30. He was weeping.  
31. He will learn. 32. He will sleep.

## LESSON VII.

*Verbs.—Four Conjugations.—Plural Number.*

34. THE *Four Conjugations* already noticed contain  
all the *regular* verbs of the Latin language: hence,

- 1) In any *regular* verb, the *root* is found by drop-  
ping the infinitive ending of the conjugation  
to which it belongs. These endings in the four  
conjugations are as follows:

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
āre,	ere,	ere,	ire.

a) These endings, it must be observed, differ from  
each other only in the vowel before *re*, which is called  
the *characteristic* vowel of the conjugation. The char-  
acteristic vowels in the four conjugations are as follows:

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
ā,	ē,	ě,	ī.

REM.—These vowels occur so frequently in their respective conjugations, that they are called *favorite* vowels of the conjugations. The third conjugation has also *i* as a *favorite* vowel, as in the present ending, *it* ; e. g., *rēgit*, he rules.

- 2) In any *regular* verb, the *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to the root the endings of the conjugation to which the verb belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows :

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
Conj. I.	āt,	abāt,	abīt.
II.	ēt,	ēbāt,	ēbīt.
III.	it,	ēbāt,	ēt.
IV.	it,	iēbāt,	iēt.

35. In any *regular* verb, the *third persons plural*, in the tenses already noticed, are formed by simply inserting *n* before *t* in the *endings* of the *third singular*.

Exc.—If *i* immediately precedes *t*, it must be changed, in the *fourth* conjugation, into *iu* ; as, *audīt*, he hears ; *audiunt*, they hear : and in the other conjugations into *u* ; as, *āmābīt*, he will love ; *āmābunt*, they will love.

#### PARADIGM.

		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Conj. I.	{ Sing.	Am-āt,	ām-abāt,	ām-abīt.
	{ Plur.	Am-ant,	ām-abant,	ām-abunt.
II.	{ Sing.	Mōn-ēt,	mōn-ēbāt,	mōn-ēbīt.
	{ Plur.	Mōn-ent,	mōn-ēbant,	mōn-ēbunt.
III.	{ Sing.	Rēg-īt,	rēg-ēbāt,	rēg-ēt.
	{ Plur.	Rēg-unt,	rēg-ēbant,	rēg-ent.
IV.	{ Sing.	Aud-īt,	aud-iēbāt,	aud-iēt.
	{ Plur.	Aud-iunt,	aud-iēbant,	aud-ient.



36. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Saltant. 3. Ambulābat. 4. Ambulābant. 5. Arābit. 6. Arābunt. 7. Docet. 8. Docent. 9. Timēbat. 10. Timēbant. 11. Ridēbit. 12. Ridēbunt. 13. Ludit. 14. Ludunt. 15. Scribēbat. 16. Scribēbant. 17. Curret. 18. Current. 19. Dormit. 20. Dormiunt. 21. Veniēbat. 22. Veniēbant. 23. Custodiet. 24. Custodient. 25. Vocant. 26. Dolent. 27. Discunt. 28. Sciunt. 29. Saltābunt. 30. Movēbant. 31. Legēbant. 32. Erudiēbant. 33. Jurābunt. 34. Manēbunt. 35. Cadent. 36. Sitient.

(b) 1. He sings. 2. They sing. 3. He was swearing. 4. They were swearing. 5. He will labor. 6. They will labor. 7. He laughs. 8. They laugh. 9. He was spinning. 10. They were spinning. 11. He will remain. 12. They will remain. 13. He runs. 14. They run. 15. He was playing. 16. They were playing. 17. He will drink. 18. They will drink. 19. He knows. 20. They know. 21. He was guarding. 22. They were guarding. 23. He will hear. 24. They will hear. 25. They walk. 26. They answer. 27. They write. 28. They sleep. 29. They were ploughing. 30. They were teaching. 31. They were learning. 32. They were instructing. 33. They will sing. 34. They will weep. 35. They will read. 36. They will come.

## LESSON VIII.

*Nouns.—Nominative Case.*

37. IN Latin, as in English, all names, whether of persons, places, or things, are called *Nouns*; as, *Cæsār*; *puer*, a boy, &c.

REM. 1.—Names of *individual* persons or objects are called *proper nouns*; as, *Casär*; *Römă*, Rome.

REM. 2.—Names applicable to persons or objects, not as *individuals* but as *members of a class*, are called *common nouns*; as, *equŭs* a horse (a name applicable to all animals of this class).

38. All nouns have *gender, number, person, and case*

39. The *Gender* of a noun is either *masculine, feminine, common, or neuter*.

40. In Latin, as in English, all nouns denoting objects which have sex, except such names of animals as are applicable to both sexes, are,

- 1) *Masculine*, when they denote *male* beings; as, *hōmīnēs*, men; *puēr*, a boy; *leōnēs*, lions.
- 2) *Feminine*, when they denote *female* beings; as, *mŭliēr*, a woman; *puellā*, a girl; *leōnā*, a lioness.
- 3) *Common*, when they apply alike to both sexes; as, *pārens*, a parent (either *male* or *female*); *testīs*, a witness (either *male* or *female*).

41. When gender is employed to denote sex, as in the cases just noticed, it is called *natural gender*.

42. In nouns denoting objects without sex (*neuter in English*), and in most names applicable to animals of both sexes, the gender in Latin is entirely independent of sex, and is accordingly called *grammatical gender*.

Some of these nouns are grammatically masculine; some, grammatically feminine; and some, grammatically neuter.

43. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined *partly* by their *signification*, but *principally* by their *endings*.

44. The general rules for ascertaining the grammatical gender of nouns, independently of their endings, are:

- 1) Most names of *rivers, winds, and months* are masculine; as, *Rhēnūs*, the Rhine; *austēr*, the south wind; *Aprīlīs*, April.
- 2) Most names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees* are feminine; as *Ægyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, name of an island; *laurūs*, the laurel-tree.
- 3) *Indeclinable nouns*,\* and *clauses used as nouns*, are neuter; as, *fās*, right; *nihīl*, nothing.

Gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

45. The *Numbers* and *Persons* are the same in Latin as in English. The *first* person denotes the *speaker*; the *second*, the *person spoken to*; and the *third*, the *person spoken of*. The singular number denotes one; and the plural, more than one.

46. The *Cases* of Latin nouns are six in number, viz.: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

47. The case of a noun is indicated by its ending; and the formation of its several cases is called *Declension*.

48. The *Nominative Case* corresponds to the *nominative* in English, both in name and use; e. g.,

•      *Puēr lūdīt*, the boy plays.

49. RULE OF SYNTAX.†—The subject of a finite (i. e. *not infinitive*) verb is put in the nominative.

REM. 1.—Thus, in the example, *puēr* is in the nominative by this rule.


REM. 2.—The subject stands before the verb, as in English.

\* Such as have but one form for all cases and both numbers.

† Rules for the government and agreement of words are called *Rules of Syntax*.

50. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in *number* and *person*.

REM.—Thus, in the above example, *lūdīt* is in the third person singular, to agree with its subject *puēr*.

 Determine which of the nouns in the following Vocabularies have *natural* gender, and which *grammatical*, and apply rules.

### 51. VOCABULARY.\*

Caesār, <i>m.</i>	Caesar,	
	<i>a celebrated Roman general.</i>	
Filiūs, <i>m.</i>	son	( <i>filial</i> ).
Pātēr, <i>m.</i>	father	( <i>paternal</i> )
Puellā, <i>f.</i>	girl.	
Puēr, <i>m.</i>	boy	( <i>puerile</i> ).
Vincērē,	to conquer,	( <i>vincible</i> ).

### 52. Exercises

(a) 1. Pater† docet. 2. Puer ludit. 3. Filius discēbat. 4. Caesar vincēbat. 5. Puer veniet. 6. Puella cantābat. 7. Pater scribēbat.

(b) 1. The girl will learn. 2. The father will conquer. 3. The boy dances. 4. The son was learning. 5. The father was ploughing. 6. The boy was playing. 7. The girl will sing. 8. Caesar was coming.

---

\* Gender is indicated in the Vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, *c.* for *common*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

† As the Latin has no article, a noun may be translated, (1) without the article; as, *pātēr*, father: (2) with the indefinite article; as, *pātēr*, a father: (3) with the definite article; as, *pātēr*, the father.

## LESSON IX.

*Nouns.—Nominative Case—Continued.*

## 53. VOCABULARY.\*

Aquā, <i>f.</i>	water	( <i>aqueous</i> ).
Aquilā, <i>f.</i>	eagle	( <i>aquiline</i> ).
Avīs, <i>f.</i>	bird.	
Cānis, <i>c.</i>	dog	( <i>canine</i> ).
Equūs, <i>m.</i>	horse	( <i>equestrian</i> ).
Filiā, <i>f.</i>	daughter	( <i>filial</i> ).
Fluērē,	to flow	( <i>fluent</i> ).
Hostīs, <i>c.</i>	enemy	( <i>hostile</i> ).
Impērārē	to command	( <i>imperative</i> ).
Māgistēr,	master, teacher	( <i>magisterial</i> ).
Mātēr,	mother	( <i>maternal</i> ).
Mors, <i>f.</i>	death	( <i>mortal</i> ).
Nūbēs, <i>f.</i>	cloud.	
Rex,	king	( <i>regal</i> ).
Servūs, <i>m.</i>	slave	( <i>servant</i> ).
Vōlārē,	to fly	( <i>volatile</i> ).

## 54. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mors veniet. 2. Aquila volat. 3. Hostis veniēbat. 4. Nubes movet. 5. Aqua fluit. 6. Canis ludēbat. 7. Equus curret. 8. Magister erudiēbat. 9. Rex imperābat.

10. Avis volat. 11. Volant. 12. Servus pugnābit. 13. Pugnābant. 14. Puer timēbat. 15. Timēbant. 16. Puella discēbat. 17. Discēbant. 18. Filia dormiēbat. 19. Dormiēbant.

(b) 1. The bird will fly. 2. The eagle was flying. 3. The king will come. 4. The mother will teach. 5. The daughter will learn. 6. The dog will run. 7. The

---

\* In this and the following Vocabularies, whenever the gender of a noun is not marked, the pupil is expected to determine it by the rules already given.

slave will swear. 8. Caesar was coming. 9. The slave is ploughing.

10. They were ploughing. 11. The king will conquer. 12. They are conquering. 13. The dog will come. 14. They were coming. 15. The girl is weeping. 16. They will weep. 17. The boy is singing. 18. They will laugh.

## LESSON X.

### *Nouns.—Vocative Case.*

55. THE same form\* of the noun which is called the *nominative*, when *spoken of*, is called the *vocative*, when *spoken to*. This corresponds to the *nominative independent* in English; e. g.

<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>
Pătěr,	puěr cădět.
Father (or, <i>O father</i> ), the boy will fall.	

REM.—In very short sentences, like the above, the vocative may be placed either at the beginning or close; in other cases, however, it is generally preceded by one or more words in the sentence.

56. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

REM.—The interjection *O* is sometimes used before the name addressed, both in Latin and English.

### 57. VOCABULARY.

Agricōlă,	husbandman	( <i>agriculture</i> ).
Balbŭs,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Caiŭs,	Caius, a man's name.	
Discipŭlŭs,	pupil	( <i>disciple</i> ).
Mordērē,	to bite.	

\* A single exception will be noticed in another place.

O ( <i>interj.</i> ),	O, <i>used in direct address.</i>	
Peccārē,	to sin	( <i>peccant</i> ).
Rēgīnā,	queen.	
Sōrōr,	sister.	

58. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer jurat. 2. *O mater*, puer jurat. 3. Puer ludēbat. 4. Puer ludēbat, *magister*. 5. Rex saltābat. 6. *O regīna*, rex saltābat. 7. Mater dolēbit. 8. *Soror*, mater dolēbit. 9. Canis mordēbit. 10. *O puer*, canis mordēbit.

11. Mors veniet. 12. Balbus jurābat. 13. Jurābunt. 14. Agricōla arābit. 15. Arant. 16. Servus peccat. 17. Peccābant. 18. Magister erudiet. 19. Hostis vincet. 20. Vincēbant. 21. Scient. 22. Discēbant. 23. Puella legēbat. 24. Rex imperābat. 25. Nubes movet. 26. Pugnābant. 27. Vincunt.

(b) 1. The king will conquer. 2. *O queen*, the king will conquer. 3. The slave was weeping. 4. *Father*, the slave was weeping. 5. The boy is swearing (*swears*). 6. *Master*, the boy is swearing (*swears*). 7. The dog will bite. 8. *Brother*, the dog will bite. 9. They will dance. 10. *Mother*, they will dance. 11. The master will hear. 12. *Sister*, the master will hear. 13. The horse will run. 14. *Daughter*, the horse will run. 15. Death will come. 16. Death will come, *O king*.

17. Caius is ploughing. 18. They will plough. 19. Balbus was fighting. 20. They are fighting. 21. The girl was writing. 22. They will learn. 23. The pupil will learn. 24. The master is teaching. 25. The queen is weeping. 26. They will weep. 27. They were reading. 28. The eagle was flying. 29. The king will command. 30. The mother will teach. 31. The king is conquering. 32. The father will come.

## LESSON XI.

*Nouns.—Apposition.—Modified Subject.*

59. THE subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting the same person or thing connected with it to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by the limiting noun; e. g.

*Subject not modified.**Subject modified.*

1. Lătīnūs rēgnābāt.      2. Lătīnūs rex rēgnābāt.

Latinus was reigning.      Latinus *the king* was reigning.

REM. 1.—*Rex*, in the above example, limits Lătīnūs; i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābāt* is not affirmed of every one who may have borne the name Latinus, but only of Latinus *the king*. *Rex* is in the same case as the subject, i. e. *nominative*, and is said to be in *apposition* with it.

REM. 2.—The noun in apposition is generally placed after the noun which it limits, as in the above example; if, however, it is *emphatic*, it is placed before that noun.

## 60. VOCABULARY.

Aurūm,	gold.	
Crescērē,	{ to grow,	{ (crescent).
	{ to wax (as moon) }	
Faustūlūs,	Faustulus,	
	an Italian shepherd.	
Lătīnūs,	Latinus,	
	a king of Latium.	
Lāvīniā,	Lavinia,	
	daughter of Latinus.	
Lūnā,	moon	(lunar).
Micārē,	to glitter, to shine.	
Milēs,	soldier	(military).
Nūmā,	Numa,	
	second king of Rome.	
Pastōr,	shepherd	(pastor, pastoral)



Rēgnarē,	to reign	( <i>regnant, reign</i> ).
Tulliā,	Tullia,	
	<i>a queen of Rome.</i>	
Victoriā,	Victoria,	
	<i>queen of England.</i>	

61. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus dormiēbat. 2. Balbus *servus* dormit. 3. Latīnus regnābat. 4. Latīnus *rex* vincēbat. 5. Tullia cantābat. 6. Tullia *regīna* saltābit. 7. Caius *pastor* cantābit.

8. Luna crescit. 9. Aurum micat. 10. Lavinia *regīna* regnābat. 11. Currēbant. 12. Current. 13. Pastor ridēbit. 14. Ridēbant. 15. Canis mordēbit. 16. Mordēbunt. 17. Puella nebit. 18. Nebunt.

(b) 1. Numa was reigning. 2. *King* Numa was reigning. 3. Faustus *a shepherd* was singing. 4. *Queen* Victoria was reigning.

5. The boy was ploughing. 6. They were playing. 7. They will write. 8. The queen was weeping. 9. They are weeping. 10. The soldier will fight. 11. The girl will learn. 12. The daughter is spinning. 13. They will spin. 14. The boy will fight. 15. They will fight.

## LESSON XII.

*Nouns.—Genitive Case.—Modified Subject.*

62. NOUNS in Latin are declined in five different ways, and are accordingly divided into five classes, called *Declensions*, distinguished from each other by the following

## GENITIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ī,	īs,	ūs,	ēi.*

## EXAMPLES.

	Nominative.	Genitive.
Dec. I.	Mūsā, <i>a muse,</i>	mūsae, <i>of a muse.</i>
I.	Servūs, <i>a slave,</i>	servī, <i>of a slave.</i>
III.	Hōnōr, <i>an honor,</i>	hōnōris, <i>of an honor.</i>
IV.	Fructūs, <i>a fruit,</i>	fructūs, <i>of a fruit.</i>
V.	Dīēs, <i>a day,</i>	diēi, <i>of a day.</i>

REM.—The genitive endings are usually added to the word after the ending of the nominative is dropped; but, as this is not always the case, it becomes necessary, in order to decline a noun correctly, to know both the *nominative* and the *genitive*: accordingly, both these forms are given in the Vocabularies.

63. The *Genitive Case* expresses *possession*, and the *various relations* denoted by the preposition *of*, and accordingly corresponds both to the *English Possessive*, and the *English Objective* with *of*; as, *rēgīs cōrōnā*, the king's crown (or the crown of the king); *āmōr glōriæ*, the love of glory.

64. The subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting a *different person* or *thing* connected with it, to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by such noun; e. g.

*Subject not modified.*

*Subject modified.*

1. Fīliūs rēgnābīt.

2. Rēgīs fīliūs rēgnābīt.

The son will reign.

The son *of the king* will reign.

REM.—The genitive *rēgīs* (of the king), in the above example, modifies *fīliūs* (the son); i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābīt*

\* In this ending *e* is long except in *spēcī*, *fīdēcī*, and *rēcī*

(will reign) is not affirmed of *every* son, but only of the son of the king.

a) In the example, the limiting genitive stands before the noun which it limits. This seems to be the more common order, when no *emphasis* is intended, though we often find it reversed.

b) If the noun which is limited by the genitive is *emphatic*, or is a *monosyllable*, it generally stands before the genitive; e. g.

1. Cicerō, pătēr pătriae.

Cicero, *the father* of (his) country.

2. Lex nātūrae.

*The law* of nature.

REM.—In the first example, *pătēr* is emphatic, and in the second, *lex* is a monosyllable; they accordingly stand before their genitives.

65. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the *same* case as that noun, when it denotes the *same* person or thing; e. g. *Lătīnūs rex*, Latinus the king (59, REM. 1).
- 2) In the *genitive*, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g. *Rēgīs fīliūs*, the son of the king.

## 66. VOCABULARY.\*

Agrīcōlā,	Gen. āgrīcōlae,	husbandman	( <i>ag</i> iculture).
Amīcūs,	“ āmicī,	friend	( <i>amicable</i> ).
Balbūs,	“ Balbī,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Caiūs,	“ Caiī,	Caius, a man's name.	
Cānis,	“ cānis,	dog	( <i>canine</i> ).
Filiā,	“ filiae,	daughter.	

---

\* The genitive is given in the Vocabulary; and the pupil may determine from the genitive ending to which declension the noun belongs.

Filiūs,	Gen. fili,	son	( <i>filial</i> ).
Frātēr,	" frātrīs,	brother	( <i>fraternal</i> ).
Lātinūs,	" Lātīnī,	Latinus,	
		<i>a king of Latium.</i>	
Milēs,	" militīs,	soldier	( <i>military</i> ).
Pātēr,	" pātrīs,	father	( <i>paternal</i> ).
Puēr,	" puērī,	boy	( <i>puerile</i> ).
Rēgīnā,	" rēgīnae,	queen.	
Rex,	" rēgīs,	king	( <i>regal</i> ).
Servūs,	" servī,	slave	( <i>servant</i> ).
Tulliā,	" Tulliae,	Tullia,	
		<i>a queen of Rome.</i>	

## 67. Exercises.

(a) 1. Servus dormit. 2. *Balbi* servus dormiet. 3. Filius ludit. 4. *Regis* filius ludēbat. 5. *Regīnae* pater docēbat. 6. Filia ridēbat. 7. Filia *regīnae* ridēbat. 8. Amīcus *regis* cadet.

9. Balbus servus veniēbat. 10. *Balbi* servus dormit. 11. Pastor cantābit. 12. Canis *pastōris* mōrdēbit. 13. Mordēbunt. 14. Filia *pastōris* nebit. 15. *Regis* amīcus timēbit. 16. Caius, *regis* amīcus, timēbit. 17. Tullia, *regis* filia, cantābat.

(b) 1. The brother will conquer. 2. The king will conquer. 3. The brother of the king will conquer. 4. The daughter of the king is singing. 5. The queen will read. 6. The daughter of the queen will read. 7. The father of *Balbus* was laughing.

8. The *shepherd's* dog (the dog of the shepherd) will bite. 9. The *boy's* dog will bite. 10. The *husband-man's* dog will play. 11. The soldier will fight. 12. The son of the soldier will fight. 13. Latinus the king was conquering. 14. The *shepherd's* daughter (the daughter of the shepherd) is spinning.

## LESSON XIII.

*Nouns.—Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate*

68. EVERY noun consists of two distinct parts, viz:—

- 1) The *Root*, or that part which remains *unchanged* throughout the various cases of both numbers; as *mūs* in *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*.
- 2) The *Endings*, which are added to the root to form these cases; thus, in the forms just noticed, viz., *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*, the endings are *ā*, *ae*, and *ām*.

69. In any noun, of whatever declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular (62); as, *mūsā*, Gen. *mūsae*; root, *mūs*: *servūs*, Gen. *servī*; root, *serv*: *hōnōr*, Gen. *hōnōrīs*; root, *hōnōr*, &c.
- 2) Any *case* may be formed (with a few exceptions) by adding to this root the proper ending.

70. 1) The *Accusative Singular* of *neuter* nouns is the same as the *Nominative*; e. g., Nom. *sceptrū*, a sceptre; Accus. *sceptrū*.

- 2) The *Accusative Singular* of *masculine* and *feminine* nouns is formed from the root, by adding one\* of the following

## ACCUSATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ām,	ūm,	ēm,	ūm,	ēm.

\* If the noun is of the first declension, the learner will, of course, add the ending given for the first declension; if of the second, the ending given for the second; and so on.

## EXAMPLES.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root. Ending.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
Dec. I.	Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ;	mūs -ām; mūsām, <i>a muse.</i>	
II.	Servī, <i>of a slave</i> ;	serv -ūm; servūm, <i>a slave.</i>	
III.	Hōnōris, <i>of an honor</i> ;	hōnōr-ēm; hōnōrēm, <i>an honor.</i>	
IV	Fructūs, <i>of a fruit</i> ;	fruct -ūm; fructūm, <i>a fruit.</i>	
V.	Diēi, <i>of a day</i> ;	di -ēm; diēm, <i>a day.</i>	

71. The accusative case corresponds very *nearly* to the English objective, and is used after *transitive verbs* and *certain prepositions*.

72. When a verb represents its subject as acting upon some other person or thing, it is said to be *transitive*; and the person or thing upon which the action is exerted, is called its *direct object*; e. g.

Serviūs *impĕriūm* admīnistrāt.

(*Servius the government administers.*)

Servius administers the government.

73. In English the object is placed after the verb; thus, *government* is placed after *administers*; but in Latin the object precedes the verb; thus, *impĕriūm* precedes *admīnistrāt*.

74. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *Direct Object* of an action is put in the *accusative*.

## 75. VOCABULARY.

Aedificārē,		to build	( <i>edifice</i> ).
Diēs,	Gen. diēi,	day.	
Dōmīnūs,	“ dōmīnī,	master, as owner	( <i>domineer</i> ).
Epistōlā,	“ epistōlae, f.	letter	( <i>epistle</i> ).
Laudārē,		to praise	( <i>laud</i> ).
Monstrārē,		to show.	
Mors,	“ mortīs, f.	death	( <i>mortal</i> ).

Mūrūs,	Gen. mūrī, m.	wall	( <i>mural</i> ).
Occidērē,		to kill.	
Puellā,	“ puellae,	girl.	
Sēnātūs,	sēnātūs, m.	senate	( <i>senate</i> ).
Spērārē,		to hope for.	
Terrērē,		to terrify.	
Timērē,		to fear	( <i>timid</i> ).
Viā,	“ viae, f.	way, road.	
Vidērē,		to see.	
Vitārē,		to shun.	

## 76. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius *puellam* laudat. 2. Puer *murum* aedificābat. 3. Rex *puerum* ridet. 4. Puer *mortem* vitat. 5. Puella *diem* sperābat. 6. Puella *viam* monstrābit. 7. Servus *dominum* occīdit.

8. Puella *puerum* laudat. 9. Rex *senatum* timet. 10. Puer *canem* timēbit. 11. Epistolam scribit. 12. Puer *canem* occidēbat. 13. *Mortem* vitant. 14. *Mortem* timent. 15. Balbus *servus domini* timēbit. 16. Balbus *servum* docet. 17. Balbi *filius* *puerum* laudābat.

(b) 1. The boy will show *the road*. 2. Balbus is building *a wall*. 3. Caius was praising *the boy*. 4. The slave is showing *the way*. 5. The king hopes for *the day*. 6. The girl will shun *the dog*.

7. The dog will bite the girl. 8. Father is writing a letter. 9. The father will praise the daughter. 10. They are building a wall. 11. They are killing the slave. 12. The king's son will play. 13. The king fears death. 14. The death of the father will terrify the son.

## LESSON XIV.

*Nouns.—Accusative, continued.—Adverbial Modifiers.*

77. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Certain qualifying words, called *adverbs*, are often connected with verbs, merely to modify their meaning; e. g.,

1. *Mīlēs fortītēr pūgnāt.*      2. *Mīlēs nōn pūgnāt.*

(*The soldier bravely fights.*)    (*The soldier not fights.*)

The soldier fights *bravely*.    The soldier *does not* fight.

REM.—In these examples, *fortītēr* (bravely) and *nōn* (not) are adverbs modifying *pūgnāt*. In Latin the adverb generally precedes the verb, as in these instances.

## 78. VOCABULARY.\*

Anguīs, anguīs, c.	snake, serpent.	
Christiānūs, ī, m.	Christian	( <i>Christian</i> ).
Fortītēr,	bravely.	
Lex, lēgis, f.	law	( <i>legal</i> ).
Mātēr, mātīs,	mother	( <i>maternal</i> ).
Nēglīgērē,	to disregard	( <i>neglect</i> ).
Nōn,	not.	
Pastōr, pastōris,	shepherd	( <i>pastor</i> ).
Pēcūniā, ae, f.	money	( <i>pecuniary</i> ).
Serviūs, ī,	Servius, a man's name.	
Vox, vōcīs, f.	voice	( <i>vocal</i> ).

## 79. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Servius pugnat.    2. Servius *fortīter* pugnat.  
3. Mors Christiānum *non*† terret.    4. Agricōla anguem timēbit.  
5. Agricōla anguem *non* timēbit.    6. Pater

\* In this and the following Vocabularies, either the genitive or its ending is given immediately after each substantive.

† In translating *nōn* before a verb, place 'not' after the English enclitic; thus, *nōn terret*, *does not terrify*, or *is not terrifying*.



filiam audiēbat. 7. Pater filii vocem audiēbat. 8. Mater vocem negliget. 9. Mater filiae vocem *non* negliget.

10. Caius legem negligēbat. 11. Christiānus pecuniam negliget. 12. Pecuniam negligent. 13. Puērū docent. 14. Christiānus mortem non timet.

(b) 1. The husbandman will fight. 2. The husbandman will *not* fight. 3. Servius fears death. 4. Servius does *not* fear death. 5. The slave hears the voice of (his) master. 6. The boy was killing the dog. 7. The boy was killing the shepherd's dog. 8. The dog will *not* bite. 9. Servius will avenge the death of the king.

10. They do not fear death. 11. They will fight bravely. 12. Caius is teaching the boy. 13. The daughter of the queen is singing. 14. They did not hear (were not hearing). 15. They will not disregard the law.

## LESSON XV.

*Nouns.—Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate.*

80. THE *Dative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *to* or *for* in English; as, *mūsă*, a muse; *Dat. mūsae*, *to* or *for* a muse.

81. The *Dative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

### DATIVE ENDINGS.

<i>Dec. I.</i>	<i>Dec. II.</i>	<i>Dec. III.</i>	<i>Dec. IV.</i>	<i>Dec. V.</i>
ae,	ō,	ī,	uī,*	ēī.†

\* Neuter nouns of the fourth declension are exceptions, as they have the *dative singular* like the *nominative*.

† In this ending *ε* is long except in *spēī*, *fīdēī*, and *rēī*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Ending.</i>	<i>Dative.</i>
Dec. I. Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ;	mūs	- ae ;	mūsae, <i>to or for a muse.</i>
II. Servi, <i>of a slave</i> ;	serv	- ō ;	servō, “ “ <i>a slave.</i>
III. Hōnōris, <i>of honor</i> ;	hōnōr	- ī ;	hōnōrī, “ “ <i>an honor.</i>
IV. Fructūs, <i>of fruit</i> ;	fruct	- uī ;	fructuī, “ “ <i>a fruit.</i>
V. Diēi, <i>of day</i> ;	di	- ēi ;	diēi, “ “ <i>a day.</i>

82. The person or thing *to* or *for which* any thing is, or is done, is called an *indirect object* ; e. g.,

Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt.

(*Balbus to the boy the way shows.*)

Balbus shows the way *to the boy*.

REM.—In the example it will be observed that the *indirect object* precedes the *direct*. This is the more common order, though not unfrequently reversed.

83. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Any transitive verb may take the *accusative* of the *direct object* and the *dative* of the *indirect object*.

## 84. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē,	to accuse.	
Bellū, i, n.	war.	
Claudērē,	to shut	(close).
Condērē,	to found, to build.	
Dārē,*	to give	
Dōmūs, dōmūs, or dōmū, f.	house	(domestic).
Everterē,	to pull down, to overthrow.	
Indicērē,	to declare (as war).	
Leō, leōnis, m.	lion.	
Milēs, itis, m. (rarely f.),	soldier	(military)

\* *Dārē* is of the first conjugation, with *ā* short, contrary to the general rule.

Portă, ae, <i>f.</i>	gate	} ( <i>portal</i> ). ( <i>porter</i> ).
Răpăriră,	to find.	
Rômûlûs, i,	Romulus,	
	<i>the founder of Rome.</i>	
Sceptrûm, i, <i>n.</i>	sceptre.	
Urbs, is, <i>f.</i>	city	( <i>urbane</i> ).

85. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Pastor viam monstrat. 2. Pastor *puëro* viam monstrat. 3. Puer viam monstrābit. 4. Puer *pastōri* viam monstrābit. 5. Servus portam claudet. 6. Servus *regi* portam claudet.

7. Romûlus urbem condēbat. 8. Agricōla anguem repērit. 9. Miles agricōlae domum evertet. 10. Regis sceptrum vidēbant. 11. Milīti viam monstrant. 12. Leōnem timēbant.

(b) 1. The slave is building a wall. 2. The slave is building a wall *for the king*. 3. The boy was showing the road. 4. The boy was showing the road *to the husbandman*. 5. The husbandman is showing the road *to the boy*. 6. They will declare war *against the city*.

7. They are founding a city for the queen. 8. They will not disregard the law. 9. They were writing for the king. 10. They will accuse the boy. 11. They were praising the queen. 12. They will praise the queen's daughter. 13. The king will declare war against the senate. 14. The king will give the city to (his) son.

## LESSON XVI.

*Nouns.—Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate.*

86. THE *Ablative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *from*, *by*, *in*, or *with* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; Abl. *mūsā*, from a muse, or *by*, *in*, or *with* a muse.\*

87. The *Ablative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

## ABLATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ā,	ō,	ě,†	ū,	ē.

## EXAMPLES.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Ending.</i>	<i>Ablative.</i>
Dec. I.	<i>Mūsae, of a muse;</i>	<i>mūs</i>	<i>- ā;</i>	<i>mūsā, from, in, &amp;c., a muse.</i>
II.	<i>Servī, of a slave;</i>	<i>serv</i>	<i>- ō;</i>	<i>servō, “ “ “ a slave.</i>
III.	<i>Hōnōris, of honor;</i>	<i>hōnōr</i>	<i>- ě;</i>	<i>hōnōrě, “ “ “ honor.</i>
IV.	<i>Fructūs, of fruit;</i>	<i>fruct</i>	<i>- ū;</i>	<i>fructū, “ “ “ fruit.</i>
V.	<i>Diēi, of day;</i>	<i>di</i>	<i>- ē;</i>	<i>diē, “ “ “ day.</i>

88. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *time* of an action; e. g.,

*Hĩmě ursūs dormĩt.*

*(In winter the bear sleeps.)*

The bear sleeps (when?) *in winter.*

89. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The time *when* is put in the

\* The preposition is, however, often expressed before the ablative, as it is before the objective in English.

† As an exception to this, a few nouns of the third declension form the ablative in *i*, as we shall see by-and-by.

ablative without a preposition (i. e., without any word for the English *at, in, &c.*)

REM.—The ablative of time often stands first in a sentence, as in the example.


90. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *place* of its action; e. g.,

Ursūs *in antrō* dormit

(*The bear in a cave sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (where?) *in a cave.*

91. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town (227), is generally put in the ablative with a preposition.

 The pupil, in preparing his exercises, should imitate the *order* in the examples, whenever nothing is said on the point.

## 92. VOCABULARY.

Aestas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	summer.	
Agēr, āgrī, <i>m.</i>	field	( <i>agriculture</i> ).
Antrūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	cave.	
Asīnūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	ass.	
Avīs, īs, <i>f.</i>	bird	( <i>aviary</i> ).
Dilāniārē,	to tear in pieces.	
Equūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	horse	( <i>equestrian</i> ).
Hiems, ĕmīs, <i>f.</i>	winter.	
Hortūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	garden	( <i>horticulture</i> ).
In ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	in.	
Lūcūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	grove.	
Mons, tīs, <i>m.</i>	mountain.	
Prātūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	meadow.	
Ursūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	bear.	

## 93. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ursus dormit. 2. Ursus *in antro* dormit. 3. Canis currit. 4. Canis *in horto* currit. 5. Puer ludēbat. 6. Puer *in agro* ludēbat. 7. Hiēme ursus *in*

*antro* dormiet. 8. Romŭlus urbem condēbat. 9. Romŭlus urbem *in monte* condēbat. 10. *Hiēme* ursus *in antro* dormit.

11. Servus regem occīdet. 12. Leo aſinum dilaniat. 13. Rex regīnam accusābat. 14. Regīna filiam docēbit. 15. In luo ludunt. 16. Leo equum dilaniābit.

(b) 1. The boy is playing. 2. The boy is playing *in the garden*. 3. The dog is running. 4. The dog is running *in the meadow*. 5. The bird will not sing. 6. The bird will not sing *in winter*. 7. The daughter was singing *in the grove*. 8. They will walk *in the field*. 9. They will play *in summer*.

10. Balbus will fear Caius. 11. They will fear the queen. 12. He was building a wall. 13. They are building a wall. 14. The queen is walking in the field. 15. The queen's mother was weeping. 16. The slave is showing the boy (to the boy) the way. 17. The slave was shutting the gate. 18. The boy will shut the gate.

## LESSON XVII.

### *Nouns.—First Declension.\**

94. To the *First Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive in *ae* (62). They all end in *ā* (except a few *Greek* nouns. See 174).

95. Latin nouns of this declension are grammatically feminine; unless their gender is determined by their *signification*, according to previous rules (40, 44).

\* Having learned in the previous Lessons the *use* of the *several cases* of the Latin language, the pupil will now find little difficulty in mastering the *five declensions* (62) in all the cases of *both numbers*.

96. We have already learned that the root of a noun may always be found from the genitive singular (69, 1), but, as it may *also* be formed without much difficulty from the nominative, it will be well for us to notice, in connection with the different declensions, the manner in which this may be done.

97. In the First Declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the nominative ending *ă*, as *mūsă*; root, *mūs* (69, 1).
- 2) Any noun *may be declined* (i. e., all the cases of both numbers may be formed) by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ă,
Plur.	ae,	ărŭm,	is,	as.	ae,	is.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	Mūs-ă, <i>a muse.</i>	Nom.	Mūs-ae, <i>muses.</i>
Gen.	Mūs-ae, <i>of a muse.</i>	Gen.	Mūs-ărŭm, <i>of muses.</i>
Dat.	Mūs-ae, <i>to, for a muse.</i>	Dat.	Mūs-is, <i>to, for muses.</i>
Acc.	Mūs-ăm, <i>a muse.</i>	Acc.	Mūs-as, <i>muses.</i>
Voc.	Mūs-ă, <i>O muse.</i>	Voc.	Mūs-ae, <i>O muses.</i>
Abl.	Mūs-ă, <i>from, &amp;c. a muse.</i>	Abl.	Mūs-is, <i>from, &amp;c. muses.</i>

98. VOCABULARY.\*

Apérirě,	to open, to uncover	( <i>aperture</i> ).
Aquilă, ae,	eagle	( <i>aquiline</i> ).
Căpŭt, itis, n.	head	( <i>capital</i> ).
Cōlumbă, ae,	dove.	

---

\* The pupil must apply rules for gender

Cōrōnă, ae,	garland, crown	( <i>coronation</i> ).
Dōlōr, ōris, m.	pain, grief, sorrow	( <i>dolorous</i> ).
Luscīniă, ae,	nightingale.	
Rīdērē,	{ to laugh, {	(ridicule).
	{ to laugh at }	
Sentīrē,	{ to feel, to perceive	
	{ by the senses.	
Vincīrē,	{ to bind,	
	{ to bind up.	

99. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puellae saltant. 2. Aquilae volant. 3. Regina puellas docēbit. 4. Tulliae filiae ridēbunt. 5. Tulliae filias ridēbit. 6. Aquila columbas occīdet. 7. Lusciniae cantābant.

8. Balbus vocem audit. 9. Caius dolōrem vitābit. 10. Puellae dolōrem sentiunt. 11. Servus epistōlas scribit. 12. Puer caput vinciēbat. 13. Regina puellae corōnam dabit. 14. Regina puellis corōnas dabit.

(b) 1. The girl was writing a letter. 2. The girls are writing letters. 3. The queen will call (her) daughter. 4. The queen is calling (her) daughters. 5. Tullia will give a garland to her daughter.

6. They will give garlands to (their) daughters. 7. He is reading the queen's letter. 8. They are reading the girls' letters (the letters of the girls). 9. They will show the way to the queen. 10. The husbandman will shut the gate. 11. The doves will fly. 12. The nightingales are singing. 13. The boy hears (his) father's voice. 14. The boy is opening the letters. 15. The slave will open (his) master's letters.



## LESSON XVIII.

*Nouns.—Second Declension.—Nouns in ūs and ūm.*

100. To the *Second Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *ī* (62). They end in *ūs*, *ūm*, *ēr*, and *īr* (except a few Greek nouns. See 174).

101. In this declension nouns in *ūm* are grammatically *neuter*; and the *rest* (with a few exceptions\*) are grammatically *masculine*; unless their gender is determined by their signification, according to previous rules (40, 44).

102. In nouns in *ūs* and *ūm*, of this declension, the *root* is found by dropping the *nominative ending*; as, *serv-ūs*, a slave; root, *serv*: *rēgn-ūm*, a kingdom; root, *rēgn*.

103. Nouns in *ūs* are declined by adding to the root the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ūs,	ī,	ō,	ūm,	ě,†	ō,
Plur.	ī,	ōrum,	īs,	ōs,	ī,	īs.

\* It has not been thought best to burden the memory of the learner with *lists* of exceptions, at this early stage of his study. Accordingly, *general rules*, covering the great majority of cases, are given for *immediate* and *constant use*, thus the pupil may fix the general principles of the language, and become better prepared to understand and recollect the exceptions as they occur in his lessons. Such exceptions, whether pertaining to gender or other subjects, will be marked in the *Vocabularies*.

† The vocative singular, in nouns in *ūs* of this declension, is not like the nominative (see 55 and note). Proper nouns in *iūs* drop the ending *ē* in the vocative singular; as, *Tullius* (proper name), *Voc. Tullī*. *Filiūs*, a son, and *gēniūs*, a guardian angel, also drop the ending *ē* in the vocative singular.

## PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Serv-ūs, <i>a slave.</i>	Nom. Serv-ī, <i>slaves.</i>
Gen. Serv-ī, <i>of a slave.</i>	Gen. Serv-ōrūm, <i>of slaves.</i>
Dat. Serv-ō, <i>to, for a slave.</i>	Dat. Serv-īs, <i>to, for slaves.</i>
Acc. Serv-ūm, <i>a slave.</i>	Acc. Serv-ōs, <i>slaves.</i>
Voc. Serv-ě, <i>O slave.</i>	Voc. Serv-ī, <i>O slaves.</i>
Abl. Serv-ō, <i>from, by a slave.</i>	Abl. Serv-īs, <i>from, by slaves.</i>

REM.—It will be well for the pupil to accustom himself to compare the several cases with each other, and to associate together such as are alike, or nearly so.

104. Nouns in *ŭm* are declined by adding to the root the following

## NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ŭm,	ī,	ō,	ŭm,	ŭm,	ō,
Plur.	ă,	ōrūm,	īs,	ă,	ă,	īs.

## PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Rēgn-ŭm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Nom. Rēgn-ă, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Gen. Rēgn-ī, <i>of a kingdom.</i>	Gen. Rēgn-ōrūm, <i>of kingdoms.</i>
Dat. Rēgn-ō, <i>to, for a kingdom.</i>	Dat. Rēgn-īs, <i>to, for kingdoms.</i>
Acc. Rēgn-ŭm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Acc. Rēgn-ă, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Voc. Rēgn-ŭm, <i>O kingdom.</i>	Voc. Rēgn-ă, <i>O kingdoms.</i>
Abl. Rēgn-ō, <i>from, by a kingdom.</i>	Abl. Rēgn-īs, <i>from, by kingdoms.</i>

REM. 1.—In neuters of all declensions, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* are alike in each number, and in the plural end in *ă*, as in the paradigm just given.

REM. 2.—Neuters in *ŭm* are declined like masculines in *ŭs* of this declension, except in the cases just mentioned (*nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.*). Compare paradigms.

## 105. VOCABULARY.

Agnūs, ī,	lamb.	
Discipulūs, ī,	pupil	(disciple).
Dōmīnūs, ī,	master, as owner	(domineer).
Gērērē,	} to carry on, to wage (as war).	
Haedūs, ī,		
Lūpūs, ī,	kid.	
Māgistēr, trī,	wolf.	
	master, as teacher	(magisterial).

## 106. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius Balbum docēbat. 2. Balbus Caium docēbat. 3. Servus domīnum occīdet. 4. Servi domīnos timent. 5. Balbus filios laudābit. 6. Servus domīni filios timet. 7. Servi dominōrum filios timēbunt.

8. Puellae dolōrem sentiēbant. 9. Servi muros aedificābunt. 10. Pastor filiis canem dabit. 11. Pastor filiabus\* haedum dabit.

(b) 1. Balbus will instruct the slave. 2. Caius will punish the pupil. 3. They will instruct (their) pupils. 4. The slaves will fear Balbus. 5. The master was punishing (his) slaves. 6. Caius will kill the wolf. 7. Wolves will kill lambs. 8. The wolves do not see (see not) the kids.

9. Caius was waging war. 10. They are waging wars. 11. Balbus will fight. 12. The sons of Balbus will fight. 13. The master is teaching the boys. 14. The master is teaching his pupils in the garden. 15. The girls were walking in the garden. 16. He was playing in the meadow. 17. They will play in the fields. 18. The slaves were reading (their) master's letters.

---

\* Filiā has the dative and ablative plur. in *abūs* to distinguish it from the same cases of *filiūs*.

## LESSON XIX.

*Nouns.—Second Declension, continued.—Nouns in ěr and ĭr.*

107. NOUNS in ěr and ĭr, of the second declension, have the *nominative* and *vocative singular* alike, and in all the other cases are declined like *servŭs* (103), with the single exception that most nouns in ěr drop ě in the root.


## PARADIGMS.

## 1. Gĕnĕr, a son-in-law : root, gĕnĕr (ĕ not dropped).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Gĕnĕr, <i>a son-in-law.</i>	Nom. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, <i>sons-in-law.</i>
Gen. Gĕnĕr-i, <i>of son-in-law.</i>	Gen. Gĕnĕr-ŏrum, <i>of sons-in-law.</i>
Dat. Gĕnĕr-ŏ, <i>to son-in-law.</i>	Dat. Gĕnĕr-is, <i>to sons-in-law.</i>
Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŭm, <i>son-in-law.</i>	Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŏs, <i>sons-in-law.</i>
Voc. Gĕnĕr, <i>O son-in-law.</i>	Voc. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, <i>O sons-in-law.</i>
Abl. Gĕnĕr-ŏ, <i>from son-in-law.</i>	Abl. Gĕnĕr-is, <i>from sons-in-law.</i>

## 2. Agĕr, a field : root, āgr (ĕ dropped).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Agĕr, <i>a field.</i>	Nom. Agr-ĭ, <i>fields.</i>
Gen. Agr-ĭ, <i>of a field.</i>	Gen. Agr-ŏrŭm, <i>of fields.</i>
Dat. Agr-ŏ, <i>to a field.</i>	Dat. Agr-is, <i>to fields.</i>
Acc. Agr-ŭm, <i>a field.</i>	Acc. Agr-ŏs, <i>fields.</i>
Voc. Agĕr, <i>O field.</i>	Voc. Agr-ĭ, <i>O fields.</i>
Abl. Agr-ŏ, <i>from a field.</i>	Abl. Agr-is, <i>from fields.</i>

 Vĭr (*a man*) and its compounds are the only nouns in ĭr, and are declined like gĕnĕr.

## 108. VOCABULARY.

Armigĕr, ĭ,	armor-bearer.
Diligentiā, ae,	diligence.
Gĕnĕr, ĭ,	son-in-law.
Lĭbĕr, lĭbrĭ,	book.
Vulpĕs, ĭs, f.	fox

109. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer in agro ludit. 2. Pueri in agris ludēbant. 3. Magister puēros docēbit. 4. Magistri discipūlos docēbunt. 5. Magister puēris libros dabit. 6. Armigērum occidēbant.

7. Pater diligentiam (64, b) filiōrum laudābat. 8. Regīnae filia in luco ambulābat. 9. Lusciniae in lucis cantant. 10. Magistri legem non negligēt. 11. Puēri vulpem non occident.

(b) 1. The boy was running in the fields. 2. The boys will run in the fields. 3. The boys saw the master's book. 4. The pupils will give the master a book (a book to the master). 5. They will give books to (their) masters. 6. He will punish the armor-bearer. 7. He will accuse (his) son-in-law. 8. They will accuse (their) sons-in-law.

9. The master was praising (his) pupils. 10. The master was praising the diligence of (his) pupils. 11. The pupils do not hear the master. 12. The slaves will shut the gates of the city. 13. The boys were reading in the garden. 14. The girls are reading in the meadow.

## LESSON XX.

*Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.*

110. THE *Adjective* is that part of speech which is used to qualify substantives; as, *bōnūs*, good; *māgnūs*, great.

111. The form of the adjective often depends, in part, upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies;

e. g., *Bōnūs puēr*, a good boy ; *Bōnā puellā*, a good girl ; and *Bōnūm rēgnūm*, a good kingdom. Thus, *bōnūs* is the form of the adjective when used with *masc.* nouns, *bōnā* with *fem.*, and *bōnūm* with *neuter*.

112. These three forms of the adjective are declined like nouns of the same endings. Thus, the masculine is declined like *servūs* (103), and is accordingly of the *second* declension ; the feminine like *mūsā* (97), and is of the *first* declension ; and the neuter like *rēgnūm* (104), and is of the *second* declension.

## PARADIGM.

Bōnūs, good.			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Bōn-ūs,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Gen.	Bōn-ī,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ī.
Dat.	Bōn-ō,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ō.
Acc.	Bōn-ūm,	bōn-ām,	bōn-ūm.
Voc.	Bōn-ě,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Abl.	Bōn-ō,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ō.
PLURAL.			
Nom.	Bōn-ī,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Gen.	Bōn-ōrūm,	bōn-ārūm,	bōn-ōrūm.
Dat.	Bōn-īs,	bōn-īs,	bōn-īs.
Acc.	Bōn-ōs,	bōn-ās,	bōn-ā.
Voc.	Bōn-ī,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Abl.	Bōn-īs,	bōn-īs,	bōn-īs.

REM.—Adjectives like the above are called adjectives of the *First* and *Second Declension*, because they are declined like nouns of these declensions ; the *masc.* and *neut.* being declined like nouns of the second declension, and the *fem.* like those of the first.

113. Some adjectives of this declension have the *nom.* and *voc. sing.* in *ēr*, like nouns in *ēr* of the second declension. These, in all their other forms, are de-

clined like *bõnūs* in the Paradigm above, with the exception, that most of them drop *ě* before *r* of the *root* in all genders.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Těněr, tender : root, *těněr* (*ě* not dropped).

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Těněr,	těněr-ă,	těněr-ũm.
Gen.	Těněr-ĩ,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ĩ.
Dat.	Těněr-õ,	těněr-ae,	těněr-õ.
Acc.	Těněr-ũm,	těněr-ãm,	těněr-ũm.
Voc.	Těněr,	těněr-ă,	těněr-ũm.
Abl.	Těněr-õ,	těněr-ă,	těněr-õ.

## PLURAL.

Nom.	Těněr-ĩ,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ă.
Gen.	Těněr-õrũm,	těněr-ărũm,	těněr-õrum.
Dat.	Těněr-ĩs,	těněr-ĩs,	těněr-ĩs.
Acc.	Těněr-õs,	těněr-ăs,	těněr-ă.
Voc.	Těněr-ĩ,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ă.
Abl.	Těněr-ĩs,	těněr-ĩs,	těněr-ĩs.

2. Aegěr, sick : root, *aegr* (*ě* dropped).

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Aegěr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ũm.
Gen.	Aegr-ĩ,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ĩ.
Dat.	Aegr-õ,	aegr-ae,	aegr-õ.
Acc.	Aegr-ũm,	aegr-ãm,	aegr-ũm.
Voc.	Aegěr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ũm.
Abl.	Aegr-õ,	aegr-ă,	aegr-õ.

## PLURAL.

Nom.	Aegr-ĩ,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Gen.	Aegr-õrũm,	aegr-ărũm,	aegr-õrũm.
Dat.	Aegr-ĩs,	aegr-ĩs,	aegr-ĩs.
Acc.	Aegr-õs,	aegr-ăs,	aegr-ă.
Voc.	Aegr-ĩ,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Abl.	Aegr-ĩs,	aegr-ĩs,	aegr-ĩs.

REM.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *ius* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *i* in all genders, viz.: *aliūs*, another; *nullūs*, no one; *solūs*, alone; *totūs*, the whole; *ullūs*, any; *unūs*, one; *altēr*, the other; *neutēr*, neither and *utēr*, which (of the two).

114. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adjectives agree with the nouns which they qualify, in *gender*, *number*, and *case*; e. g.,

Mātēr bōnām filiām laudāt.

(The mother (her) good daughter praises).

The mother praises her good daughter.

REM. 1.—The adjective *bōnām* is in the *feminine accusative singular* to agree with its noun *filiām*.

REM. 2.—The position of the adjective seems to depend principally upon *emphasis*; and accordingly the adjective *precedes* or *follows* its noun, according as it is or is not emphatic. In the example, *bōnām* is emphatic.

REM. 3.—*Meūs*, my; *tuūs*, your (or thy); *suūs*, his, her, &c., though called *adjective pronouns* (273 and 295), are in declension and agreement really adjectives. They usually follow their nouns: e. g.,

Mūliēr ancillām suām excitāt.

(The woman maid her awakens.)

The woman awakens her maid.

## 115. VOCABULARY.

Bēnīgnūs, ā, ūm,	kind	(benign).
Bōnūs, ā, ūm,	good.	
Māgnūs, ā, ūm,	large, great	(magnitude).
Meūs,* ā, ūm,	my.	
Pulchēr, chrā, chrūm,	beautiful.	
Sēpēlirē,	to bury.	
Stūdīōsūs, ā, ūm,	studious.	
Suūs,† ā, um,	his, her, its, their.	
Tuūs, ā, ūm,	your, thy.	

\* Voc. sing. masc. is *mī*.

† The meaning of this word depends in part upon the *gender* and *number* of the subject of the proposition in which it is used. Thus, in the



116. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Regīna puēros laudābat. 2. Regīna puēros bonos laudābat. 3. Pater filium suū<sup>a</sup> docēbat. 4. Mater filias suas amābit. 5. Bona mater filias suas amābit.

6. Magister puēros docēbit. 7. Bonus magister studiōsos puēros docēbit. 8. Agricōlæ anguem non timēbunt. 9. Caius bonam legem non neglīget. 10. Christiāni legem bonam non neglīgunt. 11. Pater meus in prato ambūlat.

(b) 1. The father was burying *his*<sup>a</sup> son. 2. They are burying *their*<sup>a</sup> sons. 3. My friend does not hear my voice. 4. The daughters love (their) kind mother. 5. The mother will instruct her beautiful daughters.

6. Caius disregards the law. 7. They disregard the good laws. 8. The boys are killing your dog. 9. Good boys will not kill dogs. 10. Your dog will kill the wolf. 11. Dogs will kill large wolves.

## LESSON XXI.

*Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, continued.*

117. THE noun which the adjective qualifies is often omitted in Latin; and then in translating into English the word *man* must be supplied, if the adjective is masc. sing.; *woman*, if fem. sing.; and *thing*, if neuter sing.; e. g.,

above example (*Mūliēr ancillām suām excītāt*), *suām* means *her*, because the subject *mūliēr* is *fem. sing.*; with a masculine subject it would mean *his*, and with a plural subject, *their*, &c.

Avārūs pēcūniām āmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money loves.*)

The avaricious man loves money.

REM.—After a plur. adjec. the noun is sometimes expressed and sometimes omitted in the Eng. translation; thus, *āvārī* may be translated *avaricious men*, or simply *the avaricious*.

118. When a noun is limited by a genitive, one or both nouns may be qualified by an adjective; e. g.,

1. Māgnā rēgis cōrōnā.

(*The great of the king crown.*)

The king's great crown.

2. Māgnā bōnī rēgis cōrōnā.

(*The great of the good king crown.*)

The good king's great crown.

#### 119. VOCABULARY.

Aureūs, ā, ūm,	golden.
Avāritiā, ae,	avarice.
Avārūs, ā, ūm,	avaricious.
Impiūs, ā, ūm,	impious.
Indoctūs, ā, ūm,	unlearned.
Lābōr, ōris, m.	labor.
Poētā, ae, m.	poet.
Sāpientiā, ae,	wisdom.
Vindicārē	to avenge.

#### 120. Exercises.

(a) 1. Auream regis corōnam vidēbant. 2. Servi magnam regis corōnam vidēbunt. 3. Balbi domum evertent. 4. Impii domum evertēbant. 5. Indoctus sapientiam laudābat.

6. Magnum boni regis sceptrum timēbunt. 7. Amīci sapientiam tuam laudant. 8. Christiāni avaritiam vitābunt. 9. Mater bonas filias laudābat.

(b) 1. He disregards his slave's labor. 2. He disre-

gards his slave's great labor. 3. The beautiful daughters of the queen will dance. 4. The poet was holding the beautiful crown. 5. The poet was holding the good queen's beautiful crown. 6. The good (man) will not disregard the law. 7. The poet will *laugh at* the unlearned (man). 8. The good will not fear death.

9. They will avenge the death of their father. 10. They were avenging the death of the good (woman). 11. The impious (man) will fear death. 12. The poet will build a beautiful house.

## LESSON XXII.

*Nouns and Adjectives.—First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation.*

121. THE predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun or adjective denoting *price, value, or degree of estimation*; e. g.,

1. Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt.

(*The avaricious (man) (his) country for gold will sell.*)

The avaricious man will sell his country for gold.

2. Avārūs pēcūniām māgnī aestimāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money at a great (price) values.*)

The avaricious man values money at a great price  
(or highly).

122. RULE OF SYNTAX.—*Price*, when expressed by nouns, is generally put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, generally in the genitive.

REM. 1.—The genitive of a few nouns and the ablative of a few adjectives sometimes occur in expressions of price and value.

REM. 2.—In example 1. the noun *aurō* is in the ablative, and in example 2. the adjective *māgnī* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

## 123. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē,	to value	(estimate).
Aurūm, ī,	gold.	
Magnī,	{ at a great price, { at a high price.	
Magnī aestimārē,	{ to prize highly, { to think highly of.	
Parvī,	{ at a little price, { at a low price.	
Parvī aestimārē,	to think little of.	
Pātriā, ae,	native country	(patriotic).
Prōdītōr, ōrīs,	traitor.	
Vendērē,	to sell	(vend).
Vērūs, ō, ūm,	true, real.	
Virtūs, ūtis, f.	virtue.	

## 124. Exercises.

(a) 1. Impius patriam auro vendēbat. 2. Prodītōr patriam *parvī*<sup>3</sup> aestimābit. 3. Caius amīci sui labōrem *parvī* aestimat. 4. Bonī virtūtem *magnī*<sup>2</sup> aestimant.

5. Rex servum *magnī* aestimābit. 6. Regīna aurēam corōnam *magnī* aestimat. 7. Magnam urbis portam claudent. 8. Domīnus servi sui epistōlas aperiet. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

(b) 1. The traitor will sell (his) country for gold. 2. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price)*.<sup>2</sup> 3. The master thinks *little*<sup>3</sup> of<sup>t</sup> the labor of his slave.

4. The poet will feel real sorrow. 5. A father will not disregard the sorrow of his son. 6. The avaricious (man) will value virtue *at a low (price)*.<sup>3</sup> 7. The avaricious value money *at a high (price)*.<sup>2</sup> 8. Christians think *little*<sup>3</sup> of<sup>t</sup> money.

## LESSON XXIII.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.*

125. To the *Third Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *īs*. They end in *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*, and may be divided into four classes:

- 1) Those which have the root the same as the nominative singular (except, in a few instances, the omission or change of the radical vowel): as, *mūliēr*, a woman; root, *mūliēr*.
- 2) Those which form the root by adding a single letter to the nominative singular: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.
- 3) Those which form the root by dropping the ending of the nominative singular: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*.
- 4) Those which form the root by changing the ending of the nominative singular: as, *piētūs*, piety; root, *piētāt*.

126. CLASS I.—This class comprises nouns in *e, \*l, n, r, t, and y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pātēr*, a father; root, *pātr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ēr* generally change *ē* into *ī* in the root: as, *flūmēn*, a river; root, *flūmīn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ū* into *ī* in the root: as, *cāpūt*, a head; root, *cāpīt*.

---

\* There are only two nouns with this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *āl* and *ōr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

127. Neuter nouns of this declension have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and are declined in the other cases by adding to the root the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	—	īs,	ī,	—	—	ē (ī).
Plur.	ā (iā),	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ā (iā),	ā (iā),	ībūs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong only to neuters in *c*, *al*, and *ar*.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Căpūt, <i>n.</i> , a head. (root, <i>căpīt</i> [126, 3].)		2. Anîmāl, <i>n.</i> , an animal. (root, <i>same as nom.*</i> [126].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ā.	Nom. Anîmāl,	Anîmāl-iā.
Gen. Căpīt-īs,	Căpīt-ūm.	Gen. Anîmāl-īs,	Anîmāl-iūm.
Dat. Căpīt-ī,	Căpīt-ībūs.	Dat. Anîmāl-ī,	Anîmāl-ībūs.
Acc. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ā.	Acc. Anîmāl,	Anîmāl-iā.
Voc. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ā.	Voc. Anîmāl,	Anîmāl-iā.
Abl. Căpīt-ē,	Căpīt-ībūs.	Abl. Anîmāl-ī,	Anîmāl-ībūs.

128. Masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are declined, in all the cases except the *nominative* and *vocative singular* (which are alike), by adding to the root the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	—	īs,	ī,	ēm (īm),	—	ē (ī).
Plur.	ēs,	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ībūs.

\* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

REM.—The inclosed endings (except that of the genitive plural, which will be noticed again, 141) belong only to a few words.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Lăbör, <i>m., labor.</i>		2. Mülïer, <i>f., a woman.</i>	
(root, same as nom * [126].)		(root, same as nom. [126].)	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Nom. Mülïer,	Mülïer-ēs.
Gen. Lăbör-ïs,	Lăbör-üm.	Gen. Mülïer-ïs,	Mülïer-üm.
Dat. Lăbör-î,	Lăbör-îbūs.	Dat. Mülïer-î,	Mülïer-îbūs.
Acc. Lăbör-ēm,	Lăbör-ēs.	Acc. Mülïer-ēm,	Mülïer-ēs.
Voc. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Voc. Mülïer,	Mülïer-ēs.
Abl. Lăbör-ě,	Lăbör-îbūs.	Abl. Mülïer-ě,	Mülïer-îbūs.
3. Pătër, <i>a father.</i>		4. Frătër, <i>a brother.</i>	
(root, patr [126, 1].)		(root, frătr [126, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Nom. Frătër,	Frătr-ēs.
Gen. Pătr-ïs,	Pătr-üm.	Gen. Frătr-ïs,	Frătr-üm.
Dat. Pătr-î,	Pătr-îbūs.	Dat. Frătr-î,	Frătr-îbūs.
Acc. Pătr-ēm,	Pătr-ēs.	Acc. Frătr-ēm,	Frătr-ēs.
Voc. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Voc. Frătër,	Frătr-ēs.
Abl. Pătr-ě,	Pătr-îbūs.	Abl. Frătr-ě,	Frătr-îbūs.

## 129. VOCABULARY.

Brütüs, î,  
Caecūs, ă, ūm,  
Consul, îs,  
Finîrë,  
Frătër, trîs.  
Lăcërë,  
Mülïer, ërîs,  
Sĕnătör, örîs,  
Sîrĕn, îs, *f.*  
Söl, îs, *m.*  
Sörör, örîs,

Brutus, *a Roman consul.*  
blind.  
consul, *Roman chief magistrate.*  
to finish.  
brother.  
to shine.  
woman.  
senator.  
siren.  
sun.  
sister.

\* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

130. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat. 2. Mulier sorōres accusābit. 3. Brutum consūlem occidēbat. 4. Senatōres Caesārem occidēbant.

5. Bonus puer caput aperiet. 6. Servi capīta aperiēbant. 7. Sirēnes cantābant. 8. Sol lucēbat. 9. Cacci solem non vident. 10. Pastōres aurum magni aestīmant.

(b) 1. The boy accuses his brother. 2. They accuse their brothers. 3. The consuls were waging war. 4. The senators fear the consul. 5. The consuls fear the senators. 6. The shepherd values his dog *at a high (price)*.<sup>2</sup> 7. They will finish their labor.

8. They fear the sirens. 9. Good boys uncover their heads. 10. The blind boy does not see the sun. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The good woman loves (her) beautiful daughters. 13. Good daughters love their mothers. 14. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

## LESSON XXIV.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class II.*

131. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*: as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlīt*.

2) Nouns in *o* add *n*: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ī*, before *n* in the root: as *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgīn*.



## PARALIGMS.

1. Poēma, *n.*, a poem: root, *poēmāt* (131, 1).*Singular.*

N. Poēmă,  
G. Poēmăt-īs,  
D. Poēmăt-ī,  
A. Poēmă,  
V. Poēmă,  
A. Poēmăt-ē,

*Plural.*

N. Poēmăt-ă.  
G. Poēmăt-ŭm.  
D. Poēmăt-ībŭs, or īs \*  
A. Poēmăt-ă.  
V. Poēmăt-ă.  
A. Poēmăt-ībŭs, or īs.\*

2. Sermō, *m.*, a discourse.(root, *sermōn* [131, 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.  
G. Sermōn-īs, Sermōn-ŭm.  
D. Sermōn-ī, Sermōn-ībŭs.  
A. Sermōn-ēm, Sermōn-ēs.  
V. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.  
A. Sermōn-ē, Sermōn-ībŭs.

3. Virgō, *f.*, a virgin.(root, *virgīn* [131, 2. REM. 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.  
G. Virgīn-īs, Virgīn-ŭm.  
D. Virgīn-ī, Virgīn-ībŭs.  
A. Virgīn-ēm, Virgīn-ēs.  
V. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.  
A. Virgīn-ē, Virgīn-ībŭs.

## 132. VOCABULARY.

Accipītēr, trīs, <i>m.</i>	hawk.	
Hōmō, inīs,	man.	
Optiō, ōnīs, <i>f.</i>	choice	(optional).
Orātiō, ōnīs, <i>f.</i>	oration	
Orātōr, ōrīs,	orator.	
Pāvō, ōnīs, <i>m.</i>	peacock.	
Poēmă, tīs, <i>n.</i>	poem.	
Sermō, ōnīs, <i>m.</i>	discourse	(sermon).
Timīd-ŭs, ă, ŭm,	timid.	
Virgō, inīs,	maiden, virgin	(virgin).

\* Nouns in *a* generally take the ending *īs* instead of *ībŭs* in the dat. and abl. plural.

133. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Pater tuus poemāta legēbat. 2. Poēta sermōnem tuum laudābit. 3. Timīdae puellae pavōnem timent. 4. Virgīnes homīni viam monstrābunt.

5. Bonus puer fratri optiōnem dabit. 6. Puēri homīnes timent. 7. Indocti sapientiam *parvi*<sup>3</sup> aestimābunt. 8. Puellae sorōres suas amant.

(b) 1. My brother is reading your discourse. 2. The boys will kill the peacock. 3. They will kill the beautiful peacocks. 4. Your mother is reading the poem. 5. The girls are reading poems. 6. The doves fear the hawk. 7. The hawk will kill your dove.

8. The hawks will kill the beautiful doves. 9. Mothers feel real sorrow. 10. The unlearned will laugh at the orator. 11. The poet will hear the oration. 12. The orator prizes wisdom *highly*.<sup>2</sup> 13. The avaricious think *little*<sup>3</sup> of wisdom.

## LESSON XXV.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class III.*

134. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,\* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*: as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.

\* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (131, 1).

- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostīs*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

## PARADIGMS.

1. <i>Urbs</i> , <i>f.</i> , a city.	2. <i>Mārē</i> , <i>n.</i> , a sea.
(root, <i>urb</i> [134, 1].)	(root, <i>mār</i> [134, 3].)
<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Urb-s</i> , <i>Urb-ēs.</i>	N. <i>Mār-ē</i> , <i>Mār-iā.†</i>
G. <i>Urb-īs</i> , <i>Urb-iūm.*</i>	G. <i>Mār-īs</i> , <i>Mār-iūm.†</i>
D. <i>Urb-i</i> , <i>Urb-ībūs.</i>	D. <i>Mār-i</i> , <i>Mār-ībūs.</i>
A. <i>Urb-ēm</i> , <i>Urb-ēs.</i>	A. <i>Mār-ē</i> , <i>Mār-iā.</i>
V. <i>Urb-s</i> , <i>Urb-ēs.</i>	V. <i>Mār-ē</i> , <i>Mār-iā.</i>
A. <i>Urb-ē</i> , <i>Urb-ībūs.</i>	A. <i>Mār-i,†</i> <i>Mār-ībūs.</i>
3. <i>Arx</i> ( <i>cs</i> ), <i>f.</i> , a citadel.	4. <i>Rex</i> ( <i>gs</i> ), <i>m.</i> , a king.
(root, <i>arc</i> [134, 2].)	(root, <i>rēg</i> [134, 2].)
<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Arx</i> , <i>Are-ēs.</i>	N. <i>Rex</i> , <i>Rēg-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Are-īs</i> , <i>Are-iūm.*</i>	G. <i>Rēg-īs</i> , <i>Rēg-ūm.</i>
D. <i>Are-i</i> , <i>Are-ībūs.</i>	D. <i>Rēg-i</i> , <i>Rēg-ībūs.</i>
A. <i>Are-ēm</i> , <i>Are-ēs.</i>	A. <i>Rēg-ēm</i> , <i>Rēg-ēs.</i>
V. <i>Arx</i> , <i>Are-ēs.</i>	V. <i>Rex</i> , <i>Rēg-ēs.</i>
A. <i>Are-ē</i> , <i>Are-ībūs.</i>	A. <i>Rēg-ē</i> , <i>Rēg-ībūs.</i>
5. <i>Hostīs</i> , <i>c.</i> , an enemy.	6. <i>Nūbēs</i> , <i>f.</i> , a cloud.
(root, <i>host</i> [134, 3].)	(root, <i>nūb</i> [134, 3].)
<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Host-īs</i> , <i>Host-ēs.</i>	N. <i>Nūb-ēs</i> , <i>Nūb-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Host-īs</i> , <i>Host-iūm.</i>	G. <i>Nūb-īs</i> , <i>Nūb-iūm.</i>
D. <i>Host-i</i> , <i>Host-ībūs.</i>	D. <i>Nūb-i</i> , <i>Nūb-ībūs.</i>
A. <i>Host-ēm</i> , <i>Host-ēs.</i>	A. <i>Nūb-ēm</i> , <i>Nūb-ēs.</i>
V. <i>Host-īs</i> , <i>Host-ēs.</i>	V. <i>Nūb-ēs</i> , <i>Nūb-ēs.</i>
A. <i>Host-ē</i> , <i>Host-ībūs.</i>	A. <i>Nūb-ē</i> , <i>Nūb-ībūs.</i>

\* Monosyllables in *s* or *x*, preceded by a consonant, have *iūm* in the genitive plural. See 141, 3.

† See 127.

## 135. VOCABULARY.

Arx, arcīs, <i>f.</i>	citadel, tower.	
Civīs, īs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	citizen	( <i>civil</i> ).
Frūtex, icīs, <i>m.</i>	shrub.	
Grex, ēgīs, <i>m.</i>	flock, herd	( <i>gregarious</i> ).
Hostīs, īs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	enemy	( <i>hostile</i> ).
Jūdex, icīs,	judge	( <i>judicial</i> ).
Pax, pācīs, <i>f.</i>	peace	( <i>pacific</i> ).
Reūs, ī,	criminal.	
Servārē,	to keep, observe	( <i>serve</i> ).
Viōlārē,	to violate.	

## 136. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius leges violābit. 2. Regīna urbem condēbat. 3. Puēri magnam urbis portam claudunt. 4. Pastōres arcem condent. 5. Reus iudicis vocem timet.

6. Cives regem accusābant. 7. Consūles hostes vincēbant. 8. Pastor gregem *magni*<sup>2</sup> aestīmat. 9. Boni cives pacem *magni* aestīmant. 10. Filii patrem vindicābunt. 11. Servus fruticem in horto reperiēbat. 12. Impii patriam auro vendunt. 13. Rei iudicis vocem timēbunt. 14. Prodītōr patriam *parvi*<sup>3</sup> aestīmat. 15. Proditōres patriam *parvi* aestimabunt. 16. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat.

(b) 1. The boys will not observe the law. 2. Good citizens observe the laws. 3. They will guard the city. 4. Soldiers will guard the cities. 5. They accuse the judge. 6. The criminals will accuse their judges. 7. The king is violating the law.

8. Slaves fear their masters. 9. Slaves fear the voices of their masters. 10. The king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 11. The shepherd will guard his flock. 12. Shepherds guard their flocks. 13. The poet will

praise the judge. 14. They praise the judges. 15. Christians will observe the laws of the city. 16. He does not observe the laws of the city. 17. Good citizens will not violate the laws. 18. The boy is accusing his sister. 19. They are accusing their fathers. 20. Traitors will sell their country for gold. 21. They think *little*<sup>3</sup> of <sup>1</sup> virtue. 22. They prize money *highly*.<sup>2</sup>

## LESSON XXVI.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class IV.*

137. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*: *as*, *piētūs*, piety; root, *piētūt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlīt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root: *ēs*, *ēlēphās*, an elephant; root, *ēlēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root: *as*, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlīt*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*: *as*, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ē* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Cīvītās, <i>f.</i> , a state. (root, <i>cīvītāt</i> [137, 1].)		2. Ars, <i>f.</i> , art. (root, <i>art</i> [137, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Cīvītās,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	N. Ars,	Art-ēs.
G. Cīvītāt-īs,	Cīvītāt-ūm.	G. Art-īs,	Art-ūm.
D. Cīvītāt-ī,	Cīvītāt-ībūs.	D. Art-ī,	Art-ībūs.
A. Cīvītāt-ēm,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	A. Art-ēm,	Art-ēs.
V. Cīvītās,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	V. Ars,	Art-ēs.
A. Cīvītāt-ē,	Cīvītāt-ībūs.	A. Art-ē,	Art-ībūs.
3. Milēs, <i>c.</i> , a soldier. (root, <i>milit</i> [137, 1, REM. 2].)		4. Corpūs, <i>n.</i> , a body. (root, <i>corpōr</i> [137, 2].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Milēs,	Milit-ēs.	N. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
G. Milit-īs,	Milit-ūm.	G. Corpōr-īs,	Corpōr-ūm.
D. Milit-ī,	Milit-ībūs.	D. Corpōr-ī,	Corpōr-ībūs.
A. Milit-ēm,	Milit-ēs.	A. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
V. Milēs,	Milit-ēs.	V. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
A. Milit-ē,	Milit-ībūs.	A. Corpōr-ē,	Corpōr-ībūs.

138. The Latin, like every other language, has certain forms of expression peculiar to itself, called *Idioms*:\* e. g.,

Aliquid † tempōris,	{ something of time	( <i>Lat. Idiom</i> ).
	{ some time	( <i>Eng. Idiom</i> ).
Multū † bonī,	{ much of good	( <i>Lat. Idiom</i> ).
	{ much good	( <i>Eng. Idiom</i> ).
Quantū † vōluptātis,	{ how much of pleasure	( <i>Lat. Idiom</i> ).
	{ how much pleasure	( <i>Eng. Idiom</i> ).
Nihil stābilitātis,	{ nothing of stability	( <i>Lat. Idiom</i> ).
	{ no stability	( <i>Eng. Idiom</i> ).

REM.—These (†) are neuter adjectives used as nouns; they govern the genitive by the rule already given (65).

\* These should be carefully compared with the corresponding English. A table presenting the *Differences of Idiom* between the Latin and English is inserted in this volume for the benefit of the learner. See p. 275.

## 139. VOCABULARY.

Alīquīd,	something.	
Amittĕrĕ,	to lose.	
Avāritiā, ae,	avarice.	
Civitas, atis, f.	state.	
Corpūs, ōris, n.	body	{ ( <i>corporal</i> ). ( <i>corporeal</i> ),
Elĕphās, autis, m.	elephant.	
Figūrā, ae,	figure.	
Hābĕrĕ,	to have.	
Imprōbūs, ā, ūm,	bad, wicked.	
Multūm ( <i>neut. adj.</i> ),	much.	
Multūm bonī,	much good.	
Multūm tempōris,	much time.	
Nihil ( <i>indec.</i> ),	nothing.	
Perdĕrĕ,	to waste	( <i>perdition</i> )
Quantūm ( <i>neut. adj.</i> ),	how much?	
Sācerdōs, ōtis, m. and f.	priest, priestess.	
Stābilitās, ātis, f.	firmness, stability	( <i>stability</i> ).
Tempūs, ōris, n.	time.	
Vōluptās, ātis, f.	pleasure	( <i>voluptuous</i> )

## 140. Exercises.

(a) 1. Avaritia nihil habet voluptātis.<sup>4</sup> 2. Multum tempōris perdēbat. 3. Figūra nihil habet stabilitātis. 4. Imprōbi leges civitātis violābunt. 5. Servus elephantis corpus puĕro monstrābat.

6. Imprōbi virtūtem parvi<sup>3</sup> aestīmant. 7. Milītes urbem custodient. 8. Sacerdōtes bonam legem non violābunt. 9. Discipŭli multum tempōris perdunt. 10. Indocti multum voluptātis amittunt.

(b) 1. The boy will waste much time.<sup>4</sup> 2. They will lose much pleasure. 3. The state will observe its laws. 4. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 5. The king will punish the soldiers.

6. The priests were praising the queen. 7. The good queen will praise the priests. 8. The soldiers will fear the enemy. 9. The good value wisdom *highly*.<sup>2</sup> 10. He will laugh at the unlearned. 11. He is losing *much time*. 12. The unlearned lose *much pleasure*.

## LESSON XXVII.

*Nouns.*—*Third Declension, continued.*—*Genitives in iŭm.*—*Gender.*

141. It has already been mentioned (128, REM.) that some nouns of the third declension have the genitive plural in *iŭm* instead of *ŭm*. These are,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: as, *măřě*, *măřiŭm*; *ăňimăľ*, *ăňimăľiŭm*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.: as, *hostĭs*, *hostiŭm*; *nŭbĕs*, *nŭbiŭm*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant: as, *urbĭs*, *urbiŭm*; *arx*, *arciŭm*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ŭm* is sometimes used): as, *cliens*, *clientiŭm*; *cohors*, *cohortiŭm*.

REM.—The use of *iŭm* in words not included in the above classes must be learned from observation.

142. The gender of nouns of the third declension, when not determined by their signification (40, 44), may generally be ascertained from their *endings*, by the following

### RULES FOR GRAMMATICAL GENDER.

- 1) *Masculines.*—Most nouns in *er*, *or*, *os* *es*, increasing in the genitive, and *o*, except *do*, *go*,



and *io*, are masculine; e. g., *āēr*, air; *hōnōr*, honor; *flōs*, a flower; *pēs* (gen. *pēdis*), a foot; *sermō*, a discourse.

2) *Feminines*.—Most nouns in *do*, *go*, *io*, *as*, *is*, *ys* *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, *x*, and *es* not increasing in the genitive, are feminine; e. g., *ārundō*, a reed; *īmāgō*, an image; *ōrātiō*, an oration; *aestās*, summer; *turrīs*, a tower; *laus*, praise; *hiems*, winter; *lex*, a law; *nūbēs* (gen. *nūbīs*), a cloud.

3) *Neuters*.—Most nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter; e. g., *mārē*, a sea; *poēmā*, a poem; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, an animal; *flūmēn*, a river; *cāpūt*, a head, &c.

For exceptions, see *Table of Genders* (579).

## 143. VOCABULARY

Amīcūs, ī,*	friend	(amicable).
Animūs, ī,	mind, soul.	
Carpērē,	to gather, to pluck.	
Flōs, ōrīs,	flower	(floral).
Ignāvūs, á, ūm,	indolent, cowardly.	
Māgnītudō, īnīs,	greatness, size	(magnitude)

## 144. Exercises.

(a) 1. Veram anīmi magnitudīnem laudābunt. 2. Christiāni leges bonas non violābunt. 3. Puēri *multum tempōris*<sup>4</sup> perdunt. 4. Puer caput aperiet.

5. Servus urbis portas claudit. 6. Servi domīnum suum vindicābunt. 7. Puer patris vocem audit. 8.

---

\* Gender, when not given, must be determined by previous rules.

Puēri patrum voces audient. 9. Lupus haedum dila-  
niābat. 10. Haedi lupos timent.

(b) 1. The boys are gathering flowers. 2. He will  
pluck the beautiful flower. 3. The dog will fear the  
lion. 4. Dogs fear lions. 5. The girl will waste *much*  
*time.*<sup>4</sup> 6. Your fat er will lose *much time.* 7. The in-  
dolent lose *much pleasure.* 8. The priests are praising  
the king.

9. The queen will not violate the laws. 10. The  
king's son was violating the laws of the state. 11. My  
friend will not disregard my sorrow. 12. Your friends  
will not disregard your sorrow.

## LESSON XXVIII.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from  
each other.*

145. 1) IN any noun of the third declension, all  
the cases, except the nominative and vocative  
singular (and the accusative sing. in neuters),  
can be readily formed from each other, by a  
simple change of the endings: thus, the accu-  
sative sing. *hōnōrēm* gives (by a change of end-  
ing) the dat. *hōnōrī*, or the dat. and abl. plur.  
*hōnōrībūs*, or any other case which may be  
desired.

2) The *nominative* and *vocative singular* (and *acc.*  
*sing. in neuters*) can generally be formed from  
any other case, in some one of the following  
ways:

a) By dropping the ending of the given case: as, *hōnōrēm*,\* Nom. *hōnōr*.†

REM. 1.—This applies to many nouns whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r* and to a few with the root in *it*.

REM. 2.—*I* is changed before *t* into *ǐ*, and before *n* into *ě*; and *ě* is inserted before *r* when preceded by *t* or *b* (126, 1); e. g., Gen. *cāpītis*; root, *cāpīt*; Nom. *cāpūt*. Gen. *flūmīnis*; root, *flūmīn*; Nom. *flūmēn*. Gen. *patrīs*; root, *patr*; Nom. *pāṭēr*.

b) By changing the ending of the given case into *s*, *ēs*, *īs*, (or for neuters into) *ě*: as, *urbīs*, Nom. *urbs*; *nūbēm*, Nom. *nūbēs*, &c.

REM. 1.—This applies to most nouns of this declension.

REM. 2.—*T*, *d*, or *r*, at the end of the root, is dropped before *s*, and *i* is changed into *ě*; *cs* or *gs* will of course be written *x*; e. g., *pīētātēm*, Nom. *pīētās* (*t* dropped before *s*); *mīlītēm*, Nom. *mīlēs* (*t* dropped before *s*, and *ě* changed into *ě*); *rēgēm*, Nom. *rex* (regs. = rex).

c) By changing the ending of the given case, together with *ēr* or *ōr*, as the last syllable of the root, into *ūs*: as, *gēnērīs*, Nom. *gēnūs*.

REM.—This applies only to a few of those words whose root ends in *ēr* or *ōr*.

146. The predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun denoting the *manner* or *cause* of its action, or the *means* or *instrument* employed; e. g.,

*Irām meām dōnō plācābīt.*

(*Anger my with a gift he will appease.*)

He will appease my anger *with a gift*.

147. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *cause* or *manner* of an

\* The *acc. sing.* is used here, though any other case would do equally well.

† The *nom.* and *voc.*, it will be remembered, are the same in form.

action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the *ablative*.

REM.—In the above example, *dōnō* expresses the means employed, and is accordingly in the ablative.

#### 148. VOCABULARY.

Altūs, ā, ūm,	high, lofty	( <i>altitude</i> ).
Cātēnā, ae,	chain.	
Cīngērē,	to surround.	
Complērē,	to fill	( <i>complement</i> ).
Cunetūs, ā, ūm,	all (as a whole)	
Dōnūm, ī,	gift	( <i>donation</i> ).
Flūmēn, īnīs,	river.	
Glādiūs, ī,	sword.	
Illustrārē,	{ to illumine { to illuminate	{ ( <i>illustrate</i> )
Irā, ae,	anger	{ ( <i>ire</i> ). { ( <i>irascible</i> ).
Lux, lūcīs,	light	( <i>lucid</i> ).
Mūliēr, ērīs,	woman.	
Plācārē,	to appease	( <i>placable</i> ).

#### 149. Exercises.

(a) 1. Miles regem gladio occidēbat. 2. Regem catēna vinciēbat. 3. Sol urbem magnam sua luce illustrat. 4. Iram dono placant. 5. Cives regis iram donis placābunt. 6. Flumen urbem cingit.

7. Mulier bona epistōlas scribit. 8. Agricōla urbis portas claudet. 9. Poetārum filiae cantant. 10. Pulchrae pastōrum filiae saltābunt. 11. Caii anīmum donis placābunt.

(b) 1. The soldiers will bind the king with chains. 2. The river will surround the beautiful city. 3. The boy surrounds his head with a garland. 4. He will surround his sister's head with garlands. 5. He will

give a beautiful garland to his sister. 6. They will give beautiful garlands to their brothers.

7. They were building a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a high wall. 9. The sun illumines all (things) with its light. 10. The sun fills all (things) with its light. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The blind do not see the light of the sun.

## LESSON XXIX.

### *Adjectives.—Third Declension.*

150. ADJECTIVES of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz :

- 1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).
- 2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).
- 3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

151. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension, gender, and ending*. It must, however, be observed,

- 1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in *ě* or *ĩ*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ĩ* only.
- 2) That all except comparatives have, in the plural, the *nom., acc., and voc. neuter* in *ũ*, and the *genitive* in *ũm*.

## CLASS I.—THREE TERMINATIONS.

152. Adjectives of the first class have in the nominative singular the masculine in *ēr*, the feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ě*.

## PARADIGM.

Acěr, <i>sharp</i> .			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	Acěr,	ācr-īs,	ācr-ě.
G.	Acr-ís,	ācr-ís,	ācr-ís.
D.	Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.
A.	Acr-ēm,	ācr-ēm,	ācr-ě.
V.	Acěr,	ācr-ís,	ācr-ě.
A.	Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.
PLURAL.			
N.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iā.
G.	Acr-iūm,	ācr-iūm,	ācr-iūm.
D.	Acr-ibūs,	ācr-ibūs,	ācr-ibūs.
A.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iā.
V.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iā.
A.	Acr-ibūs,	ācr-ibūs,	ācr-ibūs.

## CLASS II.—TWO TERMINATIONS.

153. Adjectives of the second class have both the masculine and feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ě*, except comparatives,\* which have the masculine and feminine in *iŕ*, and the neuter in *iŕs*.

---

\* The use of comparatives will be illustrated in connection with the comparison of adjectives.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Tristīs, *sad*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Trist-īs,	trist-ě.	N. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
G. Trist-īs,	trist-īs.	G. Trist-iŭm,	trist-iŭm.
D. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	D. Trist-ībŭs,	trist-ībŭs.
A. Trist-ēm,	trist-ě.	A. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
V. Trist-īs,	trist-ě.	V. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
A. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	A. Trist-ībŭs,	trist-ībŭs.

2. Tristiŏr (*comparative*), *more sad*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	N. Tristiŏr-ēs,	tristiŏr-ā.
G. Tristiŏr-īs,	tristiŏr-īs.	G. Tristiŏr-ŭm,	tristiŏr-ŭm.
D. Tristiŏr-ī,	tristiŏr-ī.	D. Tristiŏr-ībŭs,	tristiŏr-ībŭs.
A. Tristiŏr-ēm,	tristiŭs.	A. Tristiŏr-ēs,	tristiŏr-ā.
V. Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	V. Tristiŏr-ēs,	tristiŏr-ā.
A. Tristiŏr-ě (ī),	tristiŏr-ě (ī).	A. Tristiŏr-ībŭs,	tristiŏr-ībŭs.

## CLASS III.—ONE TERMINATION.

154. All other adjectives of this declension have *only one* form in the nominative singular for all genders.

## PARADIGMS.

1. Fēlix, *happy*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Fēlix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
G. Fēlic-īs,	fēlic-īs.	G. Fēlic-iŭm,	fēlic-iŭm.
D. Fēlic-ī,	fēlic-ī.	D. Fēlic-ībŭs,	fēlic-ībŭs.
A. Fēlic-ēm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
A. Fēlic-ě (ī),	fēlic-ě (ī).	A. Fēlic-ībŭs,	fēlic-ībŭs.

PARADIGMS,—*continued.*

2. Prudens, <i>prudent.</i>			
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Prūdēns,	prūdēns.	N. Prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēt-iā.
G. Prūdēt-īs,	prūdēt-īs.	G. Prūdēt-iūm,	prūdēt-iūm.
D. Prūdēt-ī,	prūdēt-ī.	D. Prūdēt-ībūs,	prūdēt-ībūs.
A. Prūdēt-ēm,	prūdēns.	A. Prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēt-iā.
V. Prūdēns,	prūdēns.	V. Prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēt-iā.
A. Prūdēt-ē (ī),	prūdēt-ē(ī).	A. Prūdēt-ībūs,	prūdēt-ībūs.

## 155. VOCABULARY.

Acēr, acris, acrē,	sharp, severe	( <i>acrid</i> ).
Fidēlis, ě,	trusty, faithful	( <i>fidelity</i> ).
Fortis, ě,	brave	( <i>fortitude</i> ).
Glōriā, ae,	glory.	
Māculārē,	to blemish, to stain	( <i>maculate</i> ).
Maxīmī,	at a very high (price), very highly.	
Maxīmī aestimārē,	to prize very highly.	
Pausanias, ae,	Pausanias,	
	<i>a distinguished Spartan general.</i>	
Prūdēns, entis,	prudent, cautious.	
Turpīs, ě,	base, disgraceful	( <i>turpitude</i> )
Sāpiēns, entis,	wise.	
Splendēns, entis,	shining	( <i>splendid</i> ).

## 156. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābat. 2. Fidēles servi domīnos suos vindicābunt. 3. Sol splendens cuncta suā luce illustrābat. 4. Sapientes virtūtem *maximi*<sup>2</sup> aestimant.

5. Sapiens leges acres non violābit. 6. Christiāni virtūtem laudant. 7. Boni virtūtem *magni* aestimābant. 8. Pausanias gloriam turpi morte maculābat. 9. Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpi morte maculābat.

(b) 1. The brave soldier will fight. 2. The brave king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 3. The brave will



conquer the cowardly. 4. Wise (men) will not stain their glory by a base death.

5. The good prize the laws of the state *very highly*.<sup>2</sup>

6. Kind masters do not punish faithful slaves. 7. A prudent (man) will not violate the laws of his country.

8. The prudent do not violate severe laws.

### LESSON XXX.

*Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension.*

157. ADJECTIVES are either of the *first* and *second declension*, or of the *third only*: those of the first and second declension are declined in the *masculine* and *neuter* like nouns of the *second* declension, and in the *feminine* like nouns of the *first*; those of the third declension are declined throughout like nouns of the *third*. (See Lesson XXIII.)

158. Endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			<i>A few† have Sing. thus:</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	2.*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2			
N.	ūs, ěr,†	ǎ,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ǎ.	ūs, ěr,	ǎ,	ŭm.
G.	ī,	ae,	ī.	ōrŭm, ārŭm,	ōrŭm.		īūs,	īūs,	īūs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ī,	ī,	ī.
A.	ŭm,	ǎm,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ǎ.	ŭm,	ǎm,	ŭm.
V.	ě, ěr,†	ǎ,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ǎ.	ě, ěr,	ǎ,	ŭm.
A.	ō,	ā,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ō,	ā,	ō.

\* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in ěr, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (ě is sometimes dropped): ěr, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending*; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

† See list, 113. REM.

## 159. Endings of adjectives of the Third Declension.

	THREE TERM.			TWO TERM.		COMPARATIVES.		ONE TERM.	
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F. N.</i>		<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	ēr,*	īs,	ě.	īs,	ě.	ōr,†	ūs.	various.	
G.	īs,	īs,	īs.	īs,	īs.	ōr†-īs,	ōr-īs.	īs.	
D.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī.	ōr-ī,	ōr-ī.	ī.	
A.	ēm,	ēm,	ě.	ēm,	ě.	ōr-ēm,	ūs.	ēm.‡	
V.	ēr,*	īs,	ě.	īs,	ě.	ōr,	ūs.	like nom.	
A.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī.	ōr-ě (ōr-ī),	ōr-ě (ōr-ī).	ě (ī).	
N.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	iā.
G.	iūm,	iūm,	iūm.	iūm,	iūm.	ōr-iūm,	ōr-iūm.	iūm,	iūm.
D.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.
A.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	iā.
V.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	iā.
A.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

160. Nouns of the *Fourth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ūs*, and the nominative in *ūs* and *ū*.

161. In this declension, nouns in *ūs* (with a few exceptions) are *masculine*, and those in *ū* are *neuter*.

162. The root is found by dropping the *nominative ending*: as, *fructūs*, fruit; root, *fruct*: *cornū*, a horn; root, *corn*.

163. Nouns in *ūs* (of the fourth declension) are declined with the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing	ūs,	ūs,	uī,	ūm,	ūs,	ū.
Plur.	ūs,	uūm,	ibūs (ūbūs‡),	ūs,	ūs,	ibūs (ūbūs‡).

\* The remark on this ending, in adjectives of the first and second declension, is also applicable here (See 158, REM. 2.)

† The *ōr* here given in connection with the case-endings belongs to the root; in the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* of the *neut. sing.*, it is changed into *ūs*

‡ Neut. like nom.

§ This ending is used only in a few words

164. Neuters in *ū*, though formerly considered indeclinable in the singular, are found to have the genitive in *ūs*, and are declined with the following

## NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing. <i>ū</i>	<i>ūs</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> .
Plur. <i>uā</i> ,	<i>uūm</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> ( <i>ūbūs*</i> ),	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> ( <i>ūbūs*</i> ).

## PARADIGMS.

1. Fructūs, <i>m.</i> , <i>fruit.</i>		2. Cornū, <i>n.</i> , <i>a horn.</i>	
(root, <i>fruct.</i> )		(root, <i>corn.</i> )	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	N. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
G. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-uūm.	G. Corn-ūs,	Corn-uūm.
D. Fruct-uī,	Fruct-ībūs.	D. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.
A. Fruct-ūm,	Fruct-ūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
V. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	V. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
A. Fruct-ū.	Fruct-ībūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.

## 165. VOCABULARY.

Currūs, ūs,	chariot.	
Dux, dūcīs, <i>m. and f.</i>	leader, guide	( <i>duke</i> ).
Et,	and.	
Excrūciārē,	to torture	( <i>excruciate</i> ).
Exercītūs, ūs,	army.	
Innōcens, entīs,	innocent.	
Luctūs, ūs,	grief, sadness.	
Mānūs, ūs, <i>f.</i>	hand	( <i>manacle</i> ).
Mētūs, ūs,	fear.	
Nescīrē,	not to know, to be ignorant of.	
Sinūs, ūs,	bosom	( <i>sinuous</i> ).
Sullā, ae,	Sulla, <i>a man's name.</i>	

\* This ending is used only in a few words.

166. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sinus metum nescit. 2. Luctus animum ex-cruciat. 3. Rex hostium (141, 2) currus videt. 4. Hostes regis currum audient. 5. Duces exercitui viam monstrābunt. 6. Puella epistolam sua manu scribit.

7. Caius epistolas sua manu scribēbat. 8. Servi Sulae domum evertēbant. 9. Servus domini mortem vindicābit. 10. Pastōris filius mortem non timet. 11. Luctus et metus animum excruciant (612, REM.).

(b) 1. The innocent (man) knows not fear. 2. The innocent know not fear. 3. The bosom of the innocent knows not fear. 4. The boy's mother will write the letter with her own hand. 5. The father is writing the letters with his own hand.

6. The slave will show the beautiful chariot to his master. 7. The father will avenge the death of his son. 8. Fear tortures the cowardly. 9. Fear does not torture the brave. 10. The cowardly fear death. 11. Brave soldiers do not fear the enemy.

## LESSON XXXI.

*Nouns.—Fifth Declension.*

167. NOUNS of the *Fifth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ēi*,\* and the nominative in *ēs*.

168. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except *dies*, a day, masculine and feminine in the singular,

\* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēi* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where *i* is common).

and masculine only in the plural; and *měřīdiēs*, mid-day, masculine.

REM.—The fifth declension comprises only a few words, and of these few, only two,—*diēs*, a day, and *rēs*, a thing, are complete in the plural

169. The root is formed by dropping the nominative ending: as, *diēs*, a day; root, *dī*.

170. Nouns of this declension are declined with the following

## CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ēs,	ēī,*	ēī,*	ēm,	ēs,	ē.
Plur.	ēs,	ērūm,	ēbūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbūs.

## PARADIGMS.

<i>Rēs, f., a thing.</i> (root, <i>r</i> .)		<i>Diēs, m. and f., a day.</i> (root, <i>dī</i> .)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G. R-ēī,	R-ērūm.	G. Di-ēī,	Di-ērūm.
D. R-ēī,	R-ēbūs.	D. Di-ēī,	Di-ēbūs.
A. R-ēm,	R-ēs.	A. Di-ēm,	Di-ēs.
V. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A. R-ē,	R-ēbūs.	A. Di-ē,	Di-ēbūs.

## 171. VOCABULARY.

*Aciēs, ēī,* line of battle.

*Aciēm instruērě,* to draw up an army in order of battle.

*Cōpiæ,† arūm,* forces (copious).

*Diēs, ēī,* day.

\* See note on page 78.

† *Cōpiæ* is of the first declension, plural; the singular is not used with this signification.

Edūcērē,	to lead forth	( <i>educē</i> ).
Emērē,	to purchase.	
Equitātūs, ūs,	cavalry.	
Fidēs, ēī,	faith, one's word	( <i>fidelity</i> ).
Instruērē,	to arrange, to array	( <i>instruct</i> ).
Omnīs, ē,	all, every.	
Proxīmūs, ū, ūm,	nearest, next	( <i>proximate</i> ).
Rēducērē,	to lead back	( <i>reduce</i> ).
Servārē,	to keep, to observe	( <i>serve</i> ).
Spēs, ēī,	hope.	

172. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Christiānus fidem suam servat. 2. Boni fidem suam non violant. 3. Dies veniet. 4. Proxīmo die (88) Caesar copias suas reducēbat. 5. Proxīmo die Caesar aciem instruēbat.

6. Caesar equitātum omnem educēbat. 7. Puellam regis currum vidēbat. 8. Hostium (141, 2) copias vidēbunt. 9. Tullia puellis viam monstrābit. 10. Tullia epistōlam sua manu scribit.

(b) 1. The king will keep his word. 2. The queen will not break her word. 3. All (men) prize hope *very highly*.<sup>2</sup> 4. They do not purchase hope with gold. 5. The wise will not sell hope for gold (122).

6. He prizes his cavalry *very highly*. 7. The king thinks *highly* of<sup>1</sup> his whole army. 8. The soldiers will observe the laws. 9. The citizens will observe all the laws of the state. 10. The wise value true greatness of mind *very highly*. 11. The avaricious value money *very highly*.

## LESSON XXXII.

*Nouns.—Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender.*

## 173. TERMINATIONS of Substantives.

SINGULAR.								
Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.	
F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.	
N. ă.	ūs, ěr, ĭr.	ūm.	various.		ūs.	ū.	ēs.	
G. ae.	ī.		īs.		ūs.		ēī.*	
D. ae.	ō.		ī.		uī.	ū.	ēī.*	
A. ām.	ūm.		ēm (īm). like nom.		ūm.	ū.	ēm.	
V. ă.	ě, ěr, ĭr.	ūm.	like nom.		ūs.	ū.	ēs.	
A. ā.	ō.		ē (ī).		ū.		ē.	

PLURAL.								
N. ae.	ī.	ă.	ēs,	ă, or iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.	
G. ārūm.	ōrūm.		ūm (iūm).		uūm.		ērūm.	
D. īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.	
A. ās.	ōs.	ă.	ēs.	ă, or iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.	
V. ae.	ī.	ă.	ēs.	ă, or iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.	
A. īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.	

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek. The only *nominative endings* not already noticed, are *e*, *as*, and *es*, in the first declension, and *os* and *on* in the second.

174. The following are specimens of the declension of Greek nouns.

\* See 167, REM.

## DECLENSION I.

1. Aenēās (
- a man's name*
- ). 2. Anchīsēs (
- a man's name*
- ).

N. Aenē-ās,  
G. Aenē-ae,  
D. Aenē-ae,  
A. Aenē-ām (ān),  
V. Aenē-ā,  
A. Aenē-ā.

N. Anchīs-ēs,  
G. Anchīs-ae,  
D. Anchīs-ae,  
A. Anchīs-ēn,  
V. Anchīs-ē (ā),  
A. Anchīs-ē (ā).

3. Epitome, *an abridgment*.*Singular.*

N. Epītōm-ē,  
G. Epītōm-ēs,  
D. Epītōm-ae,  
A. Epītōm-ēn,  
V. Epītōm-ē,  
A. Epītōm-ē,

*Plural.*

Epītōm-ae.  
Epītōm-ārūm.  
Epītōm-īs.  
Epītōm-ās.  
Epītōm-ae.  
Epītōm-īs.

## DECLENSION II.

1. Ilion,
- n. (name of a city)*
- . 2. Delos,
- f. (name of an island)*
- .

N. Ili-ōn,  
G. Ili-ī,  
D. Ili-ō,  
A. Ili-ōn,  
V. Ili-ōn,  
A. Ili-ō.

N. Dēl-ōs,  
G. Dēl-ī,  
D. Dēl-ō,  
A. Dēl-ōn,  
V. Dēl-ē,  
A. Dēl-ō.

## DECLENSION III.

1. Pericles (
- a man's name*
- ). 2. Hērōs,
- a hero*
- .

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Pērīcl-ēs,  
G. Pērīcl-īs,  
D. Pērīcl-ī,  
A. Pērīcl-ēm (eā),  
V. Pērīcl-ēs (ē),  
A. Pērīcl-ē.

N. Hērō-s, Hērō-ēs.  
G. Hērō-īs, Hērō-ūm.  
D. Hērō-ī, Hērō-ībūs.  
A. Hērō-ēm (ā), Hērō-ēs (ās).  
V. Hērō-s, Hērō-ēs.  
A. Hērō-ē, Hērō-ībūs.



175 Table of Genders of Nouns as determined by Nom. Ending.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Dec. I.	ās and ēs.	ā and ē.	
Dec. II.	ēr, ĩr, ūs (and os*).		ūm (and on*).
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, increasing in gen. and o, <i>except</i> do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s impure,† x and es not increasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us
Dec. IV.	ūs.		ū.
Dec. V.		ēs.	

(For exceptions see Table of Genders [579]).

## 176. VOCABULARY.

Accĭpĕrĕ,†	to receive, to accept.
Achillĕs,‡ ĩs,	Achilles, <i>a Grecian hero.</i>
Aenĕās, ae,	Aeneas, <i>a Trojan prince.</i>
Anchĭsĕs, ae,	Anchises, <i>the father of Aeneas.</i>
Ascāniŭs, ĩ,	Ascanius, <i>the son of Aeneas.</i>
Carthāgŏ, ĩnĭs,	Carthage, <i>a city in the northern part of Africa.</i>

\* The inclosed endings belong to Greek nouns, many of which, being proper names (of men and women), have natural gender.

† Preceded by a consonant.

‡ Accĭpĕrĕ forms its imperfect and future tenses like verbs of the fourth conjugation. (See 270, 271.)

‡ Achillĕs, being a Greek noun, is declined like Pericles (174).

Dīdō,* ūs, or ōnīs,	Dido, <i>queen of Tyre and afterwards the foundress of Carthage.</i>	
Epītōmē, ēs,	abridgment	( <i>epitome</i> )
Hērōs, ōīs,	hero.	
Histōriā, ae,	history.	
Industriā, ae,	industry.	
Nostēr, trā, trūm,	our.	
Rēgnūm, ī,	kingdom, government.	
Rōmā, ae,	Rome, <i>city of Italy, on the river Tiber.</i>	
Trōjanūs, ā, ūm,	Trojan.	

177. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, urbem condēbat. 2. Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnūm accīpit. 3. Dido Carthagīnem condēbat. 4. Epītōmen oratiōnis suae scribet.

5. Caesar milītes omnes educēbat. 6. Industria *multum voluptātis* habet. 7. Labōrem suum finiet. 8. Horti nostri multos flores habent. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

(b) 1. Aeneas was founding Rome. 2. The son of Anchises was founding Rome. 3. Aeneas, the son of Anchises, was founding the city of Rome (the city Rome) 4. The Trojan hero loves queen Dido. 5. They will kill the Trojan hero.

6. They are reading an abridgment of the history. 7. The soldiers praise Caesar. 8. Aeneas praises his father Anchises. 9. The Trojans fear Achilles. 10. Achilles was slaying the Trojans. 11. The soldier is showing his sword to the boy. 12. They will show their swords to the boys.

---

\* Dido is sometimes declined regularly, as a Latin noun of the third declension, and sometimes has the genitive in *ūs*, and all the other cases like the nom.

## LESSON XXXIII.

*Verbs.*—Essě, *to be.* *Predicate, Essě, with a Noun or an Adjective.*

178. Essě, *to be*, is an irregular verb (i. e., it does not belong to either of the four conjugations already noticed), and gives us in the *third persons* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses*, the following

## PARADIGM.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Present.	Est, he, she, or it is,	Sunt, they are,
Imperfect.	Erăt, “ “ “ was,	Erant, “ were,
Future.	Erīt, “ “ “ will be.	Erunt, “ will be.

179. The predicate of a proposition is sometimes expressed by the verb *essě* (to be), with a noun or an adjective; e. g.,

1. Terră est rôtundă.

The earth is round.

REM. 1.—In this example, the predicate is not simply *est*, but *est rôtundă*; for the assertion is not that the earth *is* (i. e. exists), but that the earth *is round*.

REM. 2.—The adjective *rôtundă* agrees with the *subject terră* in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, by the rule already given. (114).

2. Plūrīmae stellae sōlēs sunt.

(*Very many stars suns are.*)

Very many stars are suns.

REM.—Here the predicate is *sōlēs sunt*.

180. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate after *essě* is put in the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing.

REM.—In example 2, *sōlēs* is in the nominative by this rule.

181. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The adjectives *dignūs*, *indignūs*, *contentūs*, *praeditūs*, *frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g.,

Virtūs parvō contentā est.

(*Virtue with little content is.*)

Virtue is content *with little*.

REM.—*Parvō* in this example is a neut. adj. used as a noun; it is put in the *ablative* after *contentā*, by the rule just given.

## 182. VOCABULARY

Arbōr, ōrīs, <i>f.</i>	tree	( <i>arbor</i> ).
Beātūs, ā, ūm,	happy	( <i>beatitudo</i> )
Candidūs, ā, ūm,	white	( <i>candid</i> ).
Contentūs, ā, ūm,	content, contented.	
Culpā, ae,	blame, fault	( <i>culpable</i> ).
Dignūs, ā, ūm,	worthy	( <i>dignity</i> ).
Essē,	to be.	
Est,	is, it is.	
Fācērē,*	to do, to make.	
Flōrērē,	to flourish.	
Frētūs, ā, ūm,	relying on.	
Indignūs, ā, ūm,	unworthy	( <i>indignity</i> ).
Laus, dīs,	praise	( <i>laud</i> ).
Libēr, ērā, ērūm,	free	( <i>liberty</i> ).
Nēmō (īnis,†)	nobody, no one.	
Nix, nivīs,	snow.	
Nunquām,	never.	
Parvūm ( <i>neut. adj.</i> ),	little, a little.	
Praeditūs, ā, ūm,	endued with.	
Quām,	how.	
Quām multī, ae, ā,	how many.	
Sempēr,	always.	
Virēs, viriūm, <i>plur. of vis</i> ,	strength.	
Vītā, ae,	life	ot ( <i>vital</i> ).

\* This verb, together with some others of the third conjugation, has the imperfect and future like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

† The genitive *neminis* and ablative *nemine* are not in good use.

183. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Nix est candīda. 2. Bonus est beātus. 3. Boni sunt beāti. 4. Sapientes parvo contenti sunt. 5. Servus laude dignus est. 6. Patris mei servus laude indīgnus est.

7. Caius patriam auro vendēbat. 8. Caius, homo vita indīgnus, patriam auro vendet. 9. Quam multi indīgni luce sunt! 10. Arbor florēbat. 11. Balbus multa laude florēbat.

(b) 1. No-one is always happy. 2. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. 3. The avaricious are not contented. 4. Caius is not free from blame. 5. Caius is unworthy of praise.

6. Balbus praises my fidelity. 7. Balbus, a man endowed with great virtue, was praising my fidelity. 8. Balbus does *much good*.<sup>4</sup> 9. Caius is unworthy of life. 10. Caius, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*.<sup>4</sup> 11. Caius, relying on his strength, does not fear the lion. 12. The slaves are not free from blame. 13. Christians are contented with little.

## LESSON XXXIV.

*Verbs.—Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with Esse in the Predicate.*

184. AN *infinitive mood* (with the words belonging to it) (9) may be used as a noun, and thus become the subject of a verb. When thus used it is in the neuter gender (44, 3), and of course takes the adjectives in agreement with it in the same gender; e. g.,

Difficīlē est jūdicārě.

(*Difficult (it) is to judge.*)

It is difficult *to judge*, or, *To judge* is difficult.

REM.—Here *jūdicārě* (to judge) is the subject of the proposition, for it is that of which the predicate *difficile est* (is difficult) is affirmed. It is in the nominative case, and subject of the verb *est*, and the adjective *difficīlē* agrees with it.

185. When the noun in the predicate after *essě* does not denote the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the *genitive*; e. g.,

Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārě.

(*Of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.*)

It is the duty (or part) of a Christian to wrong nobody.

REM. 1.—In this example the subject is *nēmīnēm viōlārě*, and the predicate, *Christiānī est*.

REM. 2.—Combining articles 180 and 185 we have the following

186. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate, after the verb *essě*, is put,

1) In the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Cīcērō ērāt consūl*, *Cicero was consul*.

2) In the *genitive* when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārě*, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody*.

187. In rendering into English, when a genitive follows any part of the verb *essě* (as *est*, *ērāt*, *ērīt*, &c.), such a substantive as *duty*, *part*, *mark*, *business*, &c., must be supplied.

English Idiom.	Latin Idiom.
It is the part	} of a wise man.      It is of a wise man.
" duty	
" business	
" mark	
" character	

## 188. VOCABULARY.

Difficilis, ě,	difficult.	
Errāre,	to err.	
Facilis, ě,	easy	(facility).
Fidē violāre,	to break one's word.	
Hūmānūs, a, um,	human, natural to man.	
Māgnū est,	it is a great thing.	
Peccāre,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Turpis, ě,	base, disgraceful	(turpitude).
Violāre,	{ to offend against, to wrong, to break a law, one's word, &c. } (violate).	

## 189. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Humānum*<sup>6</sup> est peccāre. 2. *Humānum* est errāre. 3. *Turpe* est fidem suam violāre. 4. *Patris*<sup>7</sup> est filium suum docēre. 5. *Regis* est regnāre.

6. *Matris* est filias suas docēre. 7. *Servi* est viam monstrāre. 8. *Turpe* est poētae domum evertēre. 9. *Matres* filias laudant. 10. *Boni* est fidem servāre. 11. *Impi* est fidem violāre.

REM. 1.—In English, when an infinitive mood is the subject of a proposition, the pronoun *it* is used before the verb *is*; hence, in translating such sentences into Latin, this pronoun *it*, which represents, as it were, the coming infinitive or clause, must be omitted.

REM. 2.—After *it is*, such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark* must be omitted in translating into Latin.

(b) 1. *It* is a great (thing) not to fear death.<sup>6</sup> 2. *It* is easy to err. 3. *It* is (the duty)<sup>7</sup> of a Christian to keep (his) word. 4. *It* is (the part) of a wise (man) to keep the laws.

5. *It* is disgraceful to neglect a son. 6. *It* is natural-to-man to prize money *very highly*. 7. *It* is the mark of an unlearned man *to think little* of wisdom. 8. *It* is the slave's *business* to shut the gates of the city. 9. *It* is difficult to shut the gates of the city. 10. A

good citizen will observe the laws of his country. 11. It is the *part*<sup>7</sup> of a good citizen to observe the laws of his country.

---

## LESSON XXXV.

*Verbs.—Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations.*

190. THE tenses which we have thus far used, viz., the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*, represent the action of the verb as continuing (11), i. e., as *not completed*. There are also three tenses for *completed* action, viz.:

- 1) The *Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *present* time, i. e., as just completed; e. g., *āmāvīt*, he has loved.
- 2) The *Pluperfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *past* time; as, *āmāverāt*, he had loved.
- 3) The *Future Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *future* time; as, *āmāverīt*, he will have loved.

191. The tenses for *completed* action are not formed from the same root as those for action *not completed*, but from another called the *second root*. This is formed in various ways.

192. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second root* is formed by adding *āv*, *ū*,\* and *īv*, respectively, to the root† of the verb; e. g.:

---

\* A very few verbs of the second conjugation add *ev*, which may be regarded as the full form for which *u* is a contraction (the *e* being dropped, and *v* changed to *u*).

† This we will now call the 1st root, to distinguish it from the 2d.



		<i>First Root.</i>	<i>Second Root.</i>
Conj. I.	Amāřě,	ăm,	ămāv.
Conj. II.	Möněřě,	mön,	mönũ.
Conj. IV.	Audīřě,	aud,	audīv.

193. In verbs of all the conjugations, the *third persons singular* of the tenses for *completed action* are formed by adding to the *second root* the following *endings*:

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
īt,	ěrăt,	ěrīt.

## PARADIGMS.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amāřě, to love: 1st root, *ăm*; 2d root, *ămāv*.

Perfect.	Amāv-īt,	he, she, or it has loved (or loved).*
Pluperf.	Amāv-ěrăt,	“ “ “ had loved.
Fut. Perf.	Amāv-ěrīt,	“ “ “ will have loved.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Möněřě, to advise: 1st root, *mön*; 2d root, *mönũ*.

Perfect.	Mönu-īt,	he, she, or it has advised (or advised).*
Pluperf.	Mönu-ěrăt,	“ “ “ had advised.
Fut. Perf.	Mönu-ěrīt,	“ “ “ shall have advised.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Audīřě, to hear: 1st root, *aud*; 2d root, *audīv*.

Perfect.	Audīv-īt,	he, she, or it has heard (or heard).*
Pluperf.	Audīv-ěrăt,	“ “ “ had heard.
Fut. Perf.	Audīv-ěrīt,	“ “ “ shall have heard.

194. In any regular verb, the third persons *plural*, in the tenses for completed action, are formed by simply

\* The perfect in Latin corresponds sometimes to our *perfect indefinite*, and sometimes to our *perfect definite* (perfect with have); hence, *ămāvīt* may be translated either *he has loved*, or *he loved*.

inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third person singular (35), except in the perfect, where *it* must be changed into *ērunt*; e. g.,

		<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Fut. Perfect.</i>
Conj. I.	{	Sing. Amāv- <i>it</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērāt</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērīt</i> .
	{	Plur. Amāv- <i>ērunt</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērant</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērint</i> .
Conj. II.	{	Sing. Mōnu- <i>it</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērāt</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērīt</i> .
	{	Plur. Mōnu- <i>ērunt</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērant</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērint</i> .
Conj. IV.	{	Sing. Audīv- <i>it</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērāt</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērīt</i> .
	{	Plur. Audīv- <i>ērunt</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērant</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērint</i> .

### 195. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē, āv,*	to estimate, to value.	
Arārē, āv,	to plough	( <i>arable</i> ).
Audire, iv,	to hear	( <i>audible</i> ).
Dilāniārē, āv,	to tear in pieces.	
Jūrārē, āv,	to swear.	
Laudārē, āv,	to praise	( <i>laudable</i> .)
Monstrārē, āv,	to show.	
Plācārē, āv,	to appease	( <i>placable</i> .)
Sēpēlirē, iv,	to bury.	
Servārē, āv,	to keep, to observe.	
Terrērē, u,	to terrify, to frighten.	

### 196. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer juravērat. 2. Puēri juravērunt. 3. Agricōla aravērit. 4. Servi aravērunt. 5. Vulpes puēros terruit. 6. Vulpes puēros terruērunt. 7. Poētāe sapiēntiam *parvi* aestimāvit.

8. Veram virtūtem magni aestimavērat. 9. Christiānus pecuniam *parvi* aestimāvit. 10. Christiāni est pecuniam *parvi* aestimāre. 11. Magnam poētāe sapi-

---

\* The learner will readily form the *second* root from the *first*, by adding the endings here given.

entiam parvi aestimavĕrant. 12. Pater filium sepelĭvit. 13. Puĕri patrem sepelivĕrant.

(b) 1. The boy has heard a voice. 2. The boys had heard their father's voice. 3. The slave had shown the way to the shepherd. 4. They will have shown the house to their master.

5. Caius had praised his son. 6. He has praised his slaves. 7. The lion has torn the horse in pieces. 8. The fox had frightened the boy. 9. They had valued wisdom *at a low price*. 10. It is easy to keep (one's) word. 11. It is difficult to appease anger. 12. He has appeased the boy's anger with a gift.

## LESSON XXXVI.

*Third Conjugation.*—Class I.—Second Root *the same as the First*.

197. Most verbs of the third conjugation may be divided into two classes, viz.:

1) Those which have the *second root* the same as the first.

2) Those which form it by the addition of *s*.

198. The *first class* comprises most verbs of this conjugation which have the first root in a vowel, together with a few which have it in a consonant; e. g.,

Suĕrĕ, *to sew*:            1st root, sŭ;            2d root, sŭ.  
Dĕfendĕrĕ, *to defend*:    “        dĕfend;        “        dĕfend.

199. The manner in which the *third persons* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed from the second root, has already been explained. See 193, 194.

## PARADIGM.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

Dēfendĕrĕ, to defend: 1st root, *dēfend*; 2d root, *dēfend*.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
Dēfend-īt,	dēfend-ĕrāt,	dēfend-ĕrīt.
Dēfend-ērunt,	dēfend-ĕrant,	dēfend-ĕrint.

200. The *Preposition* is the part of speech which expresses the various relations of objects; \* e. g.,

Rex *pĕr* urbĕm ambŭlābāt.

(*The king through the city was walking.*)

The king was walking *through* the city.

REM.—In this example, *pĕr*, through, is a *preposition*.

201. PARTIAL RULE OF SYNTAX.—Some prepositions govern the *accusative*, and some the *ablative*.

REM. 1.—Whenever a preposition occurs in the exercises, its particular case will be given in the vocabularies.

REM. 2.—The *accusative*, *urbĕm*, in the above example, is governed by the preposition *pĕr*.

## 202. VOCABULARY.

Aedificiŭm, i,	building, edifice.	
Ambŭlārĕ, av,	to walk.	
Annuĕrĕ, annŭ,	to assent, to give assent.	
Coneiliŭm, i,	council, meeting.	
Condiŭtiō, ōnīs,	condition, terms.	
Constituĕrĕ, constitŭ,	to arrange, to appoint	( <i>constitute</i> ).
Dēfendĕrĕ, dēfend,	to defend.	
Dormirĕ, iv,	to sleep	( <i>dormant</i> ).
Incendĕrĕ, incend,	to set on fire, to burn	( <i>incendiary</i> ).
Lĕgiō, ōnīs,	legion, body of foot-soldiers.	
Pĕr ( <i>prep. with acc.</i> ),	through.	
Proeliŭm, i,	battle.	

\* It will be remembered, however, that certain relations are sometimes expressed by the *cases* of nouns (63, 80, 86).

Privātūs, ā, ūm,	private, personal.	
Rēliquūs, ā, ūm,	remaining, the rest	( <i>relic</i> ).
Respuērē, respū,	to reject.	
Rōmānī ( <i>adj. pl.</i> ),	Romans.	
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm,	Roman, belonging to Rome.	
Suērē, sū,	to sew, to stitch.	
Tīmērē, ū,	to fear	( <i>timia</i> ).
Vestīs, īs.	garment	( <i>vest</i> ).

203. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Privātum aedificium incendit. 2. Relīqua privāta aedificia incendērant. 3. Puellae vestem suērunt. 4. Patres annuērant. 5. Milītes urbem defendērant. 6. Romāni urbem defendērunt.

7. Relīquas legiōnes in acie constituit. 8. Ursi in antro dormivērunt. 9. Agricōla per urbem ambulāvit. 10. Non respuit condiōnem Caesar. 11. Diem concilio constituērunt. 12. Diem concilio constituērit. 13. Servus viam monstravērat. 14. Puer mortem timuit. 15. *Humānum*<sup>6</sup> est mortem timēre. 16. *Impiū*<sup>7</sup> est fidem violāre.

(b) 1. The king has appointed a day for the battle. 2. They had appointed a day for the council. 3. The soldiers defended the building. 4. They had defended the poet's house. 5. The queen assented. 6. The king had not assented.

7. The good boy will walk in the city. 8. The poet's daughter had walked through the great city. 9. They will *set* the house of the poet *on fire*. 10. It is the *duty* of a good man to defend the house of a friend. 11. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. 12. They will not defend the house of the avaricious. 13. They will not reject the condition. 14. Caesar had rejected the terms. 15. He will have arranged his sol-

diers in order of battle. 16. They had arranged their soldiers in order of battle.

---

## LESSON XXXVII.

*Third Conjugation.—Class II.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.*

204. VERBS of the third conjugation which have the first root in a consonant, generally form the second from it by the addition of *s*; e. g.,

Carpěřě, *to pluck*; 1st root, carp; 2d root, carps.

Rěpěřě, *to creep*; “ rěp; “ reps.

REM.—When *b* stands at the end of the first root, it is changed into *p* before *s* in the second; e. g.,

Scriběřě, *to write*; scrib; scrips (not scribs).

Nüběřě, *to marry*; nüb; nups (not nubs).

205. An adjective modifying the subject is sometimes used in Latin instead of an adverb modifying the verb; e. g.,

Portām *invītūs* claudēt.

(*Lat. Id.*) The gate *unwilling* he will shut (*adj.*).

(*Eng. Id.*) He will shut the gate *unwillingly* (*adv.*).

## 206. VOCABULARY.

Carpěřě, carps,	to pluck, to card, to gather.
Děglüběřě, dēglups,	to flay.
Lānā, ae,	wool.
Lūděřě, lūs,	to play
Mālūs, ā, ūm,	bad.
Ovīs, īs,	sheep.
Scriběřě, scrips,	to write.
Uvā, ae,	grape.

207. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Caius epistōlas sua manu scripsit. 2. Puella epistōlam sua manu scripsērat. 3. Puēri lanam carpserunt. 4. Malus pastor deglupsit oves.

5. Facīle est \* lanam carpere. 6. Pater meus fidem servavērat. 7. Turpe est fidem suam non servare. 8. Sapientis est \* virtūtem magni aestimare. 9. Virtūtem magni aestimavērint.

(b) 1. The boy has written a letter in his own hand. 2. The girl had written letters in her own hand. 3. They wrote letters. 4. The girl has plucked a flower. 5. The shepherd's daughter had gathered flowers with her own hand.

6. The boy will pluck the grape. 7. It is easy to pluck the grape. 8. The girls were gathering flowers. 9. They had gathered flowers. 10. It is easy to gather flowers. 11. The slaves will card the wool. 12. They will have carded the wool. 13. In winter the bear will sleep in the cave. 14. In summer the girls will play in the garden.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

*Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.*

208. WHEN a *k*-sound (*c, g, h, qu*) stands at the end of the first root, it generally unites, in the second, with the *s* which is added, and forms *x* (i. e. *cs, gs, hs, or qus* becomes *x*); e. g.,

\* What is the subject of *est*? (608, 2.)

Cingĕrĕ, *to surround*; cing, cinx (*cings*).

Tĕgĕrĕ, *to cover*; tĕg, tex (*tegs*).

Trahĕrĕ, *to draw*; trah, trax (*trahs*).

Cōquĕrĕ, *to cook*, cōqu, cox (*coqus*).

a) In a very few verbs *gu* and *v* must be treated as *k*-sounds in the formation of the second root; e. g.,

Exstinguĕrĕ, *to extinguish*; exstingu, extinx.

Vīvĕrĕ, *to live*; vīv, vix.

b) *Fluĕrĕ*, *to flow*, and *struĕrĕ*, *to build*, together with their compounds, have the second root in *x*, as if the first ended in a *k*-sound, as probably it did originally

c) The *k*-sound is sometimes dropped before *s* in the second root; e. g.,

Spargĕrĕ, *to scatter*; sparg, spars.

Mergĕrĕ, *to merge*; merg, mers.

Parcĕrĕ, *to spare*; pare, pars.

## 209. VOCABULARY.

Cībŭs, i,	food.	
Cingĕrĕ, cinx,	to surround.	
Complĕrĕ, ĕv,	to fill	( <i>complement</i> ).
Cōquĕrĕ, cox,	to cook, to bake, to ripen.	
Dicĕrĕ, dix,	to say	( <i>diction</i> ).
Hābĕrĕ, habu,	to have	( <i>habit</i> ).
Illustrārĕ, āv,	to illuminate, to enlighten.	
Mendāciŭm, ī,	lie, falsehood	( <i>mendacious</i> ).
Multā ( <i>neut. pl.</i> )	many (things).	
Multŭs, ā, ūm,	much, <i>pl.</i> many.	
Palliŭm, ī,	cloak	( <i>to palliate</i> ).
Pecĕārĕ, āv,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Prŭdentiā, ae,	prudence.	
Simŭlatiŏ, ōnīs,	assumed appearance, pretence	( <i>dissimulation</i>
Stultitiā, ae,	folly	( <i>stultify</i> ).



Summūs, ā, ūm,	highest, greatest	( <i>summit</i> ).
Tĕgĕrĕ, tex,	to cover.	
Viōlārĕ, av,	to violate, to break	( <i>violation</i> ).

210. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer dixit. 2. Caius, homo vita indignus, dixĕrat. 3. Puellae dixĕrunt. 4. Flumen urbem einxit. 5. Flumīna urbes cinxĕrunt. 6. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio texit.

7. Prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texĕrat. 8. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texĕrunt. 9. Christiāni non est mendacio culpam tegĕre. 10. Turpe est peccāre. 11. Turpe est mendacio culpam tegĕre. 12. Sol cuncta suā luce illustravĕrat. 13. Caius leges civitātis violavĕrit.

(b) 1. The woman has surrounded her head with a garland. 2. The slave has surrounded his head with a garland. 3. They had surrounded their heads with garlands. 4. The boy had said nothing. 5. The girl cooked the food. 6. They had cooked the food.

7. The king had surrounded the city with a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a wall. 9. They covered the fault with a lie. 10. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie. 11. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. 12. The slave had said many (things). 13. The sun fills all things with its light. 14. It is the business of the slave<sup>7</sup> to cook food for his master. 15. It is never useful to lose time. 16. He will lose much pleasure.<sup>4</sup> 17. How much pleasure will he lose?

## LESSON XXXIX.

*Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.*

211. WHENEVER a *t-sound* (*d* or *t*) stands at the end of the first root, it is generally dropped before *s* in the second, and the preceding vowel, if short, is lengthened; e. g.,

Claudĕrĕ, *to shut*;      claud,      claus      (clauds).

Amittĕrĕ, *to lose*;      āmitt,      amīs      (amitts).

Dīvidĕrĕ, *to divide*;      dīvid,      dīvīs      (divids).

212. When a limiting noun denotes some *characteristic* or *quality* of the noun which it limits, it is always accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; e. g.,

Puĕr exīmiæ pulchrītūdīnīs.

Puĕr exīmiā pulchrītūdīnĕ.

A boy of remarkable beauty.

213. Combining the above with the rule already given (65), we have the following

RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; as, *Lātinūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.

2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; as, *Rēgīs filiūs*, *the king's son*: except

(a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*, it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; as, *Puĕr exīmiæ pulchrītūdīnīs*;

or, *Puēr exīmiū pulchrītūdīnē*, a boy of remarkable beauty.

214. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning*, and the like, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g.,

Caiūm prōditiōnīs accūsant.

(*Caius of treachery they accuse.*)

They accuse Caius of treachery.\*

REM.—Here *prōditiōnīs* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

215. (*Eng. Id.*) To condemn to death.

(*Lat. Id.*) To condemn of the head (*cāpītīs*).†

## 216. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē, āv,	to accuse.	
Ambītūs, ūs,	bribery.	
Amittērē, āmīs,	to lose.	
Cāpītīs ( <i>gen.</i> ),	of the head, to death	( <i>capital</i> ).
Claudērē, claus,	to shut	( <i>close</i> ).
Damnārē, āv,	to condemn.	
Fāciēs, ēī,	face, appearance.	
Furtūm, ī,	theft	( <i>furtive</i> ).
Ingēniūm, ī,	talent, ability	( <i>ingenious</i> ).
Lūdērē, lūs,	to play.	
Nunquām,	never.	
Prōditiō, ōnīs,	treachery.	
Saltārē, āv,	to darce.	
Vīr, † vīrī,	man, he:o.	

\* This genitive is not properly governed by the verb, but by a noun understood; thus, if we supply *crīmīnē* with *prōditiōnīs* in the example, the sense will not be changed; as, ‘They accuse Caius *with the charge* of treachery.’

† We may suppose that it was originally, “to condemn to the loss of the head;” or, “to the punishment of the head.”

‡ *Hōmo*, G. *hōmīnīs*, and *vīr* are both *man*: but *homo* is *man* as opposed to *other animals*; that is, a *human being*. whereas *vīr* is *man*

217. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. *Portas urbis clausērant.* 2. *Caius multum tempōris amīsīt.* 3. *Caius, vir summo ingenio, multum tempōris amīsīt.* 4. *Balbus ambitus accusavērant.* 5. *Puēri in prato lusērunt.*

6. *Balbus capītis damnābunt.* 7. *Christiāni est avaritiam damnāre.* 8. *Caius accusāvit.* 9. *Caius, summo ingenio virum, proditiōnis accusavērat.* 10. *Facile est saltāre.* 11. *Difficile est iram placāre.* 12. *Facile est puēri animum dono placāre.* 13. *Ursus in antro dormīvit.* 14. *Hiēme ursi in antris dormiunt.* 15. *Nunquam utile est peccāre.*

(b) 1. The slave has shut the gates of the city. 2. They will accuse the slave of treachery. 3. Caius had accused the slaves of theft. 4. He will have lost much time.<sup>4</sup> 5. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. 6. Balbus, a man endowed with the greatest virtue, has accused the boy of theft.

7. They have accused Balbus of bribery. 8. They had accused Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, of bribery. 9. The sun had illuminated all things with its light. 10. The sun will have filled the world with its light. 11. They have written the letters with their own hands. 12. The queen had written a letter with her own hand. 13. He covered his face with his cloak. 14. They had covered their faces with their cloaks.

---

as opposed to *woman*.—When *men* means *human beings*, *men* generally (including *both sexes*), it should be translated by *homīnes*.—When *man* is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by *homo*, because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human being*.—When *man* is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by *vīr*.

## LESSON XL.

*Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity—  
Radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).*

## 218. REGULAR Endings of the Second Root of Verbs.

Conj. I. āv.	Conj. II. u (or ēv).	Conj. III. s, or like 1st root.	Conj. IV. iv.
-----------------	-------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------

REM.—The above table presents only the *regular* endings of the second root; there are, however, several irregularities in the formation of that root which we must notice.

219. Some verbs in each\* of the four conjugations form the second root by lengthening the vowel of the first; e. g.,

Jūvārě, <i>to assist</i> ;	jūv,	jūv.
Vīdērě, <i>to see</i> ;	vīd,	vīd.
Edērě, <i>to eat</i> ;	ēd,	ēd.
Věñīrě, <i>to come</i> ;	věñ,	věñ.

1) In the third conjugation,

a) If the first root has *ā*, the second will have *ē*.

b) *M* and *n* are often dropped before a final mute; e. g.,

Căpěrě, <i>to take</i> ;	căp,	cēp	( <i>ā</i> changed to <i>ē</i> ).
Frangěrě, <i>to break</i> ;	frang,	frēg	{ ( <i>n</i> dropped, and <i>a</i> changed to <i>ē</i> )
Rumpěrě, <i>to burst</i> ;	rump,	rūp	
Vincěrě, <i>to conquer</i> ;	vinc,	vīc	( <i>n</i> dropped).

---

\* In the first and fourth conjugations, *jūvārě*, *lāvārě*, *věñīrě*, and their compounds, are probably the only instances.

## 220. VOCABULARY.

Brāchiūm, ī,	arm.	
Cāpērē, cēp.	to take, to receive.	
Cībūs, ī,	food.	
Emērē, ēm,	to buy.	
Exercītūs, ūs,	army.	
Foedūs, ēris,	treaty	( <i>federal</i> ).
Frangērē, frēg,	to break	( <i>fragile</i> ).
Gallūs, ī,	{ a Gaul, an inhabitant of Gaul, now France.	
Lāvārē, lāv,		( <i>lave</i> ).
Mēl, mellīs,	honey	
Milēs, itīs,	soldier	( <i>military</i> ).
Nēmō, inīs,*	nobody, no one.	
Quiā,	because.	
Rumpērē, rūp,	to break, to violate	
Sempēr,	always.	
Utilīs, ē,	useful	( <i>utility</i> ).
Vēnirē, vēr,	to come.	
Vidērē, vid,	to see	( <i>visible</i> ).
Vincūlūm, ī,	chain.	

## 221. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus manus lāvit. 2. Puēri manus lāvērunt. 3. Agricōla exercītum vīdit. 4. Milītes vēnērunt. 5. Caius brachium suum frēgērat. 6. Quantum voluptātis cēpērunt!

7. Nunquam utīle est foedus rumpēre. 8. Nunquam utīle est fidem violāre, quia semper est turpe. 9. Facīle est puerōrum anīmos donis placēre. 10. Turpe est foedēra negligēre. 11. Galli negligēbant foedēra. 12. Nemo semper labōrat. 13. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis textit. 14. Multa voluptātis cepērunt. 15.

---

\* The gen. *nēmīnūs* and abl. *nēmīnē* are not in good use.

Multum voluptātis amisērant. 16. Quantum cibi amisērunt!

(b) 1. Caius has broken his arm. 2. They had broken their arms. 3. The king had broken the treaty. 4. The Gauls had broken the treaty. 5. Caesar had seen the army. 6. The girls will have seen the queen. 7. Caesar conquered the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did not conquer Caesar.

9. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. 10. It is difficult to conquer the Gauls. 11. It is not easy to conquer the enemy. 12. He had appeased Balbus. 13. They will break their chains. 14. They had broken their chains. 15. It is easy to break (one's) arm. 16. They are losing much money. 17. They had lost much money. 18. They were losing much pleasure. 19. They will condemn Balbus to death (215). 20. He had conquered his enemies.

## LESSON XLI.

*Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity—Reduplication.*

222. A FEW verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations, form the second root by prefixing to the first their initial consonant, with the following vowel or with *e*; e. g.,

Dăřě, <i>to give</i> ;	d,	děd.
Morděřě, <i>to bite</i> ;	mord,	mōmord.
Currěřě, <i>to run</i> ;	curr,	cūcurr.

REM.—The radical vowel is also sometimes changed; as, *cădăřě*, *to fall*; 2d root *căcăd* (*ă* changed to *ĭ*).

## 223. VOCABULARY.

Ab ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	from.
Auctumnūs, ī,	autumn.
Barbā, ae,	beard.
Cōlōr, ōrīs,	color.
Currērē, cūcurr,	to run.
Dārē, dēd,	to give.
Finīs, īs, <i>m. or f.</i>	end.
Hūmērūs, ī,	shoulder.
Mordērē, mōmord,	to bite.
Mūtārē, av,	to change.
Nox, noctīs,	night.
Pendērē, pēpend,	to hang ( <i>intrans.</i> ).
Pēr ( <i>prep. with accus.</i> )	through.
Sāgittā, ae,	arrow.
Tondērē, tōtond,	to shear, shave.

## 224. Exercises.

(a) 1. Equus per urbem cucurrit. 2. Sagittae ab humero pependērunt. 3. Nox proelio (648) finem dedit. 4. Malus pastor oves non totondit. 5. Malus pastor deglupsit oves; non totondit.

6. Boni pastōris<sup>7</sup> est tondēre oves, non deglubēre. 7. Pastōres agricōlas risērunt. 8. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērīt. 9. Boni canis<sup>7</sup> non est oves mordēre. 10. Servus portas urbis clausērīt. 11. Puēri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. 12. Lusciniac colōrem mutābunt. 13. Auctumno lusciniac colōrem suum mutavērīt.

(b) 1. The dog has bitten the sheep. 2. Your dog had bitten the girl. 3. My horses have been running (have run). 4. Balbus has given his dog to your son. 5. They had given their dogs to the shepherd.

6. The wolf had bitten the sheep. 7. The shepherd will shear his sheep. 8. A shepherd does not shear



his sheep in the winter. 9. The wolves have bitten my dog. 10. Caius will shave (his) beard. 11. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. 12. The dog has bitten the wolf. 13. They wrote the letter. 14. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. 15. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. 16. The girls will walk in the garden. 17. The queen was walking through the city. 18. They have surrounded the city with walls. 19. They have offended-against the laws of their country.

## LESSON XLII.

*Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity—  
Second root after the analogy of other conjugations.*

225. A FEW verbs in each conjugation form the second root according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations.

1) A few in the first conjugation follow the analogy of the second; e. g.,

Micārĕ, *to glitter*: 1st root, *mĭc*; 2d root, *mĭcŭ*.

2) A few in the second follow the analogy of the third; e. g.,

Rĭdĕrĕ, *to laugh*; 1st root, *rĭd*; 2d root, *rĭs* (rids).

Lŭgĕrĕ, *to mourn*; " *lŭg*; " *lŭx* (lugs).

3) A few in the third follow the analogy of the second or fourth; e. g.,

Cŏlĕrĕ, *to till*; 1st root, *cŏl*; 2d root, *cŏlŭ*.

Pĕtĕrĕ, *to seek*, " *pĕt*; " *pĕtĭv*.

4) A few in the fourth follow the analogy of the second or third; e. g.,

Apĕrĭrĕ, *to open*; 1st root, *ăpĕr*; 2d root, *ăpĕrŭ*.

Vincĭrĕ, *to bind*; “ *vinc*; “ *vinx* (cs).

REM.—Verbs of the third conj. which have the 1st root in *sc*, together with a few others, generally change the consonant-ending of the 1st root into *v* in the 2d; as, *crescĕrĕ*, *to increase*; 1st root, *cresc*; 2d, *crĕv*. Most of these verbs are supposed to have been derived from pure roots.

226. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g.,

Caiŭs annŭm ūnŭm vixĭt.

(*Caius year one lived.*)

Caius lived *one year*.

227. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a town (91) where any thing is or is done, if of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive; otherwise, in the ablative; e. g.,

1. Caiŭs annŭm ūnŭm Cortŏnae vixĭt.

Caius lived one year *at Cortona*.

2. Caiŭs annŭm ūnŭm Tĭbŭrĕ vixĭt.

Caius lived one year *at Tibur*.

REM.—In these examples, *Cortŏnae* and *Tĭbŭrĕ* are names of towns; the first is put in the *genitive*, because it is of the first declension, and sing. number, and the second in the *ablative*, because it is of the third declension.

## 228. VOCABULARY.

Amittĕrĕ, amĭs,	to lose.
Annŭs, i,	year.
Apĕrĭrĕ, ăpĕrŭ,	to open, to uncover.
Bienniŭm,	two years, space of two years.
Castĭgārĕ, av,	to chastise.

Invītūs, ā, ūm,	unwilling.
Lūgērē, lux,	to grieve, mourn, weep for.
Mānērē, mans,	to remain.
Matrōna, ae,	matron.
Rōmā, ae,	Rome,
	<i>a city of Italy, on the Tiber.</i>
Tibūr, ūrīs,	Tibur,
	<i>a town in Latium, in Italy.</i>
Tōtūs, ā, ūm ( <i>g. iūs</i> ),	the whole, the entire.

## 229. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus multos annos Romae manserat. 2. Biennium Carthagīne manserant. 3. Mater luxerit. 4. Matrōnae luxerunt. 5. Brutum Romānae matrōnae luxerunt. 6. Pastōres agricōlas riserunt. 7. Puēri capīta aperuerunt.

8. Domīnus servi sui epistolam aperiet. 9. Domīnus servi sui epistolas aperuerat. 10. Aliquid tempōris<sup>4</sup> invītus (205) amittet. 11. Christiāni est nemīnem violāre. 12. Nemīnem violāvit. 13. Biennium Romae manēbit. 14. Biennium Carthagīne manēbunt.

(b) 1. They remained at Tibur many years. 2. Caius remained at Carthage for the space-of-two-years. 3. He has opened his father's letter. 4. They had opened the letters at Carthage.

5. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter. 6. He wrote the letters at Rome. 7. They are mourning for<sup>4</sup> their son. 8. They have been in mourning two years. 9. The girls wore mourning for<sup>4</sup> their mother. 10. My father values industry very highly. 11. Balbus has accused the shepherd's son of theft. 12. They have accused Caius of bribery.

## LESSON XLIII.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

230. THE *Subjunctive Mood* represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a *fact*, but simply as a *possibility*, *wish*, or *conception of the mind*; e. g.,

- |                      |   |  |
|----------------------|---|--|
| 1. Scribāt,          | { | he may write,                          |
|                      | { | may he write,                          |
|                      | { | let him write.                         |
| 2. Venīt ūt scribāt, | { | he has come <i>that he may write</i> , |
|                      | { | he has come <i>to write</i> .          |

REM.—*Scribāt* in the above examples is in the present subjunctive.

231. The present subjunctive, when not preceded by *ūt*, generally expresses either a *wish* (to be translated by *may he*), or a *command* (to be translated by *let him*, &c.).

232. If the wish or command is to be expressed *negatively*, *nē* (never *nōn*) must be used with the subjunctive; e. g.,

*Nē pūtēt*, let him not think.

233. The tenses of the subjunctive mood\* are the *present*, *imperfect*, *perfect*, and *pluperfect*.

234. The endings of the third persons sing. of the tenses of the subjunctive are as follows:

		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
		(1st root.)	(1st root.)	(2d root.)	(2d root.)
Conj.	I.	ēt,	ārēt,	ērīt,	issēt.
Conj.	II.	ēāt,	ērēt,	ērīt,	issēt.
Conj.	III.	āt,	ērēt,	ērīt,	issēt.
Conj.	IV.	iāt,	irēt,	ērīt,	issēt.

\* The subjunctive has *no futures*.

REM.—The third persons plural of the several tenses of the subjunctive are formed by inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third singular

235. The English signs corresponding to the Latin subjunctive are as follows:

Present, *may* or *can*.

Imperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.

Perfect, *may have*.

Pluperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have*.

### 236. Partial Paradigm of the Subjunctive Mood.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Pres. Am-ēt, <i>he may or can love.</i>	Am-ent, <i>they may or can love.</i>
Imp. Am-ārēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. love.</i>	Am-ārent, <i>they might, &amp;c. love.</i>
Perf. Amāv-ērīt, <i>he may have loved.</i>	Amāv-ērint, <i>they may have loved.</i>
Plup. Amāv-issēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. have loved.</i>	Amāv-issent, <i>they might, &amp;c. have loved.</i>

#### SECOND CONJUGATION.

Pres. Mōn-eāt, <i>he may or can advise.</i>	Mōn-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>
Imp. Mōn-ērēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. advise.</i>	Mōn-ērent, <i>they might, &amp;c. advise.</i>
Perf. Mōnu-ērīt, <i>he may have advised.</i>	Mōnu-ērint, <i>they may have advised.</i>
Plup. Mōnu-issēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. have advised.</i>	Mōnu-issent, <i>they might, &amp;c. have advised.</i>

#### THIRD CONJUGATION.

Pres. Rēg-āt, <i>he may rule.</i>	Rēg-ant, <i>they may rule.</i>
Imp. Rēg-ērēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. rule.</i>	Rēg-ērent, <i>they might, &amp;c. rule.</i>
Perf. Rex-ērīt, <i>he may have ruled.</i>	Rex-ērint, <i>they may have ruled.</i>
Plup. Rex-issēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. have ruled.</i>	Rex-issent, <i>they might, &amp;c. have ruled.</i>

PARADIGM—*continued.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Pres. Aud-īāt, <i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant, <i>they may hear.</i>
Imp. Aud-irēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. hear.</i>	Aud-irent, <i>they might, &amp;c. hear</i>
Perf. Audīv-ērīt, <i>he may have heard.</i>	Audīv-ērint, <i>they may have heard.</i>
Plup. Audīv-issēt, <i>he might, &amp;c. have heard.</i>	Audīv-issent, <i>they might, &amp;c. have heard.</i>

237. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Scribat. 2. Ne scribant. 3. Servus claudat portas. 4. Puēri ne claudant portas. 5. Cantet puella. 6. Ludant Puēri. 7. Pater scribēret. 8. Scripsissent. 9. Filium suum sepelīret. 10. Sepeliat filium.

11. Placet puēri animum. 12. Ne multa discat. 13. Fidem suam servāvit. 14. Fidem suam servavissent. 15. Fidem suam invīti servavērunt. 16. Pučrum in urbe sepelivērunt. 17. Patres filios suos docučrant.

(b) 1. Let the slaves shut the gates of the city. 2. Do not let the slave see the letter. 3. Let him write a letter. 4. He might have come. 5. They may have read the book. 6. He would have broken his arm. 7. Do not let the dog bite the boy.

8. Balbus has kept his word. 9. He would have broken his word. 10. Let him appease his father's anger. 11. He remained at Carthage many years. 12. They would have remained at Rome two years. 13. They had remained in the city one year. 14. Let fathers teach their sons.

## LESSON XLIV.

*Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose.*

238. THE present and imperfect subjunctive in Latin are often used to express a *purpose*.

239. The infinitive often denotes purpose in English, but never in Latin; accordingly, in expressions of purpose, the idioms of the two languages are entirely distinct from each other, and should be carefully studied.

240. *Eng. Id.* { I have come *to see* you.  
                          { I came *to see* you.

*Lat. Id.* { I have come *that I may see* you.  
                          { I came *that I might see* you.

241. When a purpose is to be expressed affirmatively, *ut* is used with the subj., when negatively, *nē*; e. g.,

1. Balbŭm rŏgāt *ut* puĕrŭm *dŏceāt*.  
(*Balbus he asks that the boy he may teach.*)  
He asks Balbus *to teach* the boy.

2. Balbŭm rŏgāt *nē* puĕrŭm *dŏceāt*.  
He asks Balbus *not to teach* the boy.

242. The subjunctive expressing purpose must be in the *present tense*; unless the verb on which it depends is in a *past tense* (*imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect*), and then it must be in the *imperfect*.

REM.—The perfect definite (193, REM.), or perfect with have (which denotes that the action *has been done* in a period of time *still present*), is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.

## 243. EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnīt ūt portās claudāt.  
(*He is coming that the gates he may shut.*)  
He is coming to shut the gates.
2. Vēnīt (*indef.*) ūt portās claudērēt.  
(*He came that the gates he might shut.*)  
He came to shut the gates.
3. Vēnīt (*def.*) ūt portās claudāt.  
(*He has come that the gates he may shut.*)  
He has come to shut the gates.

REM. 1.—In the 1st example the subjunctive is in the *present* tense, because the verb *vēnīt*, on which it depends, is present; while in the 2d, it is in the *imperfect*, because its verb, *vēnīt* (came), is in the *perfect indefinite*.

REM. 2.—In the 3d example the subjunctive is in the *present*, because the verb *vēnīt* (has come) is in the *perfect definite*, and, though in form the same as in the 2d example, really expresses different time.

REM. 3.—The Latin perfect, when followed by the present subjunctive, must be translated into English with the sign *have*, as in example 3.

## 244. VOCABULARY.

Compārārē, āv,	to procure, to raise, to levy.	
Discērē, dīdīc,	to learn.	
Edērē, ēd,	to eat	( <i>edible</i> ).
Evertērē, ēvert,	to overthrow, to pull down.	
Lēgērē, lēg,	to read	( <i>legible</i> ).
Plūrīmūs, ā, ūm,	very much <i>or</i> great, <i>pl.</i> , very many.	
Quiescērē, quīēv,	to rest, be quiet	( <i>quiescent</i> ).
Rōgārē, āv,	to ask, to entreat.	
Vivērē, vix,	to live	( <i>vivid</i> ).

## 245. Exercises.

(Construe ūt and the *subjunctive* by the infinitive.)

- (a) 1. Lēgit ut discat. 2. Lēgit\* ut discat. Lēgit ut disceret (242). 3. Edit ut vivat. 4. Edit ut viveret.

\* See 243, REM. 3.



5. Servi veniunt ut portas claudant. 6. Veniat servus ut portas urbis claudat. 7. Caium rogat ut veniat.

8. Venit ut copias compăret. 9. Romae plurimi vivunt ut edant. 10. Cantent puellae. 11. Quiescant servi. 12. Veniat Caius ut epistolam sua manu scribat. 13. Venerat Caius ut Balbi animum donis placaret.

(b) 1. He has come to read (241) your letter. 2. They came to read your book. 3. They will come to accuse the judge of theft. 4. The boy will come to give his sister a garland.

5. Let the slaves shut the gates. 6. Do not let your dog bite the boy. 7. They had come to raise forces. 8. The enemy will think *little*<sup>3</sup> of your forces. 9. He had come to surround the girl's head with a beautiful garland. 10. Let boys prize wisdom *very highly*.

## LESSON XLV.

*Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation.*

246. It will be remembered that verbs have *three persons* (12): these are distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *Personal Endings*.

247. The three persons may be formed in the perfect indicative (which is somewhat irregular) by changing *it*, of the third person singular, into the following

### PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
i,	isti,	it.	imūs,	istis,	erunt (or erē).

248. In all the tenses\* of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative, the three persons may be formed by changing *t* of the third singular into the following

## PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
m, ō,	s,	t.	mūs,	tīs,	-nt.

a) The ending *o*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative present, future perfect*, and, in the first and second conjugations, to the *future*. The vowel which stands before *t* in the third person is dropped before *o* in the first person, except in the present of the second and fourth conjugations (and in a few verbs of the third); e. g.,

	<i>3d Person.</i>	<i>1st Person.</i>
Pres. 1st Conj.	Amāt, <i>he loves</i> ,	āmō ( <i>ā</i> dropped), <i>I love</i> .
“ 2d “	Mōnēt, <i>he advises</i> ,	mōneō ( <i>ē</i> not dropped), <i>I advise</i> .
“ 3d “	Rēgīt, <i>he rules</i> ,	rēgō ( <i>i</i> dropped), <i>I rule</i> .
“ 4th “	Audit, <i>he hears</i> ,	audiō ( <i>i</i> not dropped), <i>I hear</i> .

b) The ending *m*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative imperfect, pluperfect*, and, in the third and fourth conjugations, to the *future*, and to the *subjunctive* throughout all its tenses. In the future of the third and fourth conjugations, the vowel *ē*, which stands before *t* in the third person, is changed into *ā* before *m* in the first person; e. g.,

	<i>3d Person.</i>	<i>1st Person.</i>
Imperf.	Amābāt, <i>he was loving</i> ,	āmābām, <i>I was loving</i> .
Pluperf.	Amāvērāt, <i>he had loved</i> ,	āmāvērām, <i>I had loved</i> .
Fut. 3d Conj.	Rēgēt, <i>he will rule</i> ,	rēgām, <i>I will rule</i> .
“ 4th “	Audiēt, <i>he will hear</i> ,	audiām, <i>I will hear</i> .

---

\* We of course speak only of the *active voice*, as the *passive* has not yet been noticed

c) In the *present* and *future* tenses of the *indicative*, if *i* stands before *t* in the third singular, it is changed into *iu* in the third plural, in the fourth conjugation, and into *u* in the other conjugations; e. g.,

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Fut 1st Conj.	Amābīt, <i>he will love,</i>	āmābunt, <i>they will love.</i>
" 2d "	Mōnēbit, <i>he will advise,</i>	mōnēbunt, <i>they will advise.</i>
Pres. 3d "	Rēgit, <i>he rules,</i>	rēgunt, <i>they rule.</i>
" 4th "	Audit, <i>he hears,</i>	audiunt, <i>they hear.</i>

249. The vowel before the personal endings *mūs* and *tīs*, is *long* in the imperfect and pluperfect of the indicative, and in all the tenses of the subjunctive, except the perfect, in which it is common\* (long or short).

250. Paradigm of the Indicative Mood—First Conjugation.

Amāre, *to love*: 1st root, *ām*; 2d, *āmāv*.

PRESENT (1st root).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Am-ō, <i>I love.</i>	1. Am-āmūs, <i>we love.</i>
2. Am-ās, <i>thou lovest.</i>	2. Am-ātīs, <i>ye or you love.</i>
3. Am-āt, <i>he loves.</i>	3. Am-ant, <i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT (1st root).

Am-ābām, <i>I was loving.</i>	Am-ābāmūs, <i>we were loving.</i>
Am-ābās, <i>thou wast loving.</i>	Am-ābātīs, <i>ye or you were loving.</i>
Am-ābāt, <i>he was loving.</i>	Am-ābānt, <i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE (1st root).

Am-ābō, <i>I shall love.</i>	Am-ābīmūs, <i>we shall love.</i>
Am-ābīs, <i>thou wilt love.</i>	Am-ābītīs, <i>ye or you will love.</i>
Am-ābīt, <i>he will love.</i>	Am-ābunt, <i>they will love.</i>

\* The vowel is also generally considered common before these endings in the *future perfect*: the old grammarians, however, make it *long*.

## PARADIGM—continued.

## PERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ī, <i>I loved or have loved.</i>	Amāv-īmūs, <i>we loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-istī, <i>thou lovedst or hast loved.</i>	Amāv-istīs, <i>ye or you loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-ūt, <i>he loved or has loved.</i>	Amāv-ērunt (ērē), <i>they loved or have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ērām, <i>I had loved.</i>	Amāv-ērāmūs, <i>we had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērās, <i>thou hadst loved.</i>	Amāv-ērātīs, <i>ye or you had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērāt, <i>he had loved.</i>	Amāv-ērant, <i>they had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ērō, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	Amāv-ērīmūs, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
Amāv-erīs, <i>thou wilt have loved.</i>	Amāv-erītīs, <i>ye or you will have loved.</i>
Amāv-erīt, <i>he will have loved.</i>	Amāv-erint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

## 251. VOCABULARY

Ad ( <i>prep. with acc.</i> ),	to.	
Ducēre, dux,	to lead	( <i>duke</i> ):
Hesternūs, ā, ūm,	of yesterday.	
Incolūmīs, ē,	safe, uninjured.	
Lēgātīs, ī,	ambassador	( <i>legate</i> ).
Mitterē, mīs,	to send.	( <i>mission</i> ).
Praemitterē,	to send before.	
Prīmūs ā, ūm,	first	( <i>prime</i> ).

## 252. Exercises.

(a) 1. Violābas legem. 2. Violavisti leges. 3. Balbum vocāvī. 4. Hesterno die Balbum vocavimus. 5. Urbem servāvī. 6. Cives incolūmes servavimus. 7. Caium, summo ingenio (213) virum, ambītus accusaverātis. 8. Balbum capītis damnabītis.

9. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt. 10. Prima luce omnem equitātum praemīsit. 11. Christiānus nemīnem violābit. 12. Nemīnem violavisti. 13. Multos annos regnābis. 14. Balbus parvo (181) contentus est. 15. Servus multa laude dignus est.

(b) 1. You have kept your word. 2. I will not break my word. 3. You (*pl.*) have violated the laws of the state. 4. You (*pl.*) prize money very highly. 5. We shall condemn avarice. 6. I have never accused the queen. 7. We shall accuse the priest of treachery.

8. They appeased the anger of Caesar. 9. We will appease your anger. 10. Caesar thought very highly of his army. 11. We will send ambassadors to the king. 12. It is the duty of a Christian<sup>7</sup> to keep his word. 13. It is the part of a wise man to be content with little.

## LESSON XLVI.

*Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pronouns.*

253. PARADIGM of the Indicative Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>am, is, &amp;c., loving.</i>				
	<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
S. 1.	Am-ō,	Mōn-eō,	Rēg-ō,	Aud-iō,
2.	Am-ās,	Mōn-ēs,	Rēg-īs,	Aud-īs,
3.	Am-āt;	Mōn-ēt;	Rēg-īt;	Aud-īt;
P. 1.	Am-āmūs,	Mōn-ēmūs,	Rēg-īmūs,	Aud-īmūs,
2.	Am-ātīs,	Mōn-ētīs,	Rēg-ītīs,	Aud-ītīs,
3.	Am-ant.	Mōn-ent.	Rēg-unt.	Aud-iunt.

PARADIGM—*continued.*IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, did.*

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 1.	Am-ābām,	Mōn-ēbām,	Rēg-ēbām,	Aud-iēbām,
2.	Am-ābās,	Mōn-ēbās,	Rēg-ēbās,	Aud-iēbās,
3.	Am-ābāt ;	Mōn-ēbāt ;	Rēg-ēbāt ;	Aud-iēbāt ;
P. 1.	Am-ābāmūs,	Mōn-ēbāmūs,	Rēg-ēbāmūs,	Aud-iēbāmūs,
2.	Am-ābātīs,	Mōn-ēbātīs,	Rēg-ēbātīs,	Aud-iēbātīs,
3.	Am-ābant.	Mōn-ēbant.	Rēg-ēbant.	Aud-iēbant.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will.*

S. 1.	Am-ābō,	Mōn-ēbō,	Rēg-ām,	Aud-iām,
2.	Am-ābīs,	Mōn-ēbīs,	Rēg-ēs,	Aud-iēs,
3.	Am-ābit ;	Mōn-ēbit ;	Rēg-ēt ;	Aud-iēt ;
P. 1.	Am-ābimūs,	Mōn-ēbimūs,	Rēg-ēmūs,	Aud-iēmūs,
2.	Am-ābitīs,	Mōn-ēbitīs,	Rēg-ētīs,	Aud-iētīs,
3.	Am-ābunt.	Mōn-ēbunt.	Rēg-ent.	Aud-ient.

PERFECT (2d root), *have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ī,	Mōnu-ī,	Rex-ī,	Audīv-ī,
2.	Amāv-istī,	Mōnu-istī,	Rex-istī,	Audīv-istī,
3.	Amāv-īt ;	Mōnu-īt ;	Rex-īt ;	Audīv-īt ;
P. 1.	Amāv-imūs,	Mōnu-imūs,	Rex-imūs,	Audīv-imūs,
2.	Amāv-istīs,	Mōnu-istīs,	Rex-istīs,	Audīv-istīs,
3.	Amāv-ērunt or ērē.	Mōnu-ērunt or ērē.	Rex-ērunt or ērē.	Audīv-ērunt or ērē.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *had.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ērām,	Mōnu-ērām,	Rex-ērām,	Audīv-ērām,
2.	Amāv-ērās,	Mōnu-ērās,	Rex-ērās,	Audīv-ērās,
3.	Amāv-ērāt ;	Mōnu-ērāt ;	Rex-ērāt ;	Audīv-ērāt ;
P. 1.	Amāv-ērāmūs,	Mōnu-ērāmūs,	Rex-ērāmūs,	Audīv-ērāmūs,
2.	Amāv-ērātīs,	Mōnu-ērātīs,	Rex-ērātīs,	Audīv-ērātīs,
3.	Amāv-erant.	Mōnu-erant.	Rex-erant.	Audīv-erant.

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root), *shall or will have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ērō,	Mōnu-ērō,	Rex-ērō,	Audīv-ērō,
2.	Amāv-erīs,	Mōnu-erīs,	Rex-erīs,	Audīv-erīs,
3.	Amāv-erit ;	Mōnu-erit ;	Rex-erit ;	Audīv-erit ;
P. 1.	Amāv-erimūs,	Mōnu-erimūs,	Rex-erimūs,	Audīv-erimūs,
2.	Amāv-eritīs,	Mōnu-eritīs,	Rex-eritīs,	Audīv-eritīs,
3.	Amāv-erint.	Mōnu-erint.	Rex-erint.	Audīv-erint.

## PRONOUNS.

254. *Pronouns* are words which supply the place of nouns; as, *ěgō*, I; *tū*, thou, &c.

255. Pronouns are divided into two classes; viz.,

1) *Substantive Pronouns*; as, *ěgō*, *tū*, &c.

2) *Adjective Pronouns*; as, *hīc*, this; *illě*, that.

256. Substantive Pronouns are three in number, viz.: *ěgō*, I (*which is of course of the first person*); *tū*, thou (*second person*); and *suī*, of himself (*third person*). These from their signification are often called *Personal Pronouns*.

257. Substantive Pronouns are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.		
1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
N. <i>Egō</i> , I.	<i>Tū</i> , thou.	
G. <i>Meī</i> , of me.	<i>Tui</i> , of thee.	{ <i>Suī</i> , of himself, herself, itself.
D. <i>Mihī</i> , to or for me.	<i>Tibī</i> , to or for thee.	
A. <i>Mē</i> , me.	<i>Tē</i> , thee.	<i>Sibī</i> , to himself, &c.
V. <i>Tū</i> , O thou.		<i>Sē</i> , himself.
A. <i>Mē</i> , with, &c. me.	<i>Tē</i> , with thee.	<i>Sē</i> , with himself.
PLURAL.		
N. <i>Nōs</i> , we.	<i>Vōs</i> , ye or you.	
G. <i>Nostrūm</i> , } of us.	<i>Vestrūm</i> , } of you.	{ <i>Suī</i> , of themselves.
or <i>Nostrī</i> , }	or <i>Vestrī</i> , }	
D. <i>Nōbīs</i> , to us.	<i>Vōbīs</i> , to you.	<i>Sibī</i> , to themselves.
A. <i>Nōs</i> , us.	<i>Vōs</i> , you.	<i>Sē</i> , themselves.
V. <i>Vōs</i> , O ye or you.		
A. <i>Nōbīs</i> , with us.	<i>Vōbīs</i> , with you.	<i>Sē</i> , with themselves.

258. As the ending of the verb shows the person of its subject, the nominative of pronouns is seldom expressed as the subject, except for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*.

## 259. VOCABULARY.

Agĕrĕ, ĕg,	to drive, to lead, to do.	
Dĕ ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	from, concerning.	
Dĕdĕrĕ, dĕdid,	to surrender.	
Dĕmonstrĕrĕ, ĕv,	to show, to demonstrate	( <i>demonstration</i> ).
Egĕ,	I.	
Errĕrĕ, ĕv,	to err	( <i>error</i> ).
Expĕnĕrĕ, expĕsŭ,	to set forth, to explain	( <i>expose</i> ).
Fĕcĕrĕ, (iĕ), fĕc,	to make, to do, to act.	
Grĕtiĕ, ae,	gratitude, favor, <i>pl.</i> thanks.	
Grĕtiĕs ĕgĕrĕ,	to give thanks.	
Itĕr, itĕnĕris, <i>n.</i>	journey, route	( <i>itinerant</i> ).
Jŭdicĕrĕ, ĕv,	to judge	( <i>judicature</i> ).
Occultĕrĕ, ĕv,	to conceal	( <i>occultation</i> ).
Poscĕrĕ, pĕposc,	to demand.	
Rĕs, rĕi,	thing, affair, subject.	
Sĕd,	but.	
Sensŭs, ŭs,	feeling, perception	( <i>sense</i> ).
Tŭ	thou, you.	

## 260. Exercises.

(a) 1. Rem omnem exposui. 2. Errāvi. 3. Ego de meo sensu iudico. 4. Ego misi viros: puĕros tu misisti. 5. Hesterno die Balbum ad me vocāvi. 6. Vos iudicavistis. 7. Nos iudicabĭmus. 8. Mihi gratias egistis.

9. Caius itinĕra nostra servābat. 10. Fidem suam invĭti servavĕrunt. 11. Agricĕlae est laborāre. 12. Caius, ut demonstravĭmus, itinĕra nostrā servābat. 13. Caesar servos poposcit. 14. Nos servos non poposcĭmus.

(b) 1. We have read your letters. 2. You were playing, but I was writing. 3. He has given me a beautiful book. 4. He will give you (*to you*) thanks. 5. We shall thank you. 6. I had called the boy to me.



7. Yesterday you called the girls to you. 8. We have never opened your letters.

9. I have kept my word. 10. You have never broken your word. 11. They have accused you of theft. 12. The judge has condemned us to death (215). 13. We will not accuse you of treachery. 14. We shall not remain in the city.

## LESSON XLVII.

### *Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations.*

#### 261. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Mood.

##### PRESENT (1st root), *may* or *can*.

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
Am-ēm,	Mön-eām,	Rëg-ām,	Aud-iām,
Am-ēs,	Mön-eās,	Rëg-ās,	Aud-iās,
Am-ët ;	Mön-eāt ;	Rëg-āt ;	Aud-iāt ;
Am-ēmūs,	Mön-eāmūs,	Rëg-āmūs,	Aud-iāmūs,
Am-ëtīs,	Mön-eātīs,	Rëg-ātīs,	Aud-iātīs,
Am-ent.	Mön-eant.	Rëg-ant.	Aud-iant.

##### IMPERFECT (1st root), *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.

Am-ārēm,	Mön-ērēm,	Rëg-ērēm,	Aud-irēm,
Am-ārēs,	Mön-ērēs,	Rëg-ērēs,	Aud-irēs,
Am-ārët ;	Mön-ērët ;	Rëg-ērët ;	Aud-irët ;
Am-ārēmūs,	Mön-ērēmūs,	Rëg-ērēmūs,	Aud-irēmūs,
Am-ārëtīs,	Mön-ērëtīs,	Rëg-ērëtīs,	Aud-irëtīs,
Am-arent,	Mön-erent.	Rëg-erent.	Aud-irent.

##### PERFECT (2d root), *may have*.

Amāv-ërīm,	Mönu-ërīm,	Rex-ërīm,	Audīv-ërīm,
Amāv-ërīs,	Mönu-ërīs,	Rex-ërīs,	Audīv-ërīs,
Amāv-ërīt ;	Mönu-ërīt ;	Rex-ërīt ;	Audīv-ërīt ;
Amāv-ërīmūs,	Mönu-ërīmūs,	Rex-ërīmūs,	Audīv-ërīmūs,
Amāv-ërītīs,	Mönu-ërītīs,	Rex-ërītīs,	Audīv-ërītīs,
Amāv-ërīnt.	Mönu-ërīnt,	Rex-ërīnt.	Audīv-ërīnt.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

PLUPERFECT (2d root), <i>might, could, would, or should have.</i>			
<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
Amāv-issēm,	Mōnu-issēm,	Rex-issēm,	Audiv-issēm,
Amāv-issēs,	Mōnu-issēs,	Rex-issēs,	Audiv-issēs,
Amāv-issēt;	Mōnu-issēt;	Rex-issēt;	Audiv-issēt;
Amāv-issēmūs,	Mōnu-issēmūs,	Rex-issēmūs,	Audiv-issēmūs,
Amāv-issētīs,	Mōnu-issētīs,	Rex-issētīs,	Audiv-issētīs,
Amāv-issent.	Mōnu-issent.	Rex-issent.	Audiv-issent.

REM.—It will be observed that throughout the subjunctive the 1st person sing. ends in *m*.

262. The subjunctive with *ūt* is used to express a *result*; e. g.,

Tantūm est frīgūs ūt nix nōn liquescāt.

The cold is so great that the snow does not melt.

263. The subjunctive with *ūt*, denoting result, generally depends upon a proposition which contains some word signifying *so, such, so great, &c.*; thus, in the above example, it depends upon *tantūm* (*so great, or such*).

264. Hence, in turning English into Latin, *that* after *so, such, so great, &c.*, must be translated by *ūt*, and the verb which follows must be put in the subjunctive. (See example above.)

265. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *present, perfect definite, or future*, it must be put in the *present* tense, unless it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by the principal verb; and then it must be in the *perfect*; e. g.,

1. Tantă est puērī industriă ūt multă discăt.

The boy's industry is so great that he learns much.

2. *Nesciō quid dixērīt.*

I do not know what he has said.

REM.—In the first example, the subjunctive *discāt* (learns) is in the *present* tense, because the time of its action is the same as that of *est* (*pres.*) on which it depends, and in the second example *dixērīt* (he has said) is in the *perfect*, because it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by *nesciō* (i. e. *pres.*).

266. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, it must be put in the *imperfect* tense, unless it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb, and then it must be in the *pluperfect*, *ē. g.*,

1. *Tantā ērāt puērī industriā ūt multā discērēt.*

The boy's industry *was* so great that he *learned* much.

2. *Nescīvī quid dixissēt.*

I *did not* know what he *had said*.

REM.—The imperf. *discērēt* represents its action as *not completed*, while the pluperfect *dixissēt* represents its action as *completed*.

266. A few adjectives in Latin are often used merely to specify some particular part of the nouns to which they belong; *e. g.*,

In summō { on the highest mountain (*Lat. Id.*).

montē, { on the top of the mountain (*Eng. Id.*).

In mediīs { in the middle waters (*Lat. Id.*).

āquis, { in the middle (or midst) of the waters  
(*Eng. Id.*).

## 268. VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, Alpiūm,	Alps.	
Conservāre, av,	to preserve	( <i>conservative</i> ).
Frangere, frēg,	to break.	

Frīgūs, ōrīs,	cold	( <i>frigid</i> ).
Ibī,	there.	
Līquescēre, licū,	to melt	( <i>liquid</i> ).
Mēdiūs, ā, ūm,	middle, midst of, middle of (267).	
Nārē, av,	to swim.	
Nondām,	not yet.	
Piscīs, īs, <i>m.</i> ,	fish.	
Summūs, ā, ūm,	highest, top (267)	( <i>summit</i> ).
Tantūs, ā, ūm,	so great.	

269. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Venit ut me audiat. 2. Veni ut vos audiam. 3. Venērunt ut nos audiant. 4. Venērunt ut te audirent. 5. Ne violētis fidem. 6. In summo monte tantum est frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.

7. In summis Alpibus tantum erat frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquesceret. 8. Venit ut patriam auro vendat. 9. Venisti ut patriam auro vendēres. 10. Avis in summa arbore cantābat. 11. Multum voluptātis cepēram.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow does not melt (265). 2. The cold has been so great that the snow has not yet melted (265). 3. The cold was so great on the top of the mountain that the snow did not melt there (266). 4. The cold was so great on the top of the Alps that the snow did not melt there (266). 5. I have come to learn. 6. You have come to play.

7. Let him keep his word. 8. Do not break your word. 9. Do not sell your country for gold. 10. On the top<sup>10</sup> of the mountain the snow never melts. 11. On the top of the Alps the snow never melts. 12. The fish is swimming in the middle<sup>10</sup> of the water.

## LESSON XLVIII.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in io of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns.*

270. A FEW verbs of the third conjugation are inflected (i. e. form their tenses, numbers, and persons) in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive, like verbs of the fourth conjugation. The following is an example.

REM. In the present, first and second persons plural, the *i* in the penult is short; as, *căpîmûs, căpîţi*.

271. Paradigm of Verbs in *î* of the Third Conjugation.

*Căpěre, to take; 1st root, căp; 2d, cěp.*

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Căp-îo, I take.</i>	<i>Cap-îmûs, we take.</i>
<i>Căp-îs, thou takest.</i>	<i>Cap-îtis, ye or you take.</i>
<i>Căp-ît, he takes.</i>	<i>Cap-iunt, they take.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>Căp-iěbăm, I was taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iěbămûs, we were taking.</i>
<i>Căp-iěbăs, thou wast taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iěbătis, ye or you were taking.</i>
<i>Căp-iěbăt, he was taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iěbant, they were taking.</i>

## FUTURE.

<i>Căp-iăm, I shall take.</i>	<i>Căp-iēmûs, we shall take.</i>
<i>Căp-iēs, thou wilt take.</i>	<i>Căp-iētis, ye or you will take.</i>
<i>Căp-iět, he will take.</i>	<i>Căp-ient, they will take.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>Căp-iăm, I may take.</i>	<i>Căp-iămûs, we may take.</i>
<i>Căp-iăs, thou mayest take.</i>	<i>Căp-iătis, ye or you may take.</i>
<i>Căp-iăt, he may take.</i>	<i>Căp-iant, they may take.</i>

REM.—The remaining parts of the indicative and subjunctive moods, in verbs in *iō*, are entirely regular.

272. It has been stated (255) that pronouns are divided into two classes, viz., *Substantive Pronouns* and *Adjective Pronouns*.

273. Adjective pronouns are so called, because they are sometimes used as *pronouns to supply the place of nouns*, and sometimes as *adjectives to qualify nouns*. These are divided into several classes.

274. *Demonstrative Pronouns*, so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer, are *hic, illē, istē, is*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

1. <i>Hic, this.</i>					
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Hic,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hī,</i>	<i>hae,</i>	<i>haec.</i>
G. <i>Hujūs,</i>	<i>hujūs,</i>	<i>hujūs.</i>	<i>Hōrūm,</i>	<i>hārūm,</i>	<i>hōrūm.</i>
D. <i>Huīc,</i>	<i>huīc,</i>	<i>huīc.</i>	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs.</i>
A. <i>Hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>haec.</i>
V					
A. <i>Hōc,</i>	<i>hāc,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs.</i>
2. <i>Illē, he or that.</i>					
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Illē,</i>	<i>illā,</i>	<i>illūd.</i>	<i>Illī,</i>	<i>illae,</i>	<i>illā.</i>
G. <i>Illīūs,</i>	<i>illīūs,</i>	<i>illīūs.</i>	<i>Illōrūm,</i>	<i>illārūm,</i>	<i>illōrūm.</i>
D. <i>Illī,</i>	<i>illī,</i>	<i>illī.</i>	<i>Illīs,</i>	<i>illīs,</i>	<i>illīs.</i>
A. <i>Illūm,</i>	<i>illām,</i>	<i>illūd.</i>	<i>Illōs,</i>	<i>illās,</i>	<i>illā.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Illō,</i>	<i>illā,</i>	<i>illō.</i>	<i>Illīs,</i>	<i>illīs,</i>	<i>illīs.</i>
3. <i>Istē, that.</i>					
<p><i>Istē, that,</i> is declined like <i>illē</i>. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.</p>					

## PARADIGMS—continued.

4. Is, *he* or *that*.(Less specific than *illē*.)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Is,	eā,	īd.	Īi,	cae,	eā.
G. Ejūs,	ejūs,	ejūs.	Eōrūm,	eārūm,	eōrūm.
D. Eī,	eī,	eī.	Īis or eīs,	īis or eīs,	īis or eīs.
A. Eūm,	eām,	īd.	Eōs,	eās,	eā.
V.					
A. Eō,	eā,	eō.	Īis or eīs,	īis or eīs,	īis or eīs.

5. Idēm, *the same*.(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *īs*.)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N Idēm,	eādēm,	īdēm.	Īidēm,	caedēm,	eādēm.
G Ejusdēm,	ejusdēm,	ejusdēm.	Eōrundēm,	eārundēm,	eōrundēm.
D. Eidēm,	eidēm,	eīdēm.	Eisdēm, or	eisdēm, or	eisdēm, or
A. Eundēm,	eandēm	īdēm.	īisdēm,	īisdēm,	īisdēm.
V.			Eōsdēm,	eāsdēm,	eādēm.
A. Eōdēm,	eādēm,	eōdēm.	Eisdēm, or	eisdēm, or	eisdēm, or
			īisdēm,	īisdēm,	īisdēm.

## 275. VOCABULARY.

Ab ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	from.
Castrā, ōrūm ( <i>plur.</i> ),	camp.
Cēlēritēr,	quickly.
Clēmentīā, ae,	mildness, elemency
Confūgērē (iō), confūg,	to flee for refuge.
Cūm ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ).	with.
Dimittērē, dimīs,	dismiss.
Ex ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ),	from.
Impētūs, ūs,	attack ( <i>impetus</i> ).
Impēratā, ōrūm,	commands.
Lōcūs, ī,	place, position ( <i>local</i> ).
Mōvērē, mōv,	to move, to put in motion.

Postĕrā, ūm ( <i>mas. not used</i> ),	next, following.
Postŭlārĕ, āv,	to demand.
Prōmittĕrĕ, prōmīs,	to promise.
Prōmōvĕrĕ, prōmōv,	to move forward, to advance.
Vĕrō,	indeed, truly.

276. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Postĕro die castra ex eo loco movent. 2. Idem facit Caesar. 3. Idem faciēbant. 4. Ego vero istud non postŭlo. 5. Veni ut legĕrem. 6. Haec promissis. 7. Eōdem die castra promōvit.

8. Hi primi (205) cum gladiis impĕtum fecērunt. 9. Illi imperāta celerĭter fecērunt. 10. Ibi me non occidisti. 11. Eum ab se dimittit. 12. Venisti ut eum vidĕres. 13. Hunc capĭtis damnābunt. 14. Illos proditionis invĭti accusaverātis.

(b) 1. I will give you this book. 2. We prize these beautiful books very highly. 3. They will think little of those beautiful books. 4. You have condemned this man to death. 5. I will entreat him not to do (that he may not do) this.

6. I have unwillingly condemned him to death. 7. We will not accuse you of treachery. 8. You have accused him of bribery. 9. We entreated him not to accuse his son. 10. We did not make the attack. 11. They asked us to make an attack.

## LESSON XLIX.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun.*

277. THE *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsĕ*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*;



it is also called an *adjunctive* pronoun, because it is usually joined to a noun, or to some other pronoun; as, *Rōmūlūs ipsē*, Romulus himself; *tū ipsē*, you yourself.

278. *Ipsē*, when joined to a noun or pronoun, may sometimes be translated by *very*; as, *hōc ipsūm*, this *very* thing.

279. *Ipsē* is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Ipsē</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> ,	<i>ipsūm</i> .	<i>Ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsae</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> .
G. <i>Ipsīūs</i> ,	<i>ipsīūs</i> ,	<i>ipsīūs</i> .	<i>Ipsōrūm</i> ,	<i>ipsārūm</i> ,	<i>ipsōrūm</i> .
D. <i>Ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsī</i> .	<i>Ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> .
A. <i>Ipsūm</i> ,	<i>ipsām</i> ,	<i>ipsūm</i> .	<i>Ipsōs</i> ,	<i>ipsās</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> .
V.					
A. <i>Ipsō</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> ,	<i>ipsō</i> .	<i>Ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> .

REM.—The substantive pronouns are rendered *intensive* by annexing the syllable *mēt*; as, *ġōmēt*, I myself. In the substantive pronoun of the third person, *sēsē* is used *intensively* in the accusative and ablative of both numbers.

## 280. VOCABULARY.

Accēdērē, access,	to approach	( <i>access</i> ).
At,	but, yet.	
Fortūnā, ae,	fortune.	
Fūgā, ae,	flight.	
Gēnūs, gēnērīs,	kind, nature	
Justūs, ā, ūm,	just, fair.	
Nūmērūs, I,	number	( <i>numerous</i> ).
Occultārē, āv,	to conceal	( <i>occult</i> ).
Responderē, respond,	to answer	( <i>respond</i> ).
Usquē,	as far as: <i>usque ad</i> , even to.	

## 281. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ipse fuga mortem vitavērat. 2. Ipse ad castra hostium accessit. 3. Ipsi usque ad castra hostium

accessērant. 4. Caius sese occultābat. 5. Servi nostri sese occultābunt. 6. Ipse dixit. 7. Hoc ipsum justum est. 8. At te eādem tua fortūna servāvit. 9. Caesar hæc promisit. 10. Ad hæc legāti respondērunt.

(b) 1. He himself accused the son of the king. 2. We shall accuse the king himself. 3. You yourself gave me this book. 4. They will read this very (*ipsē*) book. 5. We ourselves will go to see the queen. 6. They have gone to see the queen herself.

7. You promised this. 8. We will ourselves do the same. 9. You have said nothing of (*de*) the nature of the war. 10. We shall say nothing of the war itself. 11. They had come to condemn me to death.

## LESSON L.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.*

282. THE *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called, because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quī,	quæ,	quōd.	Quī,	quæ,	quæ.
G. Cujūs,	ejūs,	ejūs.	Quōrūm,	quārūm,	quōrūm.
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quibūs,	quibūs,	quibūs.
A. Quēm,	quām,	quōd.	Quōs,	quās,	quæ.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quibūs,	quibūs,	quibūs.

283. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The relative agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; as, *Puēr quī scribīt, the boy who writes.*

REM.—*Quī* is in the masculine singular, to agree with its antecedent *puēr*; but it is in the *nominative* because it is the subject of *scribīt*, and not because its antecedent is in the nominative.

284. The *Interrogative Pronouns*, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except the forms *quīs*, *quīd*, as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quīs,	quae,	quīd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quōrūm,	quārūm,	quōrūm.
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.
A. Quēm,	quām,	quīd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.

## 285. VOCABULARY.

Ampliūs ( <i>comp. adv. from ample</i> ),	more, further.
Cogītārē, āv,	to think, to think about.
Cōgnoscerē, cōgnōv,	to ascertain.
Cōram,	openly, in person.
Expectārē, āv,	to await, expect.
Nuntiūs, ī,	messenger.
Parvūs, ā, ūm.	little, small.
Perspicērē, perspex,	to perceive, to see
Planē,	plainly.
Vocārē, āv,	to call.

286. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Quis nos vocābit? 2. Quid dixisti? 3. Quid cogītas? 4. Quid times? 5. Quis tibi hunc librum dedit? 6. Eādem quae ex nuntiis cognovērat, coram perspicit. 7. In qua urbe vivimus? 8. Illi, quod nemo fecerat, fecerunt. 9. Quid est quod amplius expectes? 10. Quam urbem habemus? 11. Quis Caium proditionis (214) accūsat? 12. Quem ambītus accusavisti? 13. Carthagīne invītus manēbo. 14. Bien-nium Romae invīti manēbant. 15. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texistis.

(b) 1. Whom do you love? 2. I see the slave whom you punished. 3. Who has sold his country for gold? 4. Who gave the boy this beautiful book? 5. Who will show me the way? 6. I will show you the house which my father built.

7. Which book were you reading? 8. I was reading the book which you gave me. 9. We all read to learn (that we may learn). 10. You have remained at Rome many years. 11. How much time you have lost!

## LESSON LI.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles.*

287. *Nē* and *nūm* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun (284) or interrogative adverb, one of these particles must be used.

288. If *ně* is used, it must *follow* and be joined to some other word; and, if there is a *not* in the sentence, it must be joined to the *nōn* (not), making *nonně*; e. g.,

1. Scribit*ně* Caiūs? Is Caius writing?
2. Nonn*ě* scribīt? Is not he writing?
3. Nūm scribīt Caiūs? Is Caius writing? [No.]

REM.—A question *with* *ně* and *without* *nōn* asks for information (Ex. 1), with *nōn* expects the answer *yes* (Ex. 2), and with *nūm* expects the answer *no* (Ex. 3); thus, Nūm scribīt Caiūs, means, *Caius is not writing, is he?*

## 289. VOCABULARY.\*

Aspergērē, aspers, <i>sprinkle</i> .	accus., <i>to, into, against</i> ; with
Arā, ae, <i>altar</i> .	abl., <i>in</i> .
Auctumnūs, ī, <i>autumn</i> .	Nidūs, ī, <i>nest</i> .
Construērē, construx, <i>to build</i> , <i>construct</i> .	Periculōsūs, ā, ūm, <i>dangerous</i> .
Immergērē, immers, <i>to plunge</i> <i>into</i> .	Sanguis, inīs, <i>m., blood</i> .
In ( <i>prep. with accus. or abl.</i> ), with	Sēmēn, inīs, <i>seed</i> .
	Spargērē, spars, <i>to scatter, to sow</i> .
	Victimā, ae, <i>victim</i> .

## 290. Exercises.

(In construing, omit the *ně* or *nūm*, but make the sentence a question.)

(a) 1. Scripsitne Caius?† 2. Num scripserātis? 3. Num rex portas urbis sua manu claudet? 4. Quid rides?

\* It has been thought unnecessary longer to insert *key-words* in the Vocabularies, but it is hoped the pupil will still continue to accustom himself to associate with his Latin at least some of the more common English words which have been derived from it.

† In construing a question, the auxiliary verb (*does, do, did, has, have*) must be put before the subject; as, Scripsitne puer, *Has the boy written?* or *Did the boy write?*

5. Caius se in flumen immersit. 6. Periculōsum est hiēme se in flumen immergēre. 7. Puer se in flumen immergat. 8. *Agricolūrum est*<sup>7</sup> semīna auctumno spargēre. 9. Nonnē in *summīs Alpibus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? 10. Sacerdos victimārum sanguīne aram aspersit. 11. Nonnē boni est pastōris<sup>7</sup> tondēre oves, non deglubēre?

(b) 1. Does he live to eat? [No.] 2. Does not he eat to live? 3. The husbandman has scattered seeds. 4. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? 5. He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. 6. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. 7. They *have come to condemn* (239) you *to death*.<sup>8</sup> 8. Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?<sup>10</sup> [No.] 9. The boy's industry is so-great, that he can learn all things. 10. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? 11. Are you shearing the sheep?

## LESSON LII.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Pronouns, Indefinite and Possessive.*

291. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdām*, a certain one; *āliquis*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *siquis*, if any, &c.

292. The *indefinite pronouns* are compounds either of *quis* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

293. *Quīdām*, compounded of *quī* and *dām*, is declined like *quī*, except in the neuter singular, where it

takes *quid* (instead of *quod*) when used *substantively* and in the accusative singular and genitive plural, where *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *quendā* (not *quem-dām*), *quorundā* (not *quorumdām*).

294. *Aliquīs*, compounded of *aliūs* and *quīs*, is declined like *quīs*, except in the neuter singular, nominative and accusative, where it has *āliquōd* adjective, and *āliquīd* substantive; and in the feminine singular and neuter plural, where it has *āliquā*. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Aliquīs,</i>	<i>āliquā,</i>	<i>āliquōd or āliquīd.</i>
G. <i>Aliqujūs,</i>	<i>ālicujūs,</i>	<i>ālicujūs.</i>
D. <i>Alicuī,</i>	<i>ālicuī,</i>	<i>ālicuī.</i>
A. <i>Aliquēm,</i>	<i>āliquām,</i>	<i>āliquōd or āliquīd.</i>
V.		
A. <i>Aliquē,</i>	<i>āliquā,</i>	<i>āliquō.</i>
PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Aliquī,</i>	<i>āliquae,</i>	<i>āliquā.</i>
G. <i>Aliquōrūm,</i>	<i>āliquārūm,</i>	<i>āliquōrūm.</i>
D. <i>Aliquībūs,</i>	<i>āliquībūs,</i>	<i>āliquībūs.</i>
A. <i>Aliquōs,</i>	<i>āliquās,</i>	<i>āliquā.</i>
V.		
A. <i>Aliquībūs,</i>	<i>āliquībūs,</i>	<i>āliquībūs.</i>

295. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *nostēr, nestrā, nostrūm*; *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

## 296. VOCABULARY

A ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ), <i>from.</i>	Indicēre, <i>indix, to declare (as war).</i>
Argentūm, <i>i, silver.</i>	Infligēre, <i>infix, inflict.</i>
Conciliūm, <i>i, council.</i>	Sī, <i>if.</i>
Continēre, <i>ū, to restrain, confine.</i>	Ullūs, <i>ā, ūm (113, REM.), any.</i>
Culpā, <i>ae, fault.</i>	Vulnūs, <i>ērīs, wound.</i>

## 297. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aliquid temporis invitatus amittes. 2. Non est tua ulla culpa, si te aliqui timuerunt. 3. Aliquis est in horto tuo. 4. Caesar suos a proelio continēbat. 5. Legatos ad Caesarem misit. 6. Legati ad concilium venerunt. 7. Christianorum est fidem suam servare. 8. Turpe est patriae tuae leges violare. 9. Rex urbi bellum indicet. 10. Anguis agricolae vulnus infligēbat. 11. Tanta est industria tua, ut multa discas. 12. Tanta fuit industria tua ut multa discerēs.

(b) 1. Some one has accused you of bribery. 2. They have accused certain persons of theft. 3. He will condemn some one to death. 4. We have lost some time. 5. The shepherd has sold his dog for gold. 6. It is the duty of a father to instruct his sons. 7. Who has accused you of theft? 8. No one has accused me of theft. 9. Some one has accused you of treachery. 10. Who has accused me of treachery? 11. The king himself has accused you of treachery.

## LESSON LIII.

*Verb.*—*Essē.*

298. THE verb *essē*, to be, is called a substantive verb, except when used as an auxiliary in the passive



voice (not yet examined) of other verbs. Its conjugation is quite irregular.

### 299. Paradigm of the verb *Essē*.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT (*am*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plurat.</i>
<i>Sūm, I am.</i>	<i>Sūmūs, we are.</i>
<i>Es, thou art.</i>	<i>Estis, you are.</i>
<i>Est, he is.</i>	<i>Sunt, they are.</i>

##### IMPERFECT (*was*).

<i>Erām, I was.</i>	<i>Erāmūs, we were.</i>
<i>Erās, thou wast.</i>	<i>Erātis, you were.</i>
<i>Erāt, he was.</i>	<i>Erant, they were.</i>

##### FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

<i>Erō, I shall be.</i>	<i>Erīmūs, we shall be.</i>
<i>Eris, thou wilt be.</i>	<i>Erītis, you will be.</i>
<i>Erit, he will be.</i>	<i>Erunt, they will be.</i>

##### PERFECT (*have been or was*).

<i>Fuī, I have been.</i>	<i>Fuīmūs, we have been.</i>
<i>Fuisti, thou hast been.</i>	<i>Fuistis, you have been.</i>
<i>Fuit, he has been.</i>	<i>Fuērunt, } they have been.</i> <i>Fuērē, }</i>

##### PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

<i>Fuērām, I had been.</i>	<i>Fuērāmūs, we had been.</i>
<i>Fuērās, thou hadst been.</i>	<i>Fuērātis, you had been.</i>
<i>Fuērāt, he had been.</i>	<i>Fuērant, they had been.</i>

##### FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

<i>Fuērō, I shall have been.</i>	<i>Fuērīmūs, we shall have been.</i>
<i>Fuēris, thou wilt have been.</i>	<i>Fuērītis, you will have been.</i>
<i>Fuērīt, he will have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint, they will have been.</i>

## PARADIGM—continued.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Sím, <i>I may be.</i>	Simūs, <i>we may be.</i>
Sís, <i>thou mayest be.</i>	Sítis, <i>you may be.</i>
Sit, <i>he may be.</i>	Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

Essēm, <i>I might be.</i>	Essēmūs, <i>we might be.</i>
Essēs, <i>thou mightest be.</i>	Essētis, <i>you might be.</i>
Essēt, <i>he might be.</i>	Essent, <i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuērím, <i>I may have been.</i>	Fuērímūs, <i>we may have been.</i>
Fuērís, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	Fuērītis, <i>you may have been.</i>
Fuērít, <i>he may have been.</i>	Fuērint, <i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i>
Fuissēs, <i>thou mightest have been.</i>	Fuissētis, <i>you might have been.</i>
Fuissēt, <i>he might have been.</i>	Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.\*

Es, or estō, <i>be thou.</i>	Estē or estōtē, <i>be ye.</i>
Estō, <i>let him be.</i>	Suntō, <i>let them be.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essē, <i>to be.</i>
PERFECT,	Fuissē, <i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs (ā, ūm) essē, <i>to be about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, <i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------------------------

\* The remaining forms are given here in order to complete the Paradigm of the verb *essē*, although the nature and use of the *imperative* and *infinitive* moods, and of the *participles*, have not yet been examined; a word of explanation will be sufficient for this place.

300. The *Imperative Mood* denotes a command, and of course is never used in the first person.

301. The *Infinitive Mood*, as we have already seen (9), represents simply the meaning of the verb, without person or number. It has three tenses, *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

302. The *Participle* is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective; thus, the participle *fūtūrūs*, *ā*, *ūm*, is declined like the adjective *bōnūs*, *ā*, *ūm* (112).

### 303. VOCABULARY.

Absolvērē, absolvi, *to acquit*.

Admirātiō, ōnis, *admiration*.

Brēvis, ē, *short*.

Dignūs, ā, ūm, *worthy*.

Ferrūm, ī, *iron*.

Hābitārē, āvi, *to dwell, to inhabit*.

Hōnōr, ōris, *honor*

Incertūs, ā, ūm, *uncertain*.

Indignūs, ā, ūm, *unworthy*.

Mens, tis, *mind, reasoning faculty*.

Opūs, ēris, *work*.

Tranquillūs, ā, ūm, *calm, tranquil*.

Utilis, ē, *useful*.

### 304. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla. 2. Est tuum\* iter facere. 3. Puer in horto fuerat. 4. His honoribus (181) digni sitis. 5. Caius vita indignus est. 6. Ferrum et aurum sunt utilia. 7. Haec opera sunt admiratione digna. 8. Vita est brevis et incerta. 9. Improborum<sup>7</sup> est malos laudare. 10. Venimus ut patriae tuae leges violaremus. 11. Veniant servi ut portas urbis claudant. 12. Multos annos Romae habitaveratis.

(b) 1. The good will be happy. 2. May you be happy. 3. We all might have been happy. 4. It is

---

\* Est tuūm, it is yours' i. e. your duty.

my duty to keep the laws of my country. 5. May he ever be worthy of this honor. 6. He would have been unworthy of his father.

7. He had been king many years. 8. We will never praise the bad. 9. They will condemn us to death. 10. We will never accuse the good. 11. He had broken his arm at Athens. 12. Virtue is the highest wisdom. 13. We will acquit you of bribery (214.)

## LESSON LIV.

*Verb Essē, continued.—Comparison of Adjectives.*

305. ADJECTIVES in Latin, as in English, may express different degrees of the quality which they denote; e. g.,

Altūs,	altiōr,	altissimūs.
High,	higher,	highest.

REM.—In this example, *altūs* (high) is said to be in the *positive degree*; *altiōr* in the *comparative*; and *altissimūs*, in the *superlative*.

306. In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

<i>Comparative.</i>			<i>Superlative.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
iōr,	iōr,	iūs	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.
<i>Examples.</i>	<i>Root.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>	
Altūs ( <i>high</i> ),	alt.		altiōr (iōr, iūs),	altissimūs (ā, ūm).	
Mitīs ( <i>mild</i> ),	mīt.		mītiōr (iōr, iūs),	mītissimūs (ā, ūm).	

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ēr* add *rīmūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr,                      pulchriōr,                      pulcherrīmūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *lis* form the superlative by adding *līmūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Făcilis ( <i>easy</i> ),	făciliör,	făcillimūs.
Difficilis ( <i>difficult</i> ),	difficiliör,	difficillimūs.
Similis ( <i>like</i> ),	similiör,	simillimūs.
Dissimilis ( <i>unlike</i> ),	dissimiliör,	dissimillimūs.

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bönūs ( <i>good</i> ),	méliör,	optimūs.
Mälūs ( <i>bad</i> ),	pejör,	pessimūs.
Măgnūs ( <i>great</i> ),	majör,	maximūs.
Parvūs ( <i>little</i> ),	mīnör,	mīnimūs.
Multūs ( <i>much</i> ),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, } plūră), }	plūrimūs.

307. The conjunction *quām* is generally used with the comparative degree, unless one of the persons or things compared is the subject of the proposition, in which case *quām* is usually omitted, though sometimes used; e. g.,

1. Nihil est clēmentia dīvinīūs.  
Nothing is more godlike than clemency.
2. Eurōpă mīnör est quām Asiă.  
Europe is smaller than Asia.

308. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The comparative degree without *quām* is followed by the ablative.

REM. 1.—Clēmentia in the first example is in the ablative by this rule.

REM. 2.—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes: thus, *Asiă*, which follows *quām* in the second example, is in the same case as *Eurōpă*, which precedes.

309. The conjunction *quām* before a superlative renders it intensive; e. g.,

Quām plūrimī, { *Eng. Id.* As many as possible.  
                  { *Lat. Id.* As the most.

Quām maxīmūs, { *Eng. Id.* { As great as possible.  
                  { *Lat. Id.* { The greatest possible  
                  { *Lat. Id.* As the greatest.

REM.—The superlative may often be best translated by *very* instead of *most*; as, *mons altissimŭs*, a very high mountain.

### 310. VOCABULARY.

Amplŭs, ā, ūm, *extensive, great*.  
 Argentŭm, ī, *silver*.  
 Cēlēbēr, brīs, brē, *celebrated*.  
 Cicēro, ōnīs, *Cicero*.  
 Divinŭs, ā, ūm, *divine*.  
 Futŭrŭs, ā, ūm, *future*.  
 Grāvīs, ē, *heavy*.  
 Impendērē, *to overhang. to threaten.*

Ignorātiō, ōnīs, *ignorance*.  
 Mālŭm, ī, *an evil*.  
 Prētiōsŭs, ā, ūm, *valuable*.  
 Quām, *than*.  
 Quām maximŭs, ā, ūm, *as great as possible*.  
 Rātiō, ōnīs, *reason*.  
 Scientiā, ae, *knowledge*.  
 Turrīs, īs, *tower*.

### 311. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aurum gravius est argento. 2. Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est quam scientia. 3. Difficillimum est iram placare. 4. In summis montibus<sup>10</sup> acerrimum est frigus.

5. Veniunt ut copias comparent. 6. Venit ut quam maximas<sup>9</sup> copias compararet. 7. Turris est altior muro. 8. Quid est in homine ratione divinius? 9. Mons altissimus impendebat. 10. Cicero erat orator celebrissimus. 11. Romani ampliores copias expectabant.

(b) 1. Gold is very heavy. 2. Gold is more valuable than silver. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than gold and silver. 4. You are building a very high wall. 5. You have your wall higher than your tower. 6. We shall raise very large forces. 7. You have raised larger forces than the king himself.

8. We have come to raise as large forces as possible.<sup>9</sup> 9. Let them raise as large forces as possible. 10. It is<sup>4</sup> very easy to keep one's word. 11. It is easier to keep one's word than to appease anger. 12. Who was more celebrated than Cicero? 13. He was a very celebrated orator.

## LESSON LV

*Compounds of Essě.—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numeral Adjectives.*

312. THE compounds of *essě* (except *possě*, to be able, which is irregular, and will be noticed hereafter) are conjugated like the simple *essě*. *prōdessě*, however (compounded of *prō*, for, and *essě*, to be), inserts *d* after *prō* in those parts which in the simple verb begin with *e*; as,

*Pres.* Prōsūm, prōdēs, prōdest, prōsūmūs, prōdestīs, prōsunt, &c.

313. The compounds of *essě* (except *possě*) are followed by the dative, as they take *only* an indirect object (82 and 643, 2); e. g.,

Mihĭ prōfuĭt.

It profited me (*did good to me*).

REM.—Here it is plain that *mihĭ* (to me) is not a *direct*, but only an *indirect* object.

314. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison: the comparative of the adverb being the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective, and the superlative being formed from that of the adjective by changing the ending *ūs* into *ē*; as,

<i>Adj.</i> Altūs,	altiōr (iūs <i>neut.</i> ),	altissīmūs.
<i>Adv.</i> Altē,	altiūs,	altissīmē.

## NUMERALS.

315. Numerals comprise,

(a) Numeral adjectives, consisting of three distinct classes; viz.,

- 1) *Cardinals*, which denote simply the *number* of objects; as, *ūnūs*, one; *duō*, two, &c.
- 2) *Ordinals*, which denote the *position* of any object in a *series*; as, *prīmūs*, first; *secundūs*, second.
- 3) *Distributives*, which denote the *number* of objects which are taken *at a time*; as, *singulī*, one by one; *binī*, two by two.

(b) Numerical adverbs; as, *sēmēl*, once; *bīs*, twice. (See numerals, 583.)

316. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Milēs fortītēr pūgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*. *Haud diffīcīlis*, *not difficult*.

317. (a) The first three cardinals, *ūnūs*, *duō*, and *trēs*, are declined as follows:

### 1. Paradigm of *ūnūs*, *one*.

N. Unūs,	unā,	unūm.	Unī,	unae,	unā.
G. Unīus.	unīūs,	unīūs.	Unōrūm,	unārūm,	unōrūm.
D. Unī,	unī,	unī.	Unīs,	unīs,	unīs.
A. Unūm,	unām,	unūm.	Unōs,	unās,	unā.
V. Unē,	unā,	unūm.			
A. Unō,	unā,	unō.	Unīs,	unīs,	unīs.

REM.—The plural of *ūnūs*, as a numeral, is used only with nouns which have no singular.

### 2. Paradigms of *duō*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*.

N. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs (m. & f.),	triā.
G. Duōrūm,	duārūm,	duōrūm.	Triūm,	triūm.
D. Duōbūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs.	Tribūs,	tribūs.
A. Duōs and } duō,	duās,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
V. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
A. Duōbūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs.	Tribūs,	tribūs.



REM.—Trēs is declined like the plural of tristis (153).

(b) Cardinal numbers, from four to one hundred, are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnūs* (112); e. g., *dūcentī*, ae, ā, *two hundred*.

318. Ordinals are declined like *bōnūs*. Distributives are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*.

319. Whenever the same noun belongs to both members of a comparison in Latin, it is generally expressed in the first and omitted in the second; in English, however, it is expressed in the first, and represented in the second by the pronoun *that* or *those*; e. g.,

Mārīs sūpĕrfīciēs majōr est quā̄m terrae.

The sea's surface is greater than (*that\**) of the land.

REM.—Hence, in translating English into Latin, *that*, *those*, after *than*, should be omitted.

### 320. VOCABULARY.

Concertārē, āv, <i>to contend, quarrel.</i>	Omninō, <i>altogether, in all.</i>
Continuūs, ā, ūm, <i>successive.</i>	Prōdessē, prōfu, <i>to do good, to profit.</i>
Dēcēm, <i>ten.</i>	Prōducērē, prōdux, <i>to lead forward or out.</i>
Dēcīmūs, ā, ūm, <i>tenth.</i>	Quartūs, ā, ūm, <i>fourth.</i>
Duō, duae, duō, <i>two.</i>	Quinquē, <i>five.</i>
Intēressē, interfū, <i>to be engaged in.</i>	Sūpĕrfīciēs, ēī, <i>surface.</i>
Mārē, īs, <i>sea.</i>	Terrā, ae, <i>earth.</i>
Obessē, obfu, <i>to be prejudicial to.</i>	

### 321. Exercises.

(a) 1. Milītes fortīter pugnānt. 2. Romāni fortius quam hostes pugnāvērunt. 3. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit. 4. Erant omnīno itinĕra duo. 5. Caesar *quam max-*

---

\* Here *that* stands for *the surface*.

*imas* copias comparaverat. 6. Caius, vir summo ingenio praeditus, Romae habitat. 7. Servus meus proelio interfuit. 8. Fides plurimis profuit. 9. Christianorum est<sup>7</sup> avaritiam damnare. 10. Caius multis proeliis interfuert. 11. Terrae superficies minor est quam maris. 12. Caesar decimam legionem misit.

(b) 1. They will fight bravely. 2. You fought more bravely than the Romans. 3. The king himself was engaged in the battle. 4. He fought very bravely. 5. Ten legions were engaged in the first battle. 6. The soldiers of the tenth legion fought more bravely than those<sup>h</sup> of the fourth. 7. Anger has often *been prejudicial* to states. 8. It is the part of a Christian to do good to as many as possible. 9. Caesar raised the greatest forces possible. 10. Many states relying on their strength will raise forces.

## LESSON LVI.

*Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for continued Action.*

322. A TRANSITIVE verb (72) may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting upon some object; as, *Pătēr filiūm dōcēt, the father teaches his son*; it is then said to be in the *Active Voice*.
- 2) As acted upon by some other person or thing; as, *Filiūs ā patrē dōcētūr, the son is taught by his father*; it is then said to be in the *Passive Voice*.

REM.—The forms which have been used in the previous exercises all belong to the active voice: we shall now consider the formation and use of the passive.

323. The third persons (singular and plural) of the tenses for continued action (190), both in the indicative and subjunctive moods, are formed in the passive voice, by adding the ending *ūr* to the corresponding forms of the active.

a) But observe that the vowel before the *t* in the singular is long, except from *ūt* in the third conjugation, and from *ābūt* and *ēbūt*.

324. The following table presents the formation of the third persons of the passive in the moods and tenses just mentioned.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), *is, are loved, &c.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-āt,	Mōn-ēt,	Rĕg-it,	Aud-īt,
Am-ātūr.	Mōn-ētūr.	Rĕg-itūr.	Aud-ītūr.
Am-ant,	Mōn-ent,	Rĕg-unt,	Aud-iunt,
Am-antūr.	Mōn-entūr.	Rĕg-untūr.	Aud-iuntūr.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, were loved, &c.*

Am-ābāt,	Mōn-ēbāt,	Rĕg-ēbāt,	Aud-iēbāt,
Am-ābātūr.	Mōn-ēbātūr.	Rĕg-ēbātūr.	Aud-iēbātūr.
Am-ābant,	Mōn-ēbant,	Rĕg-ēbant,	Aud-iēbant,
Am-ābantūr.	Mōn-ēbantūr.	Rĕg-ēbantūr.	Aud-iēbantūr.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will be loved.*

Am-ābīt,	Mōn-ēbīt,	Rĕg-ēt,	Aud-iēt,
Am-ābītūr.	Mōn-ēbītūr.	Rĕg-ētūr.	Aud-iētūr.
Am-ābunt,	Mōn-ēbunt,	Rĕg-ent,	Aud-ient,
Am-ābuntūr.	Mōn-ēbuntūr.	Rĕg-entūr.	Aud-ientūr.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), *may or can be loved.*

Am-ēt,	Mōn-eāt,	Rĕg-āt,	Aud-iāt,
Am-ētūr.	Mōn-eātūr.	Rĕg-ātūr.	Aud-iātūr.
Am-ent,	Mōn-eant,	Rĕg-ant,	Aud-iant,
Am-entūr.	Mōn-eantūr.	Rĕg-antūr.	Aud-iantūr.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

IMPERFECT (1st root). <i>might, could, &amp;c., be loved.</i>			
Am-ārēt,	Mōn-ērēt,	Rēg-ērēt,	Aud-irēt,
Am-ārētūr.	Mōn-ērētūr.	Rēg-ērētūr.	Aud-irētūr.
Am-ārent,	Mōn-ērent,	Rēg-ērent,	Aud-irent,
Am-ārentūr.	Mōn-ērentūr.	Rēg-ērentūr.	Aud-irentūr.

325. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Passive verbs are followed by the same cases as the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive (322); e. g.,

*Act.* Illī Balbūm furtī accūsant.  
They accuse Balbus of theft.

*Pass.* Balbūs āb illīs furtī accūsātūr.  
Balbus is accused of theft by them.

REM.—Observe that the agent is put in the ablative with *āb* (ab illīs); *a*, however, is often used before a consonant.

## 326. VOCABULARY.

Cōlērē, ū, <i>to cultivate, to practise.</i>	Rhēnūs, ī, <i>Rhine, a river.</i>
Dēmōstrārē, āv, <i>to show.</i>	Rēliquūs, ā, ūm, <i>the rest, the other.</i>
Interficērē (iō), interfēc, <i>to kill, to slay.</i>	Sex, six.
Mittērē, mīs, <i>to send.</i>	Sūprā, <i>above.</i>
Prō ( <i>prep. with abl.</i> ), <i>for, before.</i>	Tangērē, tētīg, <i>to touch, reach.</i>
	Unūs, ā, ūm, <i>one, single, single one.</i>

## 327. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius filios docet. 2. Filii a Caio docentur. 3. Legātos ad Caesārem mittent. 4. Legāti ad Caesārem mittentur. 5. Mittantur legāti. 6. Reliquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituet. 7. Caium capitis damnābunt. 8. Caius capitis damnabitur. 9. Hacc civitas Rhenum tangit. 10. Hacc civitas Rhenum, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. 11. Virtus ab omnibus colātur.

(b) 1. Balbus will kill Caius. 2. He will be killed by Balbus. 3. Caius accuses me of theft. 4. He is accused of theft by Caius. 5. Let him be accused of bribery. 6. Let them be condemned to death. 7. They are killed in the first battle. 8. Let not the king be condemned to death. 9. The law will be broken. 10. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 11. Let not the laws of the city be broken by us.

---

## LESSON LVII.

*Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action.*

328. THE tenses for completed action in the passive voice are called *Compound Forms*, and consist of the perfect participle with certain parts of the verb *essē* (299). We must accordingly notice here the formation of this participle.

329. The perfect participle is formed from what is called the *third root*, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (ă, ūm), and is declined like *bōnūs*.

330. The third root is formed from the first,

- 1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations by the addition of the respective endings, *āt*, *īt*, and *īt*; e. g.,

Amārĕ,	ăm,	ămāt.
Mōnĕrĕ,	mŏn,	mŏnīt.
Audīrĕ,	aud,	audīt.

- 2) In the third conjugation, by the addition of *t*, or sometimes *s* (especially to the *t*-sounds).

- a) Any *p*-sound before *t* is *p* (i. e., *pt* or *bt* becomes *pt*).  
 b) Any *k*-sound before *t* is *c* (i. e., *ct*, *gt*, or *qut* becomes *ct*).  
 c) *D*, and sometimes *g*, is dropped before *s* (see 208, c, and 211).

Scribĕrĕ,	scrib,	script ( <i>b</i> changed to <i>p</i> ).
Rĕgĕrĕ,	rĕg,	rect ( <i>g</i> changed to <i>c</i> ).
Claudĕrĕ,	claud,	claus ( <i>d</i> dropped).

331. The third persons singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive indicative are formed respectively from the third singular of the present, imperfect, and future\* of the indicative of the verb *essĕ* and the perfect participle; and the plural is formed in the same way, by using the plural of the participle and verb.

332. The third persons of the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive, are formed by a similar combination of the perfect passive participle with the third persons of the present and imperfect† subjunctive of *essĕ*.

## PARADIGM.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Amārĕ.	Mōnĕrĕ.	Rĕgĕrĕ.	Audīrĕ.
1st root, <i>ām</i> ,	1st root, <i>mōn</i> ,	1st root, <i>rĕg</i> ,	1st root, <i>aud</i> ,
3d " <i>āmāt</i> .	3d " <i>mōnūt</i> .	3d " <i>rect</i> .	3d " <i>audit</i> .
INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PERFECT ( <i>has been or was loved, &amp;c.</i> ).			
S.   Amātūs† est,	Mōnītūs est,	Rectūs est,	Auditūs est,
P.   Amātī† sunt.	Mōnītī sunt.	Rectī sunt.	Auditī sunt.

\* Instead of the present, imperfect, and future, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are sometimes used.

† Instead of the present and imperfect, the perfect and pluperfect are sometimes used.

‡ These participles, which, it must be remembered, are declined like *bōnūs* (302), are always of the same gender and number as the subject of the verb, thus:

PARADIGM—*continued*.PLUPERFECT (*had been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs ērāt,	Mōnītūs ērāt,	Rectūs ērāt,	Auditūs ērāt,
P.	Amāti ērant.	Mōnīti ērant.	Rectī ērant.	Auditi ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs ērit,	Mōnītūs ērit,	Rectūs ērit,	Auditūs ērit,
P.	Amāti ērunt.	Mōnīti ērunt.	Rectī ērunt.	Auditi ērunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT (*may have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs sīt,	Mōnītūs sīt,	Rectūs sīt,	Auditūs sīt,
P.	Amāti sint.	Mōnīti sint.	Rectī sint.	Auditi sint.

PLUPERFECT (*might have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs essēt,	Mōnītūs essēt,	Rectūs essēt,	Auditūs essēt,
P.	Amāti essent.	Mōnīti essent.	Rectī essent.	Auditi essent.

## 333. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē, av, āt, <i>to value, to prize.</i>	Interficērē (iō), fēc, fecit, <i>to kill.</i>
Collōquiūm, ī, <i>conference, meeting.</i>	Intērīm, <i>in the mean time, meanwhile.</i>
Conspicērē (iō), conspex, conspect, <i>to see, discover.</i>	Lēnīs, ě, <i>mild, merciful.</i>
Dēcernērē, dēcrēv, dēcrēt, <i>to decree.</i>	Litērae, arūm (pl.), <i>letter, epistle.</i>
Dicērē, dix, dict, <i>to say, speak, name.</i>	Mittērē, mīs, mīse, <i>to send.</i>
Facērē (iō), fēc, fact, <i>to do, make, perform.</i>	Pārārē, av, āt, <i>to prepare.</i>
Frangērē, frēg, fract, <i>to break, to violate.</i>	Quintūs, ā, ūm, <i>fifth.</i>
	Sēcundūs, ā, ūm, <i>second.</i>
	Sententiā, ae, <i>sentiment.</i>
	Supplicatiō, ōnīs, <i>thanks, giving.</i>
	Vigintī, <i>twenty.</i>

Amātūs est, *he has been loved.*

Amātā est, *she has been loved.*

Amātūm est, *it has been loved.*

Amātī sunt, *they (men) have been loved.*

Amātae sunt, *they (women) have been loved.*

Amātā sunt, *they (things) have been loved.*

334. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Supplicatio decreta est. 2. Mors omnibus parata est. 3. Dies colloquio dictus erat ex eo die quintus. 4. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt. 5. Faciam id quod est lenius et utilius. 6. Mittuntur ad Caesarem a Balbo litterae. 7. Interim milites legionum duarum ab hostibus conspiciebantur. 8. Milites legionum duarum conspecti sunt.

(b) 1. A thanksgiving had been decreed to Caesar. 2. Twenty soldiers of the tenth legion had been killed in the second battle. 3. Money has ever been valued very highly. 4. Has not money always been valued very highly? 5. Were not the laws broken at Athens? 6. The laws had been broken at Rome. 7. We will appoint the tenth day for a conference. 8. Messengers had been sent to the king. 9. A soldier was sent to the king.

## LESSON LVIII.

*Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice.*

335. THE persons of the tenses for continued action in the indicative and subjunctive moods may be formed from the corresponding parts of the active, as follows:

a) The first persons, by dropping the final consonant (when there is one), and adding *r*; e. g.,

Amō (*act.*),      amōr (*pass. r added*).

Amābām (*act.*), amābār (*pass. m dropped, r added*).

b) The second persons, by changing *s* (*sing.*) into *rīs* (or *rē*), and *tis* (*plur.*) into *mīnī*; e. g.,



Amās (*act.*), ămārīs (or rē) (*pass. s changed to rīs or rē*).

Amătīs (*act.*), ămămīnī (*pass. tīs “ “ inīnī*).

c) The third persons, by adding ūr (323); e. g.,

Amăt (*act.*), ămătūr (*pass. ūr added*).

Amant (*act.*), ămantūr (*pass. ūr added*).

336. The personal endings of the tenses for continued action, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, are as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Act.	ŏ, m,	s,	t,	mūs,	tīs,	nt,
Pass.	r.	rīs, rē.	tūr.	mūr.	mīnī.	ntūr.

337. The first and second persons of the passive may accordingly be formed directly from the third (as already obtained), by changing its ending into those of the first and second, and observing the same principles for vowel changes as apply to the active (248); e. g.,

	<i>3d Pers.</i>	<i>1st Pers.</i>	<i>2d Pers</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	Amătūr,	ămör ( <i>vowel changed</i> )	ămārīs ( <i>rē</i> ).
<i>Plur.</i>	Amantūr,	ămāmūr,	ămămīnī.

338. The first and second persons of the tenses for completed action may be obtained directly from the third person, by simply changing the third person of the proper tense of *esse* into the first and second; e. g.,

<i>Sing.</i>	Amătūs est,	ămătūs sūm,	ămătūs ēs.
<i>Plur.</i>	Amătī sunt,	amătī sūmūs,	ămătī estīs.

## 339. Paradigm of the Indicative Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>am loved, &amp;c.</i>			
<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
Am-ōr,	Mōn-eōr,	Rēg-ōr,	Aud-iōr,
Am-āris (rē),	Mōn-ēris (rē),	Rēg-ēris (rē),	Aud-iēris (rē),
Am-ātūr ;	Mōn-ētūr ;	Rēg-itūr ;	Aud-itūr ;
Am-āmūr,	Mōn-ēmūr,	Rēg-īmūr,	Aud-īmūr,
Am-āminī,	Mōn-ēmīnī,	Rēg-imīnī,	Aud-imīnī,
Am-antūr.	Mōn-entūr.	Rēg-unītūr.	Aud-iuntūr.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>was loved, &amp;c.</i>			
Am-ābār,	Mōn-ēbār,	Rēg-ēbār,	Aud-iēbār,
Am-ābāris (rē),	Mōn-ēbāris (rē),	Rēg-ēbāris (rē),	Aud-iēbāris (rē),
Am-ābātūr ;	Mōn-ēbātūr ;	Rēg-ēbātūr ;	Aud-iēbātūr ;
Am-ābāmūr,	Mōn-ēbāmūr,	Rēg-ēbāmūr,	Aud-iēbāmūr,
Am-ābāmīnī,	Mōn-ēbāmīnī,	Rēg-ēbāmīnī,	Aud-iēbāmīnī,
Am-ābantūr.	Mōn-ēbantūr.	Rēg-ēbantūr.	Aud-iēbantūr.
FUTURE (1st root), <i>shall or will be loved.</i>			
Am-ābōr,	Mōn-ēbōr,	Rēg-ār,	Aud-iār,
Am-ābēris (rē),	Mōn-ēbēris (rē),	Rēg-ēris (rē),	Aud-iēris (rē),
Am-ābitūr ;	Mōn-ēbitūr ;	Rēg-ētūr ;	Aud-iētūr ;
Am-ābīmūr,	Mōn-ēbīmūr,	Rēg-ēmūr,	Aud-iēmūr,
Am-ābīmīnī,	Mōn-ēbīmīnī,	Rēg-ēmīnī,	Aud-iēmīnī,
Am-ābuntūr.	Mōn-ēbuntūr.	Rēg-entūr.	Aud-iēntūr.
PERFECT (3d root, <i>perf. part. and sūm*</i> ), <i>was or have been loved.</i>			
Amāt-ūs sūm,*	Mōnīt-ūs sūm,	Rect-ūs sūm,	Audit-ūs sūm,
Amāt-ūs ēs,	Mōnīt-ūs ēs,	Rect-ūs ēs,	Audit-ūs ēs,
Amāt-ūs est ;	Mōnīt-ūs est ;	Rect-ūs est ;	Audit-ūs est ;
Amāt-ī sūmūs,	Mōnīt-ī sūmūs,	Rect-ī sūmūs,	Audit-ī sūmūs,
Amāt-ī estīs,	Mōnīt-ī estīs,	Rect-ī estīs,	Audit-ī estīs,
Amāt-ī sunt.	Mōnīt-ī sunt.	Rect-ī sunt.	Audit-ī sunt.
PLUPERFECT (3d root, <i>perj part. and ērām†</i> ), <i>had been loved.</i>			
Amāt-ūs ērām,†	Mōnīt-ūs ērām,	Rect-ūs ērām,	Audit-ūs ērām,
Amāt-ūs ēras,	Mōnīt-ūs ēras,	Rect-ūs ēras,	Audit-ūs ēras,
Amāt-ūs ērāt ;	Mōnīt-ūs ērāt ;	Rect-ūs ērāt ;	Audit-ūs ērāt ;
Amāt-ī ērāmūs,	Mōnīt-ī ērāmūs,	Rect-ī ērāmūs,	Audit-ī ērāmūs,
Amāt-ī ērātīs,	Mōnīt-ī ērātīs,	Rect-ī ērātīs,	Audit-ī ērātīs,
Amāt-ī ērant.	Mōnīt-ī ērant.	Rect-ī ērant.	Audit-ī ērant.

\* Fuī is sometimes used instead of sūm (331, N.).

† Fuērām is sometimes used instead of ērām (331, N.).

## PARADIGM—continued.

FUTURE PERFECT (3d root, *perf. part.* and *črō\**), *shall or will have been loved, &c.*

Amāt-ūs črō,*	Mōnit-ūs-črō,	Rect-ūs črō,	Audit-ūs črō,
Amāt-ūs čris,	Mōnit-ūs čris,	Rect-ūs čris,	Audit-ūs čris,
Amāt-ūs črit;	Mōnit-ūs črit;	Rect-ūs črit;	Audit-ūs črit;
Amāt-ī črimūs,	Mōnit-ī črimūs,	Rect-ī črimūs,	Audit-ī črimūs,
Amāt-ī čritīs,	Mōnit-ī čritīs,	Rect-ī čritīs,	Audit-ī čritīs,
Amāt-ī črunt.	Mōnit-ī črunt.	Rect-ī črunt.	Audit-ī črunt.

## 340. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē, āv, āt, *to accuse.*

Admōnērē, u, it, *to admonish, warn.*

Bēnē, *well.*

Carthāgīniēsis, īs, *a Carthaginian.*

Clipeūs, ī, *shield.*

Damnārē, āv, āt, *to condemn.*

Discērē, dīdīc, *to learn.*

Dōnārē, āv, āt, *to give, present.*

Excītārē, āv, āt, *to excite, arouse.*

Finīrē, iv, it, *to finish.*

Gracēi, ōrūm, *the Greeks.*

Hastā, ae, *spear.*

Laudārē, āv, āt, *to praise.*

Mēnsīs, īs, *m., month.*

Mūtārē, āv, āt, *to change.*

Nōvembēr, brīs (*abl. ī*), *November.*

Pugnārē, āv, āt, *to fight.*

Punīrē, iv, it, *to punish.*

Sūpērārē, āv, āt, *to surpass, overquer, to go over.*

## 341. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tempōra mutantur et nos mutāmur in il is.  
2. Finītur labor agricōlae mense Novembri. 3. Vos laudamīni, puēri qui bene didicistis. 4. Donābor clipeo et hasta, si bene pro patria pugnāvērō. 5. Admonebēris, ne iram excītes.<sup>1</sup> 6. Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 7. Eōdem anno Carthaginienses et Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 8. Prodiitiōnis accusāti estis. 9. Ambītus accusāti sumus.

(b) 1. You will be punished. 2. Has he not been punished? 3. We have been admonished not to ac-

\* Fučrō is sometimes used instead of črō (331, N.).

cuse the king. 4. Has the queen been condemned to death? (No.) 5. Who will be condemned to death? 6. Who have been accused of treason? 7. We shall be presented with two beautiful books. 8. Have you not been presented with a very fine dog? 9. Had not the Greeks been conquered by the Romans? 10. By whom were the Romans conquered? 11. We shall be conquered by the enemy.

## LESSON LIX.

### *Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice.*

#### 342. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), *may or can be loved, &c.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ēr,	Mōn-eār,	Rēg-ār,	Aud-iār,
Am-ērīs (rē),	Mōn-eārīs (rē),	Rēg-arīs (rē),	Aud-iārīs (rē),
Am-ētūr ;	Mōn-eātūr ;	Rēg-atūr ;	Aud-iātūr ;
Am-ēmūr,	Mōn-eāmūr,	Rēg-amūr,	Aud-iamūr,
Am-ēmīnī,	Mōn-eāmīnī,	Rēg-amīnī,	Aud-iamīnī,
Am-entūr.	Mōn-eantūr.	Rēg-antūr.	Aud-iantūr.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *might, could, &c., be loved, &c.*

Am-arēr,	Mōn-ērēr,	Rēg-ērēr,	Aud-irēr,
Am-arērīs (rē),	Mōn-ērērīs (rē),	Rēg-ērērīs (rē)	Aud-irērīs (rē),
Am-arētūr ;	Mōn-ērētūr ;	Rēg-ērētūr ;	Aud-irētūr ;
Am-arēmūr,	Mōn-ērēmūr,	Rēg-ērēmūr,	Aud-irēmūr,
Am-arēmīnī,	Mōn-ērēmīnī,	Rēg-ērēmīnī,	Aud-irēmīnī,
Am-arentūr.	Mōn-erentūr.	Rēg-erentūr.	Aud-irentūr.

PERFECT (3d root—*perf. part. and sīm or fuērīm*), *may have been loved, &c.*

Amāt-ūs sīm,	Mōnīt-ūs sīm	Rect-ūs sīm,	Audit-ūs sīm,
Amāt-ūs sīs,	Mōnīt-ūs sīs,	Rect-ūs sīs,	Audit-ūs sīs,
Amāt-ūs sīt,	Mōnīt-ūs sīt ;	Rect-ūs sīt ;	Audit-ūs sīt ;
Amāt-i sīmūs,	Mōnīt-i sīmūs,	Rect-i sīmūs,	Audit-i sīmūs,
Amāt-i sitīs,	Mōnīt-i sitīs,	Rect-i sitīs,	Audit-i sitīs,
Amāt-i sint.	Mōnīt-i sint.	Rect-i sint.	Audit-i sint.

PARADIGM—*continued*.

PLUPERFECT (3d root—*perf. part. and* *essēm or fuissēm*), *might have been loved, &c.*

Amāt-ūs essēm,	Mōnīt-ūs essēm,	Rect-ūs essēm,	Audit-ūs essēm,
Amāt-ūs essēs,	Mōnīt-ūs essēs,	Rect-ūs essēs,	Audit-ūs essēs,
Amāt-ūs essēt;	Mōnīt-ūs essēt;	Rect-ūs essēt;	Audit-ūs essēt;
Amāt-ī essēmūs	Mōnīt-ī essēmūs	Rect-ī essēmūs	Audit-ī essēmūs
Amāt-ī essētīs,	Mōnīt-ī essētīs,	Rect-ī essētīs,	Audit-ī essētīs,
Amāt-ī essent.	Mōnīt-ī essent.	Rect-ī essent.	Audit-ī essent.

343. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying to *separate from*, or *deprive of*, are followed by the *ablative* in addition to the *accusative* of the direct object; e. g.,

Mē lūcē prīvant.

They deprive me *of light*.

## 344. VOCABULARY.

Adulatiō, ōnīs, *flattery*.

Contra (*prep. with acc.*), *against*.

Dēcīpērē (iō), dēcēp, dēcēpt, to deceive.

Fraudārē, āv, āt, to defraud.

Fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgīt, to flee.

Grānūm, ī, grain, grain of corn.

Imprūdēns, tīs, *inconsiderate, imprudent*.

Nēquidēm,\* *not even*.

Paupēr, ěrīs, a poor man.

Perfūgiūm, ī, refuge.

Praebērē, ū, īt, to furnish, offer.

Praepārārē, āv, āt, to prepare.

Princeps, principīs, chief, leader.

Privārē, āv, āt, to deprive.

Sancīrē, sanx, sanct, to enact, confirm.

Sēnectūs, ūtīs, f. old age.

Servārē, āv, āt, to observe, keep.

Spēcīōsūs, ā, ūm, plausible, specious.

Tām, so.

Verbūm, ī, word.

Vivērē, vix, vict, to live.

## 345. Exercises.

(a) 1. Non sum tam imprūdēns ut verbis speciōsis decipiar.<sup>1</sup> 2. Bonae leges a principībūs sanciantur. 3.

\* The emphatic word is generally written between the two parts of this word; thus, *nē grānō quīdēm*, not even a grain.

Praeparētur animus contra omnia. 4. Praebeātur se-  
nectūti perfugium. 5. Ne me luce privētis. 6. Ne  
grano quidem uno paupēres fraudētis. 7. Paupēres ne  
grano quidem uno fraudentur. 8. Invitus<sup>s</sup> te furti  
accusaverat. 9. Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romae vivit.

(b) 1. Be not deceived 2. Let him not be deceived.  
3. I was so imprudent as to be deceived (that I was  
deceived) by specious words. 4. You will not be so  
imprudent as to be deceived by flattery. 5. Let all  
good laws be observed by the citizens. 6. The boys  
fled that they might not be punished. 7. Do not de-  
fraud the poor. 8. Let not the poor be defrauded.  
9. May they never be defrauded by you. 10. You  
shall never be defrauded of even a single grain by us.

## LESSON LX.

### *Imperative Mood — Active and Passive.*

346. THE *Imperative* mood expresses a *command*, an  
*exhortation*, or *entreaty*. It is used only in the present  
tense, and in the second and third persons.

347. If a negative accompanies the imperative, it  
must be expressed in Latin by *nē* (instead of *nōn*); e. g.,

*Nē peccātē, do not sin.*

REM.—It will be remembered that a command or exhortation may  
also be expressed by the present subjunctive (231).

348. The imperative is formed from the first root by  
the addition of the following endings:

ACTIVE.				
	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 2.	ā or atō,	ē or ētō,	ě or itō,	ī or itō.
3.	atō,	ētō,	itō,	itō.
P. 2.	atē, atōtē.	ētē, etōtē,	itē, itōtē,	itē, itōtē.
3.	antō,	entō,	untō,	iuntō.
PASSIVE.				
S. 2.	ārē or atōr,	ērē or ētōr,	ěre or itōr,	irē or itōr.
3.	ātōr,	ētōr,	itōr,	itōr.
P. 2.	āmīnī,	ēmīnī,	īmīnī,	imīnī.
3.	antōr,	entōr,	untōr,	iuntōr.

## 349. Paradigm of the Imperative Mood.

CONJUGATION I.	
	Active.
S. 2.	Am-ā or ām-atō, <i>love thou, do thou love.</i>
3.	Am-atō, <i>let him love.</i>
P. 2.	Am-ātē or ām-atōtē, <i>love ye, do ye love.</i>
3.	Am-antō, <i>let them love.</i>
	Passive.
S. 2.	Am-ārē or ām-ātōr, <i>be thou loved.</i>
3.	Am-ātōr, <i>let him be loved.</i>
P. 2.	Am-āmīnī, <i>be ye loved.</i>
3.	Am-antōr, <i>let them be loved.</i>
CONJUGATION II.	
S. 2.	Mōn-ē or mōn-ētō, <i>advise thou.</i>
3.	Mōn-ētō, <i>let him advise.</i>
P. 2.	Mōn-ētē or mōn-ētōtē, <i>advise ye</i>
3.	Mōn-entō, <i>let them advise.</i>
S. 2.	Mōn-ērē or mōn-ētōr, <i>be thou advised.</i>
3.	Mōn-ētōr, <i>let him be advised.</i>
P. 2.	Mōn-ēmīnī, <i>be ye advised.</i>
3.	Mōn-entōr, <i>let them be advised.</i>
CONJUGATION III.	
S. 2.	Rēg-ě or rēg-itō, <i>rule thou.</i>
3.	Rēg-itō, <i>let him rule.</i>
P. 2.	Rēg-itē or rēg-itōtē, <i>rule ye.</i>
3.	Rēg-untō, <i>let them rule.</i>
S. 2.	Rēg-ěre or rēg-itōr, <i>be thou ruled.</i>
3.	Rēg-itōr, <i>let him be ruled.</i>
P. 2.	Rēg-īmīnī, <i>be ye ruled.</i>
3.	Rēg-iuntōr, <i>let them be ruled.</i>
CONJUGATION IV.	
S. 2.	Aud-ī or aud-itō, <i>hear thou.</i>
3.	Aud-itō, <i>let him hear.</i>
P. 2.	Aud-itē or aud-itōtē, <i>hear ye.</i>
3.	Aud-iuntō, <i>let them hear.</i>
S. 2.	Aud-irē or aud-itōr, <i>be thou heard.</i>
3.	Aud-itōr, <i>let him be heard.</i>
P. 2.	Aud-īmīnī, <i>be ye heard.</i>
3.	Aud-iuntōr, <i>let them be heard.</i>



REM.—The second forms of the imperative (*to, tote, nto, &c.*) are used in *laws, rules, and other formal expressions of duty or permission.*

### 350. VOCABULARY.

Ac, and.

Amēricānūs, ā, ūm, *American.*

Audīrē. iv, it, *to hear, listen to.*

Castigārē, āv, āt, *to chastise.*

Cōgitārē, āv, āt, *to think about.*

Compescērē, compescu, *to restrain, repress.*

Conjux, ūgīs, m. or f., *husband, wife, spouse.*

Conservārē, āv, āt, *to preserve.*

Consiliūm, ī, *advice, instruction.*

Corrumpērē, corrup, corrupt, *to mislead, corrupt.*

Dēfendērē, dēfend, dēfens, *to defend.*

Dēglūbērē, dēglup, dēglupt, *to flay, to skin.*

Exōrārē, āv, āt, *to supplicate.*

Libērī, ōrūm (pl.), *children.*

Nōmēn, īnīs, *name.*

Perniciēs, ēī, *destruction.*

Pōpūlūs, ī, *people.*

Quē (*joined to the word it connects*), and.

Ruērē, ru, ruīt (*or rūt*), *to rush.*

Sālūs, ūtīs, f., *safety.*

Scribērē, scrips, script, *to write.*

Sēpēlīrē, iv, sēpult, *to bury, inter.*

Tondērē, tōtond, tons, *to shear, shave.*

Vestēr, trā, trūm, *your.*

Vidērē, vīd, vīs, *to see.*

### 351. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium ne accūsa. 2. Balbum ne accusāte. 3. Tonde oves: ne deglūbe. 4. Tondēte oves: ne deglubīte. 5. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium. 6. Audīte, pueri, consilia sapientium, et vidēte, ne in perniciem ruātis. 7. Exorāre, mi (115) pater, compesco iram. 8. Nemo in urbe sepelītor. 9. Lex erat his verbis scripta: "Nemo in urbe sepelītor." 10. Audi, mi fili (103, N.), ab imprōbis ne corrumpītor. 11. De vobis ac de libēris vestris cogitāte. 12. Conservāte vos, conjūges, libēros, fortunasque vestras. 13. Populi Romani nomen salutemque defendite.

(b) 1. Do not accuse me of theft. 2. Let him shear the sheep. 3. Let no one break the laws. 4. Let the laws be observed. 5. Do not chastise the slave. 6.



Let not the slaves be chastised. 7. Let him be buried in the city. 8. Defend (ye) the name and the safety of the American people. 9. Defend (ye) the American eagle. 10. Let the American eagle be defended by all. 11. Boys, listen to (hear) the instruction of your fathers. 12. Do not break your word.

## LESSON LXI.

### *Infinitive Mood.*

352. THE *Infinitive* mood (as already stated, 9) represents the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number.

353. The infinitive mood has in each voice three tenses; viz., the *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

REM.—We must here give the formation of the *supine* and *future act. participle* (both of which we shall soon notice), as they are used in forming the future infinitive.

354. The *future active participle* and the *active supine* are formed from the third root; the former by the addition of *ūrūs* (ǎ, ũm); as, *āmāt* (3d root), *āmātūrūs* (ǎ, ũm); and the latter by the addition of *ŭm*; as, *āmāt*, *āmātŭm*.

355. The infinitives are formed as follows:

- 1) The present, from the first root by the addition of the endings:

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
<i>Act.</i>	ārě,	ērě,	čřě,	īřě.
<i>Pass.</i>	ārī,	ērī,	ī,	īrī.

- 2) The perfect active, from the second root by

the addition of the ending *issē*; and the *perfect passive* from the perfect participle and *essē*.

- 3) The future active, from the *future active participle* and *essē*; and the *future passive* from the *supine* and *īrī*.

### 356. Paradigm of the Infinitive Mood.

CONJ. I.		
	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
Pres.	Am-ārē, <i>to love.</i>	Am-arī, <i>to be loved.</i>
Perf.	Amāv-issē, <i>to have loved.</i>	Amāt-ūs essē, <i>to have been loved.</i>
Fut.	Amāt-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to love.</i>	Amāt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>
CONJ. II.		
Pres.	Mōn-ērē, <i>to advise.</i>	Mōn-ērī, <i>to be advised.</i>
Perf.	Mōnu-issē, <i>to have advised.</i>	Mōnīt-ūs essē, <i>to have been advised.</i>
Fut.	Mōnīt-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to advise.</i>	Mōnīt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>
CONJ. III.		
Pres.	Rēg-ērē, <i>to rule.</i>	Rēg-ī, <i>to be ruled.</i>
Perf.	Rex-issē, <i>to have ruled.</i>	Rect-ūs essē, <i>to have been ruled.</i>
Fut.	Rect-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to rule.</i>	Rect-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>
CONJ. IV.		
Pres.	Aud-īrē, <i>to hear.</i>	Aud-īrī, <i>to be heard.</i>
Perf.	Audiv-issē, <i>to have heard.</i>	Audit-ūs essē, <i>to have been heard.</i>
Fut.	Audit-ūrūs essē, <i>to be about to hear.</i>	Audit-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>

357. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The subject of an infinitive must be put in the accusative; e. g.,

Vidēt tē essē beātūm.

He sees that you are happy.

REM. 1.—The accusative *tē* is the subject of *essē*.

REM. 2.—The use of the infinitive, as the subject of a finite verb, has been already considered (184).

358. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The infinitive, either alone or with other words connected with it, may depend upon another verb; e. g.,

1. Cūpīt sāpěřě.

He desires *to be wise*.

2. Spěřāt sē victūrūm essē.

He hopes *that he shall live*.

REM. 1.—In most cases the infinitive is really the direct object of the verb on which it depends; thus *sāpěřě* (to be wise) is really the object desired. He desires (what?) *to be wise*.

REM. 2.—In the compound infinitives (i. e., those which are made up of two words) the participles must *agree* in gender, number, and case with the subject of those infinitives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*. Thus, in the second example, *victūrūm* is in the accusative masculine singular, to agree with *sē*, the subject of the infinitive.

359. Two or more English sentences, joined by the conjunction *that*, are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the following nominative into the accusative and the verb into the infinitive.

### 360. VOCABULARY.

Certūs, ā, ūm, *certain*.

Clēmens, tīs, *mild, merciful*.

Convertěřě, convert, convers, *to turn, convert*.

Cūpěřě (iō), cūpiv (or i), cūpīt, *to desire*.

Dividěřě, divīs, divīs, *to divide*.

Dōcěřě, u, doct, *to teach*.

Oeulūs, ī, *eye*.

Pars, partīs, *part*.

Peccāřě, āv, āt, *to sin*.

Praedā, ae, *booty*.

Sāpěřě, iv, i, or u, *to be wise*.

Spěřāřě, āv, āt, *to hope*.

Tīměřě, ū, *to fear*.

Trēs, triā, *three*.

Venděřě, vendid, vendit, *to sell*.

361. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbi est omnia in tres partes dividere. 2. Nunquam utile est peccare. 3. Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. 4. Cupio me esse clementem. 5. Docemus pueros ut sapere discant. 6. Video in me omnium vestrum oculos esse conversos. 7. Sperant se victuros esse. 8. Certum est Balbum patriam auro vendidisse.

(b) 1. He is said to have divided the booty into ten parts. 2. They are said to have lived at Rome five years. 3. We desire to be happy. 4. You all desire to be happy. 5. He is said to have been very happy. 6. He says, that all eyes were turned upon him. 7. He sees that you are happy. 8. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. 9. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. 10. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.<sup>2</sup> 11. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. 12. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned *to death*.

## LESSON LXII.

*Participles.—Ablative Absolute.*

362. THE participle is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective.

363. A verb may have four participles, viz.: the *present* and *future* in the *active* voice, and the *perfect* and *future* in the *passive*.

364. The participles are formed as follows:

- 1) The present active in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

1.	2.	3.	4.
ans,	ens,	ens,	iens,

to the first root; as,

*Amans* (loving), *mōncens*, *rēgens*, *audiens*.

- 2) The future active, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūrūs* (*ā*, *ūm*) (302); as, *Amātūrūs* (about to love), *mōnītūrūs*, *rectūrūs*, *audītūrūs*.

- 3) The perfect passive, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (*ā*, *ūm*) (302); as, *Amātūs* (loved), *mōnītūs*, *rectūs*, *audītūs*.

- 4) The future passive in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings :

1.	2.	3.	4.
andūs,	endūs,	endūs,	iendūs,

to the first root; as,

*Amandūs* (deserving to be loved), *mōnendūs*, *rēgendūs*, *audiendūs*.

- 365 The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*. The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*; a crime *to be abhorred*.)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by ‘*about to* (write);’ or, ‘*going to* (write).’

366. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence are put in the ablative (called *absolute*); e. g.,

Caesār, victīs hostībūs,	{	<i>Eng. Id.</i> Caesar having conquered his enemies.
		<i>Lat. Id.</i> Caesar his enemies being conquered.

367. The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense; e. g.,

Caesar having conquered his enemies, { Caesar, quum vīcissēt hostēs.  
Caesar, victīs hostībūs.

### 368. VOCABULARY.

Acquitas, atis, <i>equity, justice.</i>	Dēvincērē, devic, deviet, <i>to conquer.</i>
Angustiae, arum ( <i>pl.</i> ), <i>a narrow pass, defile.</i>	Exclamārē, av, at, <i>to cry out, exclaim.</i>
Cānērē, cecin, <i>cant, to sing.</i>	Immergērē, immers, immers, <i>to plunge into, immerse.</i>
Compellērē, compul, compuls, <i>to drive, compel.</i>	Lūdērē, lūs, lūs, <i>to play, to sport.</i>
Constituērē, constitū, constitūt, <i>to arrange, constitute.</i>	Mānērē, mans, mans, <i>to remain.</i>
Deprehendērē, deprehend, deprehens, <i>to seize, catch.</i>	Quum, <i>when.</i>
	Viōlārē, av, at, <i>to violate, to break.</i>

### 369. Exercises.

(a) 1. In via ludentem puerum vidi. 2. In via ludentes deprehendimus. 3. Caesar fugientes hostes in angustias compulit. 4. Fracto pueri brachio, Romae manēbit. 5. Violātis patriae legibus, vita indignus est. 6. Puer, quum manus in aquam immersisset, exclamāvit. 7. Caesar, quum devicisset hostes, summa acquitate res constituit.

(b) 1. Did you hear the nightingales singing in the grove? 2. I saw the fishes swimming on the surface (top) of the water.<sup>10</sup> 3. Did you see the girls playing in the garden? 4. Have you not seen the boys playing in the street? 5. Caius, having broken his arm, remained at Rome. 6. The slave, having killed his

master, was condemned. 7. They say that the slave has been condemned to death. 8. You are said to have been accused of treason. 9. Having violated the laws of the state, we shall all be punished.

## LESSON LXIII.

*Gerunds and Supines.*

370. THE *Gerund* is that part of the verb which corresponds to the participial substantive in *ing* in English.

371. The gerund is really a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

REM.—The infinitive supplies the place of the nominative of the gerund, as that is sometimes used as the subject of a verb (184).

372. The genitive of the gerund ends, in the four conjugations, respectively in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andī,	endī,	endī,	iendī.

*Amandī* (of loving), *mōnendī*, *rēgendī*, *audiendī*.

373. The gerund is declined in the parts in use precisely like a neuter noun of the second declension; e. g.,

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Amandī,</i>	<i>of loving.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Amandō,</i>	<i>to or for loving.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Amandūm,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Amandō,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

REM.—The gerund, being a part of the verb, of course governs the same case.

374. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The gerund is governed like a noun in the same case; e. g.,

Intēr lūdendūm.  
(*During playing.*)  
While they are playing.

375. The Latin verb has two *supines*; one in *ŭm* and one in *ū*.

376. The supines are formed by adding the above endings to the third root; e. g.,

Amātūm (to love), mōnītūm, rectūm, audītūm.  
Amātū (to be loved), mōnītū, rectū, audītū.

REM.—The supine in *ŭm* is generally Englished by the present infinitive active, and that in *ū* by the present infinitive passive, though it may be translated by the active, if that gives better English. Both supines are really active; thus, *factūm* means *for doing*, and *factū* in doing.

377. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ŭm* follows verbs of motion, to express the purpose or object of that motion; e. g.,

Mittīt lēgātōs pācēm pētītūm.  
He sends ambassadors *to sue for* peace.

378. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ū* is used after adjectives signifying *good or bad, easy or difficult, agreeable or disagreeable, &c.*; e. g.,

Diffīcīlē est dictū.  
It is difficult *to say*.

379. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fitness,*



and the *like*, together with their contraries, govern the genitive; e.g.,

Cūpīdūs laudīs, *desirous of praise*.

### 380. VOCABULARY.

Aquārī, āt, <i>to bring water.</i>	Pābūlatūm ( <i>sup.</i> ), <i>to forage.</i>
Aquātūm ( <i>sup.</i> ), <i>to bring water.</i>	Pētērē, iv (i), īt, <i>to seek, ask, sue</i>
Auxīlium, ī, <i>aid, help.</i>	<i>for.</i>
Cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, <i>desirous, desirous of.</i>	Rōgārē, āv, āt, <i>to ask.</i>
Jūcundūs, ā, ūm, <i>pleasant, delightful.</i>	Sumptūs, ūs, <i>expense.</i>
Mirābilis, ē, <i>wonderful.</i>	Sūpervācuūs, ā, ūm, <i>unnecessary.</i>
Pābūlarī, āt, <i>to forage.</i>	Vēnārī, āt, <i>to hunt.</i>
	Vēnatūm ( <i>sup.</i> ), <i>to hunt.</i>
	Vītārē, āv, āt, <i>to avoid, shun.</i>

### 381. Exercises.

(a) 1. Cupīdi sunt docendi. 2. Num puēri ludendo discunt? 3. Puer cupīdus est discendi. 4. Misērunt legātos pacem petītum. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 6. Jucundum est audītu. 7. Diffīcile est factu. 8. Mittantur legāti pacem petītum. 9. Quantum tempōris ludendo amisērunt! 10. Multum temporis ludendo amittēmus.

(b) 1. He learns by teaching. 2. Have we not learned by teaching? 3. Is there not much pleasure in learning? 4. How much pleasure (there) is in learning! 5. There is much pleasure in teaching. 6. Do not boys learn while playing? 7. The boy has been sent *a hunting*. 8. Caesar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. 9. Ambassadors have been sent *to ask* peace. 10. It is difficult *to say*. 11. It is wonderful *to tell*. 12. Has not Caesar sent the fourth legion *to bring water*?

## LESSON LXIV.

*Participle in dus.*

382. INSTEAD of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with a noun; e. g.,

(*Eng.*) The intention of *writing* a letter.

(*Lat.*) Consiliūm *scribendi* epistolām.

(or) Consiliūm *scribendae* epistolae.\*

383. Thus, then, *epistolā scribendā* may be declined throughout.

*Sing.*

N. Epistōla scribenda, *a letter to be written.*

G. epistolae scribendae, *of writing a letter.*

D. epistolae scribendae, *to or for writing a letter.*

Acc. (ad) epistolam scribandam, *to write a letter (or for writing a letter).*

Abl. epistolā scribendā, *by writing a letter*

*Plur.*

N. epistolae scribendae, *letters to be written.*

G. epistolārum scribendarum, *of writing letters.*

D. epistolis scribendis, *to or for writing letters.*

Acc. (ad) epistolas scribendas, *to write letters (or for writing letters).*

Abl. epistolis scribendis, *by writing letters.*

## 384. VOCABULARY.

Adjumentum, i, *aid, help.*

Arripere (iō), arripui, arrepti, to  
snatch, seize.

Athēnae, arūm, *Athens, city of  
Greece.*

Augere, aux, auct, to increase.

---

\* The real meaning of 'consilium scribendae epistolae' is 'the design of (= about) a letter to be written'

Cūpīdīti, ōrīs (*comp.*), *fonder.*Elēgantiā, ac, *elegance.*Emēre, ēm, empt, *to buy, purchase.*Exereēre, exereu, exereit, *to practise, exercise.*Gērēre, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage.*Hābēre, ū, it, *to have, enjoy.*Lēgērē, lēg, lect, *to read.*Obtīnērē, obtīnu, obtent, *to obtain, acquire.*Occāsiō, ōnīs, *opportunity.*Pērītūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in.*Rēgērē, rex, rect, *to govern rule.*Stūdīōsūs, ā, ūm, *very fond.*385. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtūtis* arripiebat. 2. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum* quam *legendōrum*. 3. Caesar belli gerendi perītus fuit. 4. Omnis occasio *exercendae virtūtis* arripīatur. 5. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtūtis* a Christiāno arripī. 6. Omnis dicendi *elegantia* augētur *legendis oratorībus* et *poētis*. 7. Homo magna habet *adjumenta* ad *obtinendam sapientiam*.

(b) 1. The boy is very fond of *writing letters*. 2. He was very fond of *hearing the orator*. 3. Seize every opportunity of *practising virtue*. 4. The Romans were fond of *waging war*. 5. Ambassadors are sent *to beg for peace*. 6. Ambassadors will be sent to *sue for peace*. 7. The law will be broken. 8. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 9. It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked at Rome and at Athens. 10. Let your word be kept. 11. Let the state be ruled by the wise.

## LESSON LXV.

*First Conjugation.*

## 386. VOCABULARY.\*

Adeō, so, in such a manner.

Cantārē, āv, āt, to sing.

Certāmēn, īnis, contest.

Crabrō, ōnīs, wasp.

Intēr, between, during.

Intēr ambulandūm, while walking.

Irritārē, āv, āt, to trouble, irritate.

Ornārē, āv, āt, to adorn.

Robustūs, ā, ūm, robust, strong.

Spōliārē, āv, āt, to rob of, despoil.

## 387. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sapientis est supervacuus sumptus vitāre. 2. Crabrōnem ne irrītes (232). 3. Crabrōnem ne irritāte (347). 4. Irritasne crabrōnes? 5. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? 6. Inter ambulandum cantābant. 7. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut nemo eum in certamīne superavērit. 8. Prata et agri pulcherrimis floribus ornantur. 9. Oculisne me, iudices, privabitis? 10. Violātis patriae legibus (366), mea me laude spoliātis. 11. Num mea laude spoliābor?

(b) 1. It is the duty of a Christian<sup>7</sup> to avoid unnecessary expense. 2. Did they not themselves violate those laws? 3. Let not the laws be violated by Christians. 4. We hope we shall never be accused. 5. Have you ever been accused? 6. Let your laws be kept. 7. Is it not certain that the laws are broken by the wicked? 8. Did they not condemn him to death? 9. Balbus is so strong that he has never been surpassed in a contest. 10. Have I not been deprived of my eyes?

---

\* Preparatory to this exercise, the pupil is expected to review thoroughly the Paradigm of the First Conjugation. See 588.

## LESSON LXVI.

*Second Conjugation.*

388. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many verbs which signify *to ask, demand, or teach*, together with *cēlārē* (*to conceal*), take two objects, one of a person and another of a thing; e. g.,

Caesār frūmentū Aeduōs flāgītābāt.  
Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

## 389. VOCABULARY.\*

Divitiācūs, ī, *Divitiacus, man's name.*

Impērārē, āv, āt, *to command, give commands.*

Jūbērē, juss, juss, *to direct, order.*

Mordērē, mōmord, mors, *to bite*

Pārērē, ū, īt, *to obey.*

Prōpensūs, ā, ūm, *inclined to.*

Sānārē, āv, āt, *to cure, reform.*

Tācērē, ū, īt, *to be silent, to pass over in silence.*

## 390. Exercises.

(a) 1. Hostes non timēmus. 2. Nonne respondēbis? 3. Docendo docēmur. 4. Ego multa taeui: multa sanāvi. 5. Ad docendum propensi sunt. 6. Pareat animus: non impēret. 7. Caesar Divitiācum ad se vocāri jubet. 8. Te haec docēbo. 9. Puēros haec docēbant. 10. Puēri haec docti sunt. 11. Canis puērum momordit. 12. Nonne oves totondistis?

(b) 1. Do you not fear the enemy? 2. Do not fear the enemy. 3. Who taught the boy this? 4. Did you teach those boys this? 5. Who sheared this sheep? 6. Let no one shear my sheep. 7. Did the dog bite you? 8. I have been bitten by your dog. 9. We

\* The pupil will, of course, review Paradigm. See 589.

have ourselves been taught by teaching. 10. Did you not laugh at your father?

## LESSON LXVII.

### *Third Conjugation.*

391. RULE OF SYNTAX.—After verbs of motion :

- 1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is put in the accusative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmām vēnīrē, *to come to Rome.*

- 2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is put in the ablative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmā vēnīrē, *to come from Rome.*

REM.—Before other names of places the preposition is generally expressed.

(Review Paradigm 590.)

### 392. VOCABULARY.

Agērē, ēg, act, <i>to do, act.</i>	Grātiās āgērē, <i>to give thanks, to thank.</i>
Committērē, mīs, miss, <i>to engage.</i>	Injūriā, ac, <i>injury, wrong done.</i>
Cūrārē, āv, āt, <i>to attend to, cause, &amp;c.</i>	Pons, tīs, m., <i>bridge.</i>
Dārē, dēd, dāt, <i>to give.</i>	Responsūm, ī, <i>answer, reply.</i>
Eqnēs, itīs, <i>horseman.</i>	Tēgērē, tex, tect, <i>to cover, conceal.</i>
Grātiā, ae, <i>favor ; pl., thanks.</i>	Unquām, ever.

### 393. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium Athēnas mittat. 2. Servum Athēnas miserat. 3. Mihi gratias egistis. 4. Sicut vixi, ut

nemo unquam me ullius injuriæ accusaverit. 5. Pontem in flumine faciendum curavit. 6. Equites proelium committunt. 7. Hoc responso dato, equites proelium committunt. 8. Certum est, Caesarem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. 9. Legatos ad eum miserunt. 10. Omnis dicendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus (382).

(b) 1. He has sent an ambassador to Rome. 2. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for (377) peace. 3. Ambassadors have been sent to sue for peace. 4. He has never been sent to Athens. 5. He is said to have been very desirous of (379) learning. 6. They say that you are desirous of engaging battle. 7. They are said to be skilful in waging war. 8. Having made this reply they engage battle. 9. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

## LESSON LXVIII.

### *Fourth Conjugation.*

(Review Paradigm 591.)

### 394. VOCABULARY.

Antea, <i>before.</i>	Praeceptum, i, <i>precept, instruction.</i>
Captivus, a, um, <i>captive.</i>	Praesens, tis, <i>present.</i>
Clauderē, claus, claus, <i>to shut.</i>	Succurrerē, curr, curs, <i>to aid,</i>
Fundus, i, <i>estate, farm.</i>	<i>succor.</i>
Hannibal, alis, <i>Hannibal.</i>	Tarentum, i, <i>Tarentum, a town</i>
Intra ( <i>prep. with accus.</i> ), <i>within.</i>	<i>in Italy.</i>
Italia, ae, <i>Italy.</i>	Vetustus, a, um, <i>old, ancient.</i>

### 395. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec ex captivis audiverat. 2. Venit sacerdos ut aram sanguine aspergat. 3. Miles Tarentum

vēnit. 4. Hunc audiēbant antea, nunc praesentem vident. 5. Fundo in tres partes diviso, Romam vēnit. 6. Veni ut mihi succurras. 7. Hannibal, Alpibus superatis, in Italiam venit. 8. Lex erat Romanorum vetustissima, ne quis intra urbem sepeliretur.

(b) 1. Have not the boys been sent to bring water? 2. They have come to shut the gates of the city. 3. Will you come to shut the gates? 4. Let them come to shut the gates. 5. Let all come to hear the instructions of the wise. 6. Let the instructions of the wise be always heard. 7. By hearing the instructions of the wise we shall learn wisdom. 8. He has buried his father. 9. Has he buried him within the city? 10. Do not bury him within the city.

## LESSON LXIX.

### *Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object.*

396. THE use of the *indirect object* has been already illustrated; but as some verbs in Latin are followed by the dative (the case of the indirect object) where we use no preposition, and should therefore be led by the English to put the accusative, it may be well to notice a few instances of this. The verbs of this class are principally such as signify:

*To command or obey, please or displease, favor or injure, serve or resist, together with to indulge, spare, pardon, envy, believe, persuade.\**

\* See 643



REM. 1.—Vácārě (*to have leisure*) and nūbērě (*to marry, used of females*), also take the dative.

REM. 2.—It will be readily perceived, in most cases, that the dative after the above verbs is really the *indirect* and not the *direct* object; thus, *impērārě* (*to command*) means to give a command *to*; *plácērě* (*to please*) to give pleasure *to*; and so of most, if not all, of the others.

### 397. VOCABULARY.

Ars, artīs, *art.*

Beātě, *happily.*

Crēdērě, crēdīd, crēdīt, *to believe, put confidence in.*

Cūpīditās, atīs, *desire, passion.*

Fāvērě, fav, faut, *to favor.*

Ignoscērě, nōv, nōt, *to pardon.*

Indulgērě, indulg, indult, *to indulge.*

Invidērě, vid, vīs, *to envy.*

Nōcērě, nōcu, nōcīt, *to hurt.*

Parcērě, pēpere, parcīt, *to spare.*

Persuadērě, persuās, persuās, *to persuade.*

Rēsistērě, stīt, stīt, *to resist.*

Servīrě, iv (i), it, *to serve, be a slave to.*

Stūdērě, u, *to study, strive for.*

Vácārě, av, at, *to have leisure for.*

### 398. Exercises.

(a) 1. Irae multos annos serviēras. 2. Regendis anīmi cupiditatībus studeāmus. 3. Caesar legendo libro vacābit. 4. Christiāni est patriae suae legībus parēre. 5. Ignosce mihi. 6. Nemo tibi credet. 7. Imprōbus patriae legībus non parēbit. 8. Num legībus parēbunt imprōbi, violāta fide? 9. Discant Christiāni anīmis suis imperāre. 10. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

(b) 1. I would have favored Caius. 2. You would have resisted anger. 3. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. 4. We would have indulged the desire. 5. I was hurting myself. 6. You were hurting me. 7. You had hurt Caius. 8. You had been-the-slave-of passion. 9. Do not be-the slave-of passion. 10. You were sparing the enemies. 11. *It is the duty of* a Christian to envy nobody. 12. Do not envy the good. 13.

It is pleasant to succor the miserable. 14. Nobody will believe the wicked. 15. Death spares nobody. 16. They had spared the gate of the city. 17. He spares himself in the winter. 18. He does not spare even himself. 19. You will never have persuaded me. 20. **Let** the Christian learn to command himself.

## LESSON LXX.

### *Deponent Verbs.*

399. A DEPONENT verb is one which has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

400. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Loquens, *speaking*; 2) locūtus, *having spoken*;
- 3) locutūrus, *about to speak*; 4) loquendus, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The deponent verbs, *ūtōr*, *fruōr*, *fungōr*, *potiōr*, *vescōr*, *dignōr*, and their compounds, usually take the *ablative*; e. g.,

Vōluptātē fruītūr, *he enjoys pleasure*.

REM.—The ablative after the above is not strictly the object, but the *ablative of means*; thus, *to enjoy pleasure*, is *to be delighted with pleasure*.

402. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, *forgetting*, and *pitying*, usually take the *genitive* of the object remembered, forgotten, &c.; e. g.,

Rēmīniscōr bēnēficiī tuī, *I remember your kindness*

REM.—Most of these verbs, except those signifying *to pity*, sometimes take the accusative instead of the genitive.

## 403. VOCABULARY.

Aliquandō, <i>some time or other.</i>	Odiūm, ī, <i>hatred.</i>
Bēnēficiūm, ī, <i>benefit.</i>	Officiūm, ī, <i>duty.</i>
Flāgitīūm, ī, <i>crime.</i>	Post ( <i>prep. with accus.</i> ), <i>after.</i>
Fungī, funct, <i>to discharge.</i>	Pōtīrī, pōtit, <i>to get possession.</i>
Lōquī, lōcūt, <i>to speak.</i>	Rēcōdārī, āt, <i>to remember, to recall to mind.</i>
Mālē, <i>badly.</i>	Sempiternūs, ā, ūm, <i>eternal.</i>
Misērērī, mīsērīt, or mīsert, <i>to pity.</i>	Utī, ūs, <i>to use.</i>
Obliviscī, oblīt, <i>to forget.</i>	

## 404. Exercises.

(a) 1. Christianōrum est miserēri paup̄rum. 2. Homo imprōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabitur. 3. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. 4. Vincāmus odium, pacēque potiāmur. 5. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. 6. Beātus est, qui omnībus vitae officiis fungitur. 7. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxerant.

(b) 1. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. 2. Let us use our horses. 3. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. 4. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? 5. Is the life that we now enjoy eternal? 6. Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life. 7. Have you not spared the conquered? 8. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered. 9. Let us spare the conquered. 10. We will resist anger. 11. Will you not resist anger? 12. Let Caius, who sold

---

\* Participles as well as adjectives (117) are sometimes used substantively.

his country for gold, be condemned to death. 13. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treason.

## LESSON LXXI.

### *Irregular Verbs.*

405. THE irregular verbs are those which deviate from the ordinary rules, not only in the formation of their roots, but also in the inflection of some of their tenses.

406. The irregular verb *possē* (to be able), compounded of *pōt* (*pōtīs*, able) and *essē* (to be), is conjugated like the simple *essē*, except,

- 1) *T* before *s* becomes *s*; as, *possūm* (*potsūm*).
- 2) The *f* in the second root is dropped; as, *pōtu* (*potfu*).
- 3) In the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive* there is a contraction; as, *possē* (for *pōtessē*), *possēm* (for *pōtessēm*).

407. Paradigm.

*Possē, to be able; 2d root, pōtu.*

#### INDICATIVE.

*Pres.* *Possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūmīs, pōtestīs, possunt.*

*Imp.* *pōtērām; Fut. pōtērō; Perf. pōtu-ī; Pluperf. pōtu-ērām; Fut. Perf. pōtu-ērō.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres.* *possīm; Imp. possēm; Perf. pōtu-ērīm; Pluperf. pōtu-issēm.*

#### INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* *possē; Perf. pōtu-issē.*

#### PARTICIPLE.

*Pōtens (used as an adjective, powerful).*

408. The various forms of *possě* are often best translated by the auxiliaries, *can*, *could*, &c.; e. g.,

Egõ fãcěřě possũm, *I can do* (am able to do).

REM.—When a past tense of *possě* is thus translated by *could*, any present infinitive depending upon it must be translated by the English perfect; e. g.,

Egõ fãcěřě põtũi, *I could have done*.

409. The irregular verb *vellě*, *to will*, or *be willing*, and its compounds, *nollě*, *to be unwilling* (from *nõn* and *vellě*), and *mallě*, *to wish rather*, *to prefer* (from *mãg* [*mãgĩs*, more] and *vellě*), are conjugated as in the following :

#### 410. Paradigms.

Vellě. 2d root, <i>võlu</i> .	Nollě. 2d root, <i>nõlu</i> .	Mallě. 2d root, <i>mãlu</i> .
INDICATIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Võľõ,	Nõľõ,	Malõ,
Vĩs,	Nonvĩs,	Mãvĩs,
Vult;	Nonvult;	Mãvult;
Võľũmũs,	Nõľũmũs,	Mãľũmũs,
Vultĩs,	Nonvultĩs,	Mãvultĩs,
Võľunt.	Nõľunt.	Mãľunt.
IMPERFECT.		
Võľ-ěbãm, bãs, &c.	Nõľ-ěbãm, bãs, &c.	Mãľ-ěbãm, bãs, &c.
FUTURE.		
Võľ-ãm.	Nõľ-ãm.	Mãľ-ãm.
PERFECT.		
Võľu-ĩ.	Nõľu-ĩ.	Mãľu-ĩ.
PLUPERFECT.		
Võľu-ěřãm.	Nõľu-ěřãm.	Mãľu-ěřãm.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
Võľu-ěřõ.	Nõľu-ěřõ.	Mãľu-ěřõ.

## PARADIGMS—continued.

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Věl-īm, īs, &c.	Nōl-īm, īs, &c.	Māl-īm, īs, &c.
IMPERFECT.		
Vell-ēm, ēs, &c.	Noll-ēm.	Mall-ēm.
PERFECT.		
Vōlu-čřīm.	Nōlu-čřīm.	Mālu-čřīm.
PLUPERFECT.		
Vōlu-issēm.	Nōlu-issēm.	Mālu-issēm.
IMPERATIVE.		
	Nōl-ī or itō, Nōl-itě, itōtě.	
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i> Vellě.	Nollě.	Mallě.
<i>Perf.</i> Vōlu-issě.	Nōlu-issě.	Mālu-issě.
PARTICIPLES.		
Vōlens.	Nōlens.	

## 411. VOCABULARY.

Anīmāl, ālīs, *animal*.

Corrīgērě, correx, *correct, to correct, reform*.

Cōr, cordīs, *n., heart*.

Mallě, mālu, *to prefer wish rather*.

Nollě, nōlu, *to be unwilling*.

Nullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *no, not any*.

Occīdērě, occīd, occīs, *to kill*.

Possě, pōtu, *to be able*.

Praetērītūs, ā, ūm, *past; prao terītā (neut. pl.), the past*.

Prōbūs, ā, ūm, *honest, upright*.

Scīpiō, ōnīs, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman*.

Sině, *without*.

Vellě, vōlu, *to wish*.

## 412. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Hacc facěre possūmus. 2. Hacc facěre potu-  
isti. 3. Multum discěre vult. 4. Nolui hoc facěre.

5. Praeterīta mutāre non possūmus. 6. Nullum anīmal quod sanguīnem habet, sine eorde esse potest. 7. Discat ut possit docēre. 8. Num puēri regendae eivi tātis (382) perīti esse possunt? 9. Si vis beātus esse, anīmo impēra. 10. Probi semper vitam corrigēre volunt. 11. Scipio dicēbat, malle se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occidēre.

(b) 1. Do you wish to change the past? 2. We do not wish to change the past. 3. You (*pl.*) cannot change the past. 4. We cannot shun death. 5. Let us learn, that we may be able to teach others. 6. They wish to be happy. 7. We all wish to be happy. 8. Could you not have seen the king? 9. We might have learned much. 10. We were unwilling to accuse you. 11. Were you not unwilling to accuse the king?

## LESSON LXXII.

### *Irregular Verbs, continued.*

413. THE irregular verb, *ferrĕ*, *to bear*, drops *e* between two *r*'s, as *ferrĕ* for *ferĕrĕ*, and *i* in the endings of the second and third sing. aet., and of the third sing. pass. It borrows its second and third roots from other verbs.

### 414. Paradigm.

*Ferrĕ*, *to bear*; 2d root, *tŭl*; 3d, *lūt*.

#### INDICATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

##### *Active.*

Fĕr-ŏ, fer-s, fer-t, fĕr-īmŭs,  
fer-līs, fĕr-unt.

##### *Passive.*

Fĕr-ŏr, fer-rīs, fer-tŭr, fĕr-īmŭr,  
fĕr-īmīnī, fĕr-untŭr.

## PARADIGM—continued.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr-ēbām, bās, &c.		Fēr-ēbār, bārīs, &c.

## FUTURE.

Fēr-ām, ēs, &c.		Fēr-ār, ērīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

## PERFECT

Tūl-ī, istī, &c.		Lāt-ūs sūm, ēs, &c.
------------------	--	---------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-ērām, as, &c.		Lāt-ūs ērām, &c.
-------------------	--	------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Tūl-ērō, &c.		Lāt-ūs ērō, &c.
--------------	--	-----------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Fēr-ām, as, &c.		Fēr-ār, arīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

## IMPERFECT

Fer-rēm, rēs, &c.		Fer-rēr, rērīs, &c.
-------------------	--	---------------------

## PERFECT.

Tūl-ērīm, &c.		Lāt-ūs sīm, &c.
---------------	--	-----------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-issēm.		Lāt-ūs essēm, &c.
------------	--	-------------------

## IMPERATIVE.

Fēr, <i>or</i> fertō,		Fer-rē, <i>or</i> fer-tōr,
Fer-tō;		Fer-tōr;
Fer-tē, <i>or</i> fer-totē.		Fēr-īmīnī,
Fēr-untō.		Fēr-untōr.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Fer-rē,		Fer-rī,
<i>Perf.</i> Tūl-isse,		Lāt-ūs essē,
<i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ūrūs essē.		Lāt-ūm irī.



PARADIGM—*continued.*

PARTICIPLES.			
<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Fěr-ens,	<i>Perf.</i>	Lāt-ūs (ǎ, ũm).
<i>Fut.</i>	Lāt-ārūs (ǎ, ũm).	<i>Fut.</i>	Fěr-endūs (ǎ, ũm).
GERUND.			
Fěr-endī, dō, dŭm, dō.			
SUPINE.			
Lāt-ŭm.		Lat-ŭ.	

REM.—The compounds of *ferrě* are conjugated like the simple verb.

415. The irregular verb, *fiěrī*, *to become, be made*, is used as the passive of *făcěrě*, and, in the tenses for completed action, has the regular forms of the passive of that verb.

## 416. Paradigm.

<i>Fiěrī, to become, be made.</i>	
PRESENT.	
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Fiő, fis, fit, &c.	Fi-ām, fi-ās, fi-ăt, &c.
IMPERFECT.	
Fi-ebām, ebās, &c.	Fi-ěrēm, ěrēs, &c.
FUTURE.	
Fi-ām, ēs, &c.	
PERFECT.	
Fact-ūs sŭm, &c.	Fact-ūs sĭm, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	
Fact-ūs ěrām, &c.	Fact-ūs essēm, &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
Fact-ūs ěrő, &c.	
IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i> Fi, or fi-tő,	<i>Plur.</i> Fitě, or fi-tătě,
Fi-tő.	Fi-untő.

## PARADIGM—continued.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* Fiērī; *Perf.* Fact-ūs essē; *Fut.* Fact-ūm irī.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perf.* Fact-ūs (ā, ūm); *Fut.* Faciendūs (ā, ūm).

## 417. VOCABULARY.

Afferre, attul, allat, to bring, to bring to.

Auctōr, ōrīs, author.

Cālāmītās, atīs, misfortune, calamity.

Crēbēr, brā, brūm, frequent, numerous.

Ferre, tūl, lat, to carry, bear, endure.

Fiērī, fact, to become, be made.

Inferre, intul, illat, to bring against, to wage.

Itērūm, again.

Rēferre, rētul, rēlat, to bring back, to relate.

Rāmōr, ōrīs, report, rumor.

Tertiūs, ā, ūm, third.

Utilitās, atīs, profit, advantage.

## 418. Exercises.

(a) 1. Quid fers manu, mi fili? 2. Is labor utilis est qui auctōri laudem fert, aliis utilitātem. 3. Tertio die auxilium tulērunt. 4. Crebri ad eum rumōres afferebantur. 5. Dixit Gallos sibi bellum intulisse. 6. His responsis ad Caesārem relātis, itērūm ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 7. Brutus consul factus est.

(b) 1. He has been made king. 2. Do you wish to become king? (No.) 3. Many reports will be brought to you. 4. What reports have been brought to you? 5. Your father has become poor. 6. Shall you not bring us aid? 7. Do you not wish to carry aid to your brother? 8. Caesar waged many wars. 9. Caesar is said to have waged many wars. 10. He has endured many misfortunes. 11. Do you wish to wage war against your father? (No.) 12. We were unwilling to wage war against our country.

## LESSON LXXIII.

*Irregular Verbs, continued.*

419. THE irregular verb, *īrĕ*, *to go*, is regular in the parts from the first root.

## PARADIGM.

*Irĕ*, *to go*; 2d root, *īv*; 3d, *īt*.

## PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Eō, īs, īt; imūs, itīs, eunt.	Eām, eās, &c.

## IMPERFECT.

Ibām, ibās, &c.	Irēm, irēs, &c.
-----------------	-----------------

## FUTURE.

Ibō, ibīs, &c.	
----------------	--

## PERFECT.

Iv-ī, iv-istī, &c.	Iv-ērīm, ēris, &c.
--------------------	--------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Iv-ērām, ērās, &c.	Iv-issēm, issēs, &c.
--------------------	----------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ērō, ēris, &c.	
-------------------	--

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> I, or itō, Itō.	<i>Plur.</i> Itē, or itōtē, Euntō.
---------------------------------	---------------------------------------

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* Irĕ; *Perf.* Iv-issĕ; *Fut.* Itūrūs, essĕ.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* Iens (*gen.* euntīs); *Fut.* Itūrūs, ā, ūm.

## GERUND.

Eundī, dō, dām, dō.

## SUPINE.

Itām, itā.

REM.—The compounds of *irē* are conjugated like the simple verb, but generally contract the perfect *ivī* into *iī*, and most of them want the supine.

420. *Edērē*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essē*. These are as follows:

<i>Regular.</i>		<i>Irregular</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Edō, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Es, est, estis.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Edē, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Es, estō, estē, estōtē.</i>
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	<i>Edērēm, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Essēm, essēs, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Edērē.</i>	<i>Essē.</i>

421. RULE OF SYNTAX —The words *dōmūs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *hūmī*, *bellī*, and *mīlītiæ*, are construed like names of towns (see 227); e. g.,

*Dōmūm rēdiit, he returned home.*

#### 422. VOCABULARY.

<i>Abirē, i, it, to go away, depart.</i>	<i>Irē, iv, it, to go.</i>
<i>Dōmī (gen. of dōmūs), at home.</i>	<i>Mīlītiæ (gen. of mīlītia), on service, in the field.</i>
<i>Edērē (essē), ēd, ēs, to eat.</i>	<i>Nēc—nēc, neither—nor.</i>
<i>Et—ēt, both—and.</i>	<i>Rēdirē, i, it, to return.</i>
<i>Evolārē, ēv, āt, to fly away, to flee.</i>	<i>Rūs, rūris, field, country.</i>

#### 423. Exercises.

(a) 1. Fracto puēri brachio, abit. 2. Fundo in tres partes divīso, redit Athenas. 3. Puēri venātum<sup>18</sup> ivērunt. 4. Est (*edit*) ut vivat. 5. Nonne estis ut vivātis? 6. Abeat Romam. 7. Scriptis epistōlis, abiērunt. 8. Balbus, *quum* manus in aquam *immersisset*, abiit. 9. Caius rus ex urbe evolavērit. 10. Caius nondum rure rediit. 11. Et Caesar et Balbus Romam rediērunt. 12. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram florībus cingēret.

(b) 1. Caesar has not yet returned to Rome. 2. The

boys have gone a hunting.<sup>11</sup> 3. Do you wish to go a hunting? 4. They say he has gone a hunting. 5. He says that he wishes to go a hunting. 6. Do you not eat to live? 7. He says that he eats to live. 8. Balbus, having crowned the boy's head with a garland, went away. 9. Caesar, having conquered his enemies, will return to Rome. 10. They all wish to return to Rome. 11. Do you wish to return home? 12. Balbus is at his own house. 13. He was with me both at home and on service. 14. You have lived many years in the country.

---

## LESSON LXXIV.

### *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

424. THERE are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *Scriptūrūs sūm, I am about to write.*

425. The second periphrastic conjugation expresses *duty or necessity*; e. g., *Virtūs cōlendā est, virtue must be cultivated.*

426. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dūs*; with other words it is generally governed in the ablative by *ā* or *āb*.

427. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives are followed by the *dative* of the object to which the quality

is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi grātissimā ērāt, peace was very acceptable to me.*

#### 428. VOCABULARY.

Bibēre, bib, bibīt, *to drink.*

Dēlēre, ēv, ēt, *to destroy.*

Ignārūs, ā, ūm, *ignorant.*

Inūtilis, ē, *useless, unfit for.*

Mārīmūs, ā, ūm, *marine, of the sea.*

Prōpiōr, ūs (*comp.*), *nearer.*

Pūtārē, āv, āt, *to think, regard.*

Simplex, icīs, *simple.*

Subvēnirē, vēn, vent, *to go to the assistance of, to aid.*

#### 429. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tondendae sunt oves, non deglubendae. 2. Exereenda est virtus. 3. Nonnē claudendae sunt urbis portae? 4. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. 5. Puer Romam mittendus est. 6. Pauperībus qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. 7. Quid factūri estis? 8. Simplex cibus puēris utilissimus est. 9. Luna terrae propior est quam sol. 10. Aqua marīna inutilis est bibendo. 11. Inutīles sunt libri ignāro legendi.

(b) 1. They must be sent to Athens. 2. They must be sent into the country. 3. We must be taught by the wise. 4. The city must be destroyed. 5. The gates must be shut. 6. Must not virtue be learned? 7. Must not virtue be practised? 8. Every opportunity of practising virtue<sup>14</sup> must be seized. 9. The poor must not be defrauded of even a single grain. 10. Has he not defrauded the poor? 11. Let not the poor be defrauded of a single grain. 12. Is not the moon nearer the earth than the sun?

## LESSON LXXV.

*Impersonal Verbs.*

430. IMPERSONAL verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

Oportēt, *it behooves.*

Taedēt mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

431. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, *it is known.*

Juvāt, *it delights.*

432. The impersonal verb *licēt*, *it is lawful*, or *is allowed*, denotes *permission*, and may be translated by *may* and *might*; e. g.,

Licēt, *may* (it is allowed).

Licuīt, *might* (it was allowed).

Mihī irē licēt,	<i>I may go.</i>
Tībī irē licēt,	<i>You may go.</i>
Ūlī irē licēt,	<i>He may go.</i>
Nōbīs irē licēt,	<i>We may go.</i>
Vōbīs irē licēt,	<i>You may go.</i>
Ūlīs irē licēt,	<i>They may go.</i>
Mihī irē licuīt,	<i>I might have gone.</i>
Tībī irē licuīt,	<i>You might have gone.</i>

REM 1.—The dative in these examples is the indirect object after *licēt*

REM 2.—The present infinitive must be translated by the English perfect after *licuīt*, *might*, as in the above examples. (See also 408, Rem.)

(*Eng.*) I may go. (*Lat. Id.*) It is allowe me to go.

(*Eng.*) I might have gone. (*Lat. Id.*) It was allowed me (*then*) to go.

433. The impersonal verb *oportet*, *it behooves*, denotes *duty* or *propriety*, and may be translated by *ought*; e. g.,

Mē irē oportet, *I ought to go.*

Tē irē oportet, &c. *You ought to go.*

Mē irē oportuit, *I ought to have gone.*

Tē irē oportuit, *You ought to have gone.*

REM. 1.—Observe that here, too, the present infinitive is to be translated by the perfect after a past tense.

REM. 2.—The infinitive after *oportet* takes a subject accusative.

434.

*English.*

*Latin Idiom.*

(a) I repent of my folly,	It repents me of my folly.
I am vexed at my folly,	It vexes me of my folly.
I am ashamed of my folly,	It shames me of my folly.
I pity the poor,	It pities me of the poor.
I am weary of life,	It irks me of life.

(b) Mē meae stultitiae poenitēt,	I repent of my folly.
Mē meae stultitiae pigēt,	I am vexed at my folly.
Mē meae stultitiae pudēt,	I am ashamed of my folly.
Misērēt mē paupērū,	I pity the poor.
Taedēt mē vitae,	I am weary of life.

435. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *impersonal* verbs of feeling, *misērēt*, *poenitēt*, *pudēt*, *taedēt*, and *pigēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling. (See examples above.)

#### 436. VOCABULARY.

Adesse, ādū, *to be present.*

Amicitia, ae. *friendship.*

Constāt, *it is known, is an admitted fact.*

Diligens, entis, *diligent.*

Habitarē, āv, āt, *to inhabit, dwell.*

Immortalis, ē, *immortal.*

Licēt, *it is lawful, is permitted.*



Misĕrĕt, <i>one pities; tui mē misĕ-</i> <i>rĕt, I pity you.</i>	Rĕcĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), <i>cĕp, cept, to : e-</i> <i>ceive.</i>
Oportĕt, <i>it behooves, one ought.</i>	Saepĕ, <i>often.</i>
Pigĕt, <i>one is grieved at; mē pigĕt,</i> <i>I am grieved.</i>	Sŏnŭs, <i>i, sound, noise.</i>
Poenĭtĕt, <i>it repents, one repents.</i>	Tardŭs, <i>ă, ŭm, slow.</i>
Praestăt, <i>it is better.</i>	Vĕlox, <i>ŏcĭs, swift.</i>

## 437. Exercises.

(a) 1. Constat sonum luce tardiŏrem esse. 2. Saepe facĕre praestat quam loqui. 3. Nonne licet Romae habitāre? 4. Nonne licuit Athĕnis habitāre? 5. Nunquam licet peccāre. 6. Num licet Christiānis gloriæ servĭre? 7. Puĕros oportet diligentes esse. 8. Amicitiam immortālem esse oportet. 9. Tui me misĕret; mei piget. 10. Sapientia semper eo contenta est quod adest. 11. Ne multa loquĕre. 12. Miserĕre nostri. 13. Natŭra omnes propensi sumus ad discendum.

(b) 1. It is well known that light is swifter than sound. 2. Is it not well known that the moon is nearer the earth than the sun? 3. Is it not well known that sound is slower than light? 4. He repents of his folly. 5. I repented of my folly. 6. Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible*? 7. Ought not Balbus to have kept<sup>m</sup> his word? 8. Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? 9. I have received many letters from you. 10. The bird has flown away from my hands.

## LESSON LXXVI.

*Impersonal Periphrastic.*

438. THE second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e. g.,

Mihī scribendū est,	<i>I must or should write.</i>
Tibī scribendū est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illī scribendū est,	<i>he must or should write.</i>
Nōbīs scribendū est,	<i>we must or should write.</i>
Vōbīs scribendū est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illīs scribendū est,	<i>they must or should write.</i>

439. Here too the agent is put in the dative (see 426) when expressed. It is omitted.

- 1) When it means every body or people in general, though it may be translated by *we* or *you*; e. g.,

Edendū est, *we or you (every body) must eat.*

- 2) When the persons meant are not likely to be mistaken.

440. In the impersonal periphrastic construction, if the verb is one which governs a dative (396), its *agent* (the person by whom) must not be expressed; e. g.,

Crēdendū est Caiō.

We must believe Caius (*not*, Caius must believe).

REM.—If, in any instance, it is necessary to express the agent, it must either be done by means of the ablative with *a* or *ab*, or the form of the expression must be changed. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* was the *agent*.

#### 441. VOCABULARY.

Etiām, *even*.

Lāborārē, *av, at, to labor, toil.*

Mētuērē, *u, to fear.*

Sēnex, sērīs, *an old man; pl. the aged.*

#### 442. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mihi discendum est. 2. Etiam senibus discendum est. 3. Improbis metuendum est. 4. Tibi evolandum est ex urbe. 5. Manendum est Romae. 6. Totam hiēmē manendum est Carthagine. 7. Ambulandum est per urbem. 8. Laborandum est, ut discas. 9. Nonne laborandum est, ut discāmus? 10.

Num semper ludendum est? 11. Nonne resistendum est irae? 12. Num credendum est imprōbis? 13. Nonne resistendum est anīno? 14. Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. 15. Discendum est, ut possis docēre. 16. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivēre.

(b) 1. We must dwell *in the country*. 2. We must remain *at home*. 3. We must fly from the city (into) the country. 4. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. 5. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. 6. The girls must walk through the city. 7. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price. 8. We should spare the conquered. 9. We should resist anger. 10. Should we not resist anger? 11. We should obey the laws of our country. 12. We must not spare even Balbus. 13. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. 14. We must not believe even Caesar himself. 15. Having written his letter, he will go a-hunting.

---

## LESSON LXXVII

### *Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions.*

443. THOSE verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēdītūr,	<i>I am believed.</i>
Tībī crēdītūr,	<i>Thou art believed.</i>
Illī crēdītūr,	<i>He is believed.</i>
Nōbīs crēdītūr,	<i>We are believed.</i>
Vōbīs crēdītūr,	<i>You are believed.</i>
Illīs crēdītūr,	<i>They are believed.</i>

444. Prepositions, as we have already seen (200), show the relation of objects to each other; e. g., *in urbē hābitāt, he dwells in the city.*

445. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad, adversus, antē, apud, circā or circum, cīs or citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intēr, intrā, juxtā, ōb, pēnēs, pēr, pōnē, post, praetēr, propē, proptēr, sēcundū, suprā, trans, ultrā, versus (rare).*

446. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A (āb or abs), absquē, cōrām, cūm, dē, ē or ex, pālām, prae, prō, sinē, tēnūs.*

447. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The five prepositions, *clām, in, sūb, subtēr, and supēr*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Supēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

#### 448 VOCABULARY.

<i>Cīs, on this side.</i>	<i>Intrā, within.</i>
<i>Coelūm, ī, heaven, the heavens.</i>	<i>Paucūs, ā, ūm, few, little.</i>
<i>Cōrām, before, in the presence of.</i>	<i>Piētās, ātis, loyalty, faithfulness.</i>
<i>Ergā, towards.</i>	<i>Prae, before, in comparison with.</i>
<i>Firmūs, ā, ūm, firm, sure.</i>	<i>Suprā, above.</i>
<i>Infrā, below.</i>	<i>Terrā, ae, the earth.</i>

#### 449. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Vobis non credītur.* 2. *Bonis credītur.* 3. *Gloriae tuae invidētur.* 4. *Irae resistītur.* 5. *Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem.* 6. *Nulla est firma amicitia*

inter malos. 7. Piētas erga patriam conservanda est. 8. Galli eis Rhenum habitant. 9. Intra muros habitābat. 10. Coram popūlo loquētur. 11. Argentum prae auro contemnitur. 12. Caecus de coloribus judicāre non potest. 13. Supra nos coelum conspicimus; infra nos terram.

(b) 1. The good are always envied. 2. The wicked should never be believed. 3. The conquered must be spared. 4. We are envied. 5. They will be envied. 6. He was buried within the walls. 7. They wish to be buried on-this-side-of the Rhine. 8. Let us walk through the city. 9. They have returned from the city into the country. 10. Do you wish to go into the city? 11. My father will remain in the city the whole winter.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

### *Conjunctions.*

450. CONJUNCTIONS are merely *connectives*; as, pătēr et fīliūs, *the father and son*. Certain combinations of these require some attention.

451. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tūm* or *quūm* followed by *tūm*, are *both—and*.

452. Nōn sōlūm—sēd etiām, *not only—but also*.

453. Tām—quām,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so—as; as—as.} \\ \text{as well—as.} \\ \text{both—and.} \end{array} \right.$

454. Etiām, *even, also*; etiām atquē etiām, *again and again*; quōquē, *also, too* (follows the word it belongs to).

455. Aut, *or*; aut—aut, vĕl—vĕl, *either—or*.  
 Sive—sive, seu—seu, *either—or, whether—or*.  
 456. Nec—nec, nequē—nequē, *neither—nor*.  
 Vĕl, *or, sometimes even*; with superlatives, *very, extremely, possible*.  
 457. At, sed, autē, vĕrū, vĕrō, *but*.  
 Attamen, tamen, vĕruntamen, *yet, but, but yet*.  
 458. Atquē, *but, now* (as used in reasoning).  
 459. Nam, namquē, enim, *for*.  
 Ergō, *therefore, then*.  
 Igītūr, ideo, *therefore*.  
 Itaquē, *accordingly, and so, therefore*.  
 Quārē, *wherefore*.

## 460. VOCABULARY.

Amphibiū, i, <i>amphibious animal</i> .	Nasci, nat, <i>to be born</i> .
Audax, acis, <i>audacious, daring</i> .	Nimiū, ā, ūm, <i>excessive, too much</i> .
Deterre, u, it, <i>to deter</i> .	Pudor, oris, <i>shame, sense of shame</i> .
Inceptū, i, <i>purpose, undertaking</i> .	Somnū, i, <i>sleep</i> .
Impedire, iv, it, <i>to impede, hinder</i> .	

## 461. Exercises.

(a) 1. Et discet puer et docēbit. 2. Et Romae vixi et Carthagine. 3. Lupus quum ovem tum canem momordērat. 4. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. 5. Nec timīdus est, nec audax. 6. Nimiū somnus neque animo, neque corpōri prodest. 7. Non deterreor ab incepto, sed pudōre impediōr. 8. Nihil labōras; ideo nihil habes. 9. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est. 10. Amphibia et in aqua et in terra vivunt.

(b) 1. We shall go both to Rome and to Carthage. 2. Will you also accuse me? 3. Will they even con-

demn the king to death? [No.] 4. We must both learn and teach. 5. Do you not wish both to learn and to teach? 6. We might have condemned not only the father, but also the son. 7. He will either remain at Rome, or go to Athens. 8 Dogs as well as wolves sometimes bite sheep. 9. He sent his son to Rome, but was unwilling to go himself. 10. Caius has been accused of treason, but he will never be condemned. 11. He will not go a hunting, for he has buried his son.

## LESSON LXXIX.

*Subjunctive Mood with ūt, nē, and quō.*

462. UT with subj. { 1. *in order that, that, so that.*  
 2. *the infin.* (expressing purpose)  
 3. *as, with infinitive.*  
 4. *granting that, although.*  
 5. *that, after to fear that not.*

463. When *ūt* introduces a *purpose*, the subjunctive may be rendered by *may, might*; when it introduces a *consequence* (as after *so, such*), it may be rendered by the *indicative* or *infinitive*.

464. Ut with the indicative is *as, when, since, after, how*


465. Nē with subj. { 1. *lest, that not.*  
 2. *not with the infinitive.*  
 3. *not with the imperative.*  
 4. *after to fear that.*

466. Nē with the imperative or subjunctive used imperatively, is simply *not*; as, *nē scrībās*, or *nē scrībē*, do not write.

467. After verbs of fearing, *ut* and *nē* appear to change meanings; *ut*, *that—not*; *nē*, *that or lest*.

468. After verbs of fearing, the *subjunctive present* must generally be rendered by the *future*; as, *vēreōr ut faciām*, I fear that I shall *not* do, *vēreōr nē faciām*, I fear that I shall do.

469. *Quō* with the subjunctive is used to express purpose in sentences containing a comparative degree; as, *mēdicō aliquid dandū est, quō sit studiōsiōr*, something should be given to the physician, that he may be the more attentive.

 For the use of tenses in the subjunctive, see 265 and 266.

#### 470. VOCABULARY.

Cāvērē, cāv, caut, <i>to take care, be careful.</i>	Multitūdō, inīs, <i>multitude.</i>
Cōgnītūs, ā, ūm, <i>known.</i>	Nūmērārē, āv, āt, <i>to number.</i>
Efficērē (iō), fēc, fecit, <i>to effect, accomplish.</i>	Quō, <i>that, in order that.</i>
Fāmēs, īs, <i>hunger.</i>	Sātis (substantively), <i>enough.</i>
Incōgnītūs, ā, ūm, <i>unknown.</i>	Stellā, ae, <i>star.</i>
Mēdicūs, ī, <i>physician.</i>	Sustinērē, tīnu, tent, <i>to sustain, to endure.</i>
Mōnērē, mōnu, mōnīt, <i>to advise, warn.</i>	Vērēri, vērīt, <i>to fear.</i>

#### 471. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi alios laudant, ut ab aliis laudentur. 2. Stellārum tanta multitūdō est, ut numerārī non possint. 3. Mēdicis aliquid dandum est, quo sint studiōsiōres. 4. Cave ne incōgnīta pro cognītis habeas. 5. Ne tentes quod effici non possit. 6. Vercor, ne labōres tuos augeam. 7. Vercor ne brevi tempōre famēs, in urbe sit. 8. Timeo ut labōres tantos sustineas. 9. Avārus semper verētur, ut satis habeat. 10. Verebamīni ut pax firma esset.



(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow will not melt. 2. He praised us, in-order-that he might be praised by us. 3. The multitude of men was so great that it could not be numbered. 4. The multitude is so great that it cannot be numbered. 5. He has come to aid you. 6. They have gone to Rome to aid their father. 7. I sent him home, that he might not be bitten by the dog. 8. He warned his sons not to break the laws. 9. We fear we shall increase your labors. 10. They feared that he would not be acquitted.

## LESSON LXXX.

*Subjunctive with quōmīnūs, quīn, and other Conjunctions.*

472. AFTER verbs of *hindering*, quōmīnūs is more common with the subjunctive than nē. It may generally be translated by *from*, the verb being turned into the participial substantive.

REM.—Quōmīnūs (quō and mīnūs) means literally, *by which the less*, or, *so that th? less*; e. g.,

Caiō nihīl obstāt quōmīnūs sīt beātūs.

(*Nothing opposes Caius by which he should be the less happy.*)

Nothing prevents Caius from being happy.

- |                      |   |  |
|----------------------|---|--|
| 473. Quīn with subj. | { | <p>1. <i>but</i> (as used after negatives).</p> <p>2. <i>the relative with not.</i></p> <p>3. <i>as not</i> with infinitive.</p> <p>4. <i>that</i> after doubt, deny in negative sentences.</p> <p>5. <i>from</i> or <i>without</i> with the participial substantive, after prevent, escape, &amp;c.</p> |
|----------------------|---|--|

474. Quīn coincides very nearly with *but*; it is, however, generally better translated by some of the other forms given above; e. g.,

- 1) There is nobody, quīn pūtēt } *but thinks.*  
} *who does not think*
- 2) No one is so mad, quīn pūtēt, *as not to think.*
- 3) I do not deny, quīn turpē sīt, *that it is disgraceful.*
- 4) They never saw him, quīn rīdērēt, *without laughing.*

REM.—Quīn with the subjunctive is generally used after negative expressions and those which imply doubt.

475. The following conjunctions are used with the subjunctive; viz.,

Dīm, mōdō, dummōdō, *provided, if only*

Līcēt, *although.*

O sī (*O if*), ūtīnām, *would that.*

Quamvīs, *however much, however.*

Quāsī, tanquām, *as if.*

REM.—Not after *provided, &c.*, is expressed by *nē*.

476. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying *to abound*, or *be destitute of*, take the ablative; e. g., Nēmō āliōrūm ōpē cārērē pōtest, *no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.*

## 17. VOCABULARY.

Dūbītārē, āv, at, *to doubt.*

Interdūm, *sometimes.*

Obstārē, stīt, stāt, *to oppose, prevent.*

Prōvīdūs, ā, ūm, *prudent, cautious.*

Terrērē, terru, terrīt, *to terrify.*

## 478. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Nihil impēdit, quomīnus id facere possīmus.  
 2. Quid obstat, quomīnus Caius sit beātus? 3. Non

me terrēbis, quomīnus illud faciam. 4. Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortalis sit animus. 5. Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, quin interdum peccet. 6. O si sapiens virtutem colat! 7. Utinam hoc verum sit. 8. Sic agis, quāsi me ames.

(b) 1. Nothing prevents you from being happy. 2. Nothing prevents him from doing this. 3. Does any thing prevent you from doing this? 4. We have never doubted that the soul is immortal. 5. Do you doubt that the soul is immortal? 6. There is no one who does not think (473, 2) that you were engaged in the battle. 7. He never saw the shepherd without laughing at him (474, 4). 8. Would that all citizens would observe the laws.

---

## LESSON LXXXI.

### *Interrogative Sentences.*

479. ALL interrogatives take the indicative when the question is put *directly*; as, *nūm crēdīs*, do you believe?

480. *Nūm* and *nē* are merely interrogative particles, and are not construed in direct questions.

481. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when the question is put *indirectly* or *doubtfully*, especially when it depends upon another verb.

482. Double questions take two different constructions, viz.:

- 1) The first clause is introduced by *nūm*, *utrū*, or *nē*, and the second by *an*.

- 2) The first clause has no interrogative word, and the second has *an* or *nē*.

### 483. VOCABULARY.

Enūmērārē, āv, āt, <i>to enumerate,</i> <i>to count up.</i>	Misēr, ērā, ērūm, <i>unhappy, miser-</i> <i>able.</i>
Ignīs, īs, <i>m., fire, heat.</i>	Mortalīs, ē, <i>mortal.</i>
Immobīlis, ē, <i>immovable, fixed.</i>	Nescirē, iv, it, <i>to be ignorant, not</i> <i>to know.</i>
Lōcūplēs, ētis, <i>rich.</i>	Olim, <i>formerly.</i>
Majōr, ūs, ōris ( <i>comp. of magnus</i> ), <i>larger, greater.</i>	Quaestiō, ōnīs, <i>question.</i>
Mīnōr, ūs, ōris ( <i>comp. of parvus</i> ), <i>smaller.</i>	Rōtundūs, ā, ūm, <i>round.</i>
Mōbilis, ē, <i>movable.</i>	Undē, <i>whence.</i>

### 484. Exercises.

(a) 1. Estne anīmus immortālis? 2. Visne miser esse? 3. Quis enūmēret artium multitudīnem? 4. Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. 5. Quid dicam nescio. 6. Olim quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset. 7. Utrum major est sol, an minor, quam terra? 8. Num sol mobīlis, an immobīlis? 9. Sumusne immortāles, an mortāles?

(b) 1. Who has come? 2. I do not know who has come. 3. Do not all men wish to live? 4. Do you fear that the king will be conquered? 5. Do you not fear that we shall be condemned to death? 6. What did he say? 7. We do not know what he said. 8. Are they rich or poor? 9. You do not know whether we are rich or poor. 10. Whence does the moon derive (*habēre*) her light? 11. He does not know whence the moon derives her light. 12. Who knows whence the sun derives his light?

## LESSON LXXXII.

*Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses and with Quum.*

485. EVERY conditional sentence consists of two parts, *the condition* and *the consequence*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

REM.—Here *sī quīd hābeāt* is the *condition*, and *dābīt* the *consequence*.

486. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:

1) Those which assume the *condition* to be *true*;

e. g.,

Sī quīd hābēt, dāt.

If he has any thing, he gives it.

2) Those which represent the condition as *possible*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

3) Those which represent the condition as *impossible*; e. g.,

1. Sī quīd hābērēt, dārēt.

If he had any thing, he would give it.

2. Sī quīd hābuissēt, 'dēdissēt.

If he had had any thing, he would have given it.

487. It must be observed:

1) That *the condition* is expressed in the first of the above classes by the *indicative*, in the second by the *subjunctive present* or *perfect*, and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

- 2) That *the consequence* is expressed in the first two of these classes by the *indicative* (or some times by the *imperative*), and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

488. The relative clause takes the subjunctive:

- 1) When it expresses a *purpose* or *result*; e. g.,

1. Lēgātōs mīserunt, quī dicērent.

They sent ambassadors to say (*that they might say*).

2. Nēquē cñīm tū īs ēs quī nesciās.

Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know (*who may not know*).

- 2) When it *defines* or *explains* some indefinite antecedent, whether affirmative or negative; e. g.,

1. Sunt quī pūtent.

There are (some) who think, *or* some persons think.

2. Nēmō est, quī laud intēllīgāt.

There is no one who does not understand.

489. Quūm (cūm) takes the subjunctive when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g.,

Quae cūm itā sint.

*Since* these things (*lit.* which things) are so.

490. Quum, as an adverb of time (*when*), takes the indicative; e. g.,

Itēr faciēbām quūm Balbūm vīdēbām.

I was travelling *when* I saw Balbus.

The use of *quūm* with the *perfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive* to supply the place of a perfect active participle, has already been noticed (367)

## 491. VOCABULARY.

Consŭlĕrĕ, sŭlu, sult, <i>to consult,</i> <i>ask advice.</i>	Suādĕrĕ, suās, suās, <i>to advise.</i>
Nātiŏ, ōnis, <i>nation.</i>	Sustĭnĕrĕ, tĭnu, tent, <i>to sustain</i> <i>withstand.</i>
Pertĭmescĕrĕ, tĭmu, <i>to fear</i> <i>greatly.</i>	Vulnĕrārĕ, av, at, <i>to wound.</i>

## 492. Exercises.

(a) 1. Peccāvit, si id fecit. 2. Peccābit, si id faciat.  
3. Peccārent, si id facĕrent. 4. Peccavissent, si id  
fecissent. 5. Si vis beātus, impĕra anĭmo. 6. Si me  
consŭlis, suadeo. 7. Patriam auro, si potuisset, vendi-  
disset. 8. Sunt qui rideant. 9. Erant qui saltavissent.  
10. Caesar equitātum, qui sustinĕret hostium impĕtum,  
misit. 11. Nulla est enim natio quam pertimescāmus.

(b) 1. If he is alive (*lives*), he is now at Athens. 2.  
If he remains at Athens, he will learn much. 3. If he  
had gone to Rome, he would have been killed. 4.  
They would have sold their country, if they could. 5.  
If the king had been in the city, he would have par-  
doned you. 6. There were some who were wounded.  
7. Since we cannot remain at Rome, we will go to  
Athens. 8. Caesar had sent two legions to attack  
(make an attack upon) the enemy.

## LESSON LXXXIII.

*Participles.*

493. PARTICIPLES assume an assertion which may be  
formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary  
or convenient to do so ; thus, *puĕr rĭdens*, may be vari

ously translated, according to the connection; as, *the boy who laughs, the boy when he laughs, &c.*

494. Participles may sometimes be translated by a relative clause; e. g.,

1. Puēr rīdens    { *the boy who laughs.*  
                          { *the boy who was laughing.*
2. Puēr rīsūrūs,    { *the boy who is going to laugh.*  
                          { *the boy who will laugh.*
3. Puēr āmātūs, *the boy who is (or was) loved.*
4. Puēr āmandūs, *the boy who ought to be loved.*

495. If no substantive is expressed, supply *man, men, he, she, or those, &c.*; e. g.,

1. Rīdentīs, *of him who laughs.*
2. Rīdentiūm, *of those who laugh.*

496. With a neuter plural participle, supply *things*; e. g.,

- Praeterītūrā,    { *things that will pass away.*  
                          { *what will pass away.*

REM.—Participles, being parts of verbs, of course govern the same cases.

497. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *when* or *while*; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when (or while) he is (or was) laughing.*

REM.—In a sentence with *when* or *while*, we often omit the auxiliary verb; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when laughing.*

498. If the participle stands alone, *he, they, a man, men, or one, &c.*, must be supplied as the subject of the verb; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *when he (or one) is laughing.*
2. Rīdentēs, *when men (or they) are laughing.*



499. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *if*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *if a man (he or one) laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *if a man (he or one) is loved.*

500. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *because, for, since*, or by participial substantives with *from* or *through*.

- |                |   |   |
|----------------|---|---|
| 501. Dūbītans, | { | 1. <i>because I doubt.</i><br>2. <i>for I doubt.</i><br>3. <i>since I doubt.</i><br>4. <i>from doubting.</i><br>5. <i>through doubting.</i> |
|----------------|---|---|

## 502. VOCABULARY.

Adulātōr, ōrīs, *flatterer.*

Disjungērē, junx, junct, *to separate.*

Dūrārē, āv, āt, *to last.*

Expellērē, pūl, puls, *to expel, banish.*

Fēlicitās, ātis, *happiness*

Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense.*

Innoxius, ā, ūm, *harmless.*

Intervallūm, ī, *distance, space.*

Perfidia, ae, *perfidy.*

Perpētūō, *for ever.*

Pervēnīrē, vēm, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*

Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious.*

Plācēre, plăcu, plăcīt, *to please.*

Rēvertērē, vert, vers, *to return, turn back.*

Sātiārē, āv, āt, *to satisfy.*

Vidērī, vīs, *to seem.*

Vitūpērārē, āv, āt, *to reprove, criticise.*

## 503. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. 2. Pii homīnes ad felicitātem perpetuo duratūram perveniunt. 3. Adulātor aut laudat vituperanda, aut vituperat laudanda. 4. Leōnes satiāti (497) innoxii sunt. 5. Equum emptūrus (499) cave ne decipiāris. 6. Roma expulsus Carthagīne puēros docēbit. 7. Respondent

se perfidiam veritos (501) revertisse. 8. Stellae nobis parvae videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis disjunctae.

(b) 1. He who does wrong (494) is never happy. 2. Those who read this book will learn much. 3. There are some who think (488, 2) little of happiness which will not last. 4. The wise prize very highly the happiness which will last for ever. 5. They learned much while remaining at Rome (497). 6. If you love your parents (499), you will obey them. 7. We shall pardon him if condemned. 8. He fled from the city, because he had been accused of bribery (501).

## LESSON LXXXIV.

### *Participles—continued.*

504. PARTICIPLES may sometimes be translated by verbs with *though* or *although*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though he laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *though he is (was, &c.) loved.*

505. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though laughing.*
2. Amātūs, *though loved.*

506. Participles may sometimes be translated by verbs or participial nouns, with *after*; e. g.,

- |                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| 1. Passūs (Act.), | { | 1. <i>after he has (had) suffered.</i>  |
|                   |   | 2. <i>after suffering.</i>              |
| 2. Amātūs,        | { | 1. <i>after he was (has been) loved</i> |
|                   |   | 2. <i>after he had been loved.</i>      |
|                   |   | 3. <i>after having been loved.</i>      |

507. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs followed by the conjunction *and*; e. g.

1. Rīdens exclāmāt.

*He laughs and exclaims* (lit. laughing he exclaims).

2. Rīdens exclāmāvīt.

*He laughed and exclaimed.*

REM.—In the above examples the participle is construed by the same tense as the accompanying verb; sometimes, however, a different tense must be used; e. g.,

Correptūm lēpōrēm lācērāt.

*He has seized the hare and is mangling it.*

508. Participles with *nōn* may be translated by participial substantives depending upon the preposition *without*; e. g.,

1. Nōn rīdens, *without laughing.*

2. Nōn amātūs, { 1. *without being loved.*  
                          { 2. *without loving him.*

3. Vītūpērāt lībrōs nōn intellectōs.

*He censures books (not understood) without understanding them.*

509. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed like participles in any other construction, the Latin substantive being translated either by the nominative or the objective; e. g.,

Tarquīniō rēgnantē, *when Tarquin was king.*

Tē sēdentē, *as you were sitting.*

Captā Tŷrō, *after Tyre was taken.*

510. Participles may often be translated by substantives of kindred meaning; e. g.,

Lēgēs violātae, *the violation of the laws* (lit. *the violated laws*).

Vērē apprōpinquantē, *on the approach of spring*.

### 511. VOCABULARY.

Adventūs, ūs, *approach*.

Antē (*prep. with accus.*), *before*.

Apprōpinquārē, āv, āt, *to approach*.

Coenā, ae, *supper, feast*.

Cōgnoseērē, nōv, nīt, *to ascertain*.

Comprehendērē, hend, hens, *to arrest, comprehend*.

Intelligērē, lex, lect, *to understand*.

Pōnērē, pōsu, pōsit, *to place*.

Prōficiēcī, prōfeet, *to set out, to start*.

Transirē, i, īt, *to pass over*.

Vēr, vērīs, n., *spring*.

### 512. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ad coenam vocātus, nondum venit. 2. Multa transīmus ante oculos posīta. 3. Oculus, se non videns, alia videt. 4. Cum legionībus profectus celerīter adēro. 5. Comprehensum homīnem Romam ducēbant. 6. Non petens regnum accēpit. 7. Multi vitupērant libros non intellectos. 8. His responsis datis, itērū ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 9. Cognīto Caesāris adventu, legātos ad eum mittunt.

(b) 1. He will not be condemned, although he has been accused of treason. 2. Although invited to the feast, they will not come. 3. They were accused and (507) condemned. 4. He will receive the government without seeking it (508). 5. We censure these boys without knowing them. 6. They were put to death without having been condemned. 7. Having ascertained the approach of our army, the enemy fled. 8. Birds will return on the approach of spring.

## LESSON LXXXV.

*Derivation of Nouns.*

513. WORDS may be formed in two ways; viz.,

- 1) By *derivation*, i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the roots of other words; e. g., *moerōr*, sadness, formed by the addition of *ōr* to *moer*, the root of *moerērě*, to be sad.
- 2) By *composition*, i. e., by the union of two or more words, or their roots; e. g., *běněvōlens*, benevolent, well-wishing, from *běně*, well, and *vōlens*, wishing.

514. Nouns may be derived from other nouns, and from adjectives and verbs.

515. The endings, *lūs*, *lǎ*, *lŭm*, added to the root of nouns, with a connecting vowel (sometimes *ĩ* or *ō*, but generally *u*, which sometimes takes *c* before it), form *diminutives*; e. g., *hortŭlŭs* (hortus), a little garden.

516. The masculine endings, *ĩdēs* (or *ĩdēs*), *ādēs*, and *ĩādēs*, and the feminine *ās* and *īs*, added to the root of names of persons, form *patronymics* or *names of descent*; e. g., *Priāmĩdēs* (Priamus), a son or descendant of Priam; *Tantālīs* (Tantalus), daughter of Tantalus.

517. *Atūs*, *ĩtūs*, and *ũrā*, added to the root of nouns, denote *office*, *rank*, or *body of men*; e. g., *consŭlātūs* (consul), consulship; *cĩvĩtūs* (civis), state, body of citizens.

518. *Iām*, added to the root of nouns, denotes the *state* or *condition* of the objects expressed by the primitive; sometimes an *assemblage* of those objects; e. g., *scrŭĩtŭm* (servus), either servitude or domestics.

519. The endings, *ĩtūs*, *ĩǎ*, *ĩtiǎ*, *ĩtŭdŏ*, and *tūs* (gen.

*tūtis*), added to the root of adjectives, form *abstract nouns*; e. g., *bōnītās* (bonus), goodness; *diligentiā* (diligens), diligence; *multitūdō* (multus), multitude; *virtūs* (vir), virtue, manliness.

520. The endings, *ā* and *ō*, added to the first root of verbs, and *ōr* (fem. *riā*) to the third, denote the *agent or person who*; e. g., *scribā* (scribere), a scribe; *bībo* (bibere), a drunkard; *victōr* (vincere), a conqueror.

521. *Or* and *iūm*, added to the first root, and *iō*, *ūs*, and *ūrā* to the third, denote the *action or state* expressed by the verb; e. g., *pāvōr* (pavere), fear; *gaudium* (gaudēre), joy; *actiō* (agere, act), an action, &c.

522. *Idō* and *igō*, added to the first root, denote the *abstract of the primitive*; e. g., *cūpīdō* (cupere), desire.

523. *Mēn* and *mentum*, added to the first root, denote the *thing done, that by which it is done, or that which does*; e. g., *tēgmēn* (tegere), a covering; *flūmēn* (fluere), a stream, river.

524. *Um*, added to the third root, denotes the *action of the verb, or the means or result of it*; e. g., *tectum* (tegere), roof, covering; *scriptum* (scribere), a writing.

## 525. VOCABULARY.

Adjūvārē, jūv. jūt, *to aid, help.*

Adventūs, ūs (advenire), *approach, arrival.*

Circumdārē, dēd, dāt, *to surround.*

Civitas, ātis (civis), *state.*

Diligentiā, ae (diligens), *diligence.*

Fūgārē, īv āt, *to put to flight.*

Hortulūs, ī (hortus), *a little garden.*

Impērātōr, ōris (imperare), *commander.*

Multitūdō, īnis (multus), *multitude.*

Nuntiārē, āv, āt, *to announce, report.*

Pastōr, ōris (pascere), *shepherd.*

Sēnātūs, ūs (senex), *senate.*

526. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hortūli nostri multos flores habent. 2. Imperātor quam maxīmas copias comparāvit. 3. Dili-gentia tua labōrem patris adjūvit. 4. Hic nuntius ad-ventum tuum nuntiavērat. 5. Cieerōnem magna po-pūli multitūdo circumdēdit. 6. Pastor fugāvit lupum qui ovem unam momordērat.

(b) 1. Have you seen the shepherd's dog? 2. We went to see the boy's little garden. 3. Let them not come into the senate. 4. He has announced the arrival of the king. 5. Did you not announce the arrival of the leaders? 6. Caesar said that he would put to flight the forces of the enemy. 7. The commander has sent messengers to Rome. 8. The leaders will collect as large forces as possible. 9. The laws of the state have been violated by the commander.

## LESSON LXXXVI.

*Derivation of Adjectives.*

527. ADJECTIVES may be derived from nouns and verbs.

528. The endings, *ālīs*, *ārīs*, *īcūs*, *īlīs*, and *iūs*, added to the root of nouns = *of*, *belonging to*, *related to*; e. g., *rēgālīs* (rex), regal; *pōpūlārīs* (populus), popular; *cīvī-ŕīs* (civis), civil, &c.

529. *Aceūs*, *iciūs*, *eūs*, and *inūs*, denote the *material*; the first two sometimes *origin*, and the last two some-times *similarity*; e. g., *pātrīciūs* (pater), patrician; *au-reūs* (aurum), golden, &c.

530. *Osus* and *lentus* (often with connecting vowel *u*), denote *fulness, abundance*; e. g., *āquōsūs* (aqua), watery; *lūtūlentūs* (lutum), full of mud.

531. *Aeūs, ānūs* (*iānūs*), *iensīs*, and *īnūs*, added to the root of proper names of places, denote *native of, occupant of*; e. g., *Rōmānūs* (Roma), a Roman; *Athēniensīs* (Athenae), an Athenian, &c.

532. *Ariūs* (generally used substantively), denotes *occupation, sometimes pertaining to*; e. g., *consiliāriūs* (consilium), counselling, or a counsellor.

533. *Atūs, ītūs*, and *ūtūs* = *furnished with*, &c.; e. g., *aurātūs* (aurum), gilt; *turrītūs* (turris), turreted, &c.

534. *Stūs* = *being in, having in* one's self; e. g., *rōbustūs* (robur), robust.

535. Adjectives may be derived from verbs by the use of the following endings:

- 1) *Ax* = *having a propensity* to perform the action of the verb; e. g., *ēdax* (edēre), voracious.
- 2) *Bundūs* and *cundūs* = the *strengthened* meaning of the present participle used adjectively; e. g., *mīrābundūs* (mirāri), full of admiration, &c.
- 3) *Idūs* (and sometimes *uūs*) = the *quality* indicated by the verb; e. g., *algīdus* (algēre), cold.
- 4) *Ilīs* and *bīlīs* = *capable of being, easy to be*; e. g., *dōcīlīs* (docēre), easy to be taught, docile; *crēdībīlīs* (credēre), capable of being believed, credible.

## 536. VOCABULARY.

Anūlūs, ī, *a ring*.

Athēniensīs, ē (Athēnae), *Athenian*.

Carthāgīniensīs, ē (Cārthāgo), *Carthaginian*.

Civīlīs, ē (civis), *civil*.

Fallax, acīs (fallēre), *false, deceptive*.

Fabūlōsūs, ā, ūm (fabūla), *fabulous*.



Gallīcūs, ā, ūm (Gallia), *Gallīc,*  
*pertaining to Gaul.*

Inerēdībīlis, ě (in and credĕre),  
*incredible.*

Narrārĕ, āv, āt, *to relate.*

Narrātīō, ōnīs (narrāre), *narra-*  
*tive, story.*

Octō, *eight.*

Pōpŭlārīs, ě (popŭlus), *popular.*

Sōcrātēs, īs, *Socrates, a celebra-*  
*ted Athenian philosopher*

Spēcīōsŭs, ā, ūm (species), *spe-*  
*cious, plausible.*

Vincīrĕ, vinx, vinct, *to bind*

### 537. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec narratio est fabulōsa. 2. Non sum tam imprūdens, ut verbis speciōsis decipiar. 3. Spe fallāci decepti estis; cavēte ne itĕrum decipiamīni. 4. Quis credat illud quod incredibīle est? 5. Caesar octo libris bellum Gallīcum, tribus civīle narrāvit. 6. Athenien ses Socrātis damnāti (506) pedem ferro vinxērunt.

(b) 1. Many have been deceived by false hopes. 2. Let us not be deceived by false words. 3. These narratives are incredible. 4. He has given his sister two gold rings. 5. The Romans waged many wars. 6. The Carthaginians were conquered by the Romans. 7. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. 8. They cannot deceive the judge by specious words. 9. The senator wishes to be popular. 10. They are waging a civil war.

---

## LESSON LXXXVII.

### *Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs.*

538. VERBS may be derived from nouns and adjectives, and from other verbs.

539. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are generally called *denominatives*.

540. Transitive denominatives end in *ārē* (dep. *ārī*) or *īrē*; e. g., *cūrārē* (cura), to take care of; *fīnīrē* (finis), to finish.

541. Intransitive denominatives end in *ērē* or *scērē*; e. g., *flōrērē* (flos), to bloom; *mātūrescērē* (maturus), to become ripe.

REM.—The ending *scērē* is joined to the root by means of a connecting vowel; *e* is the connecting vowel in the above example.

542. Verbs derived from other verbs comprise four distinct classes, viz.: *frequentatives*, *inchoatives*, *desideratives*, and *diminutives*.

543. Frequentatives denote *repeated* or *continued* action, and are formed by the addition of *ārē* or *ītārē* to the third root, except in the first conjugation, where they add *itārē* to the first root; e. g., *hābītārē* (habēre), to inhabit; *vōlītārē* (volāre), to fly often, to flit.

544. Inchoatives denote the *beginning* or *increase* of an action, and are formed by the addition of *scērē* to the first root with a connecting vowel; e. g., *clārescērē* (clārere), to grow bright, or clear.

545. Desideratives denote a *desire* to do the action of the primitive, and are formed by adding *ūrērē* to the third root; e. g., *ēsūrērē* (edēre), to desire to eat.

546. Diminutives denote a *feeble* action, and are formed by adding *illārē* to the first root; e. g., *cantillārē* (cantāre), to sing in a feeble voice.

547. Derivative adverbs generally take one of the following endings, viz.:

1) When derived from nouns, *tīm*, *ītūs*; e. g., *grēgūtīm* (grex), in flocks; *fundītūs* (fundus), from the foundation.

2) When derived from adjectives, *ē*, *ē*, *o*, *tēr* (con-

necting vowel *i* except after *n*); e. g., *vērē* (verus), truly; *fācīlē* (facilis), easily; *cītō* (citus), quickly; *fortitēr* (fortis), bravely.

- 3) When derived from verbs, *īm* added to the third root; e. g., *stātīm* (stare, stat), immediately.

### 548. VOCABULARY.

Cantārē, āv, āt (canēre), <i>to sing.</i>	Occultārē, āv, āt (occulēre), <i>to hide, conceal.</i>
Cūrārē, āv, āt (cura), <i>to take care of.</i>	Provinciā, ae (pro and vincēre), <i>province.</i>
Custōdirē, īv, īt (custos), <i>to finish.</i>	Pūgnārē, āv, āt (pugna), <i>to fight.</i>
Flōrescērē (flōrērē), <i>to begin to bloom.</i>	Saevīrē, īv or ī, īt (saevus), <i>to rage, to be cruel.</i>
Fortitēr (fortis), <i>bravely.</i>	Spectārē, āv, āt (spēcērē), <i>to see, look at.</i>
Germaniā, ae, <i>Germany.</i>	Stātīm (stare), <i>immediately.</i>
Hābitārē, āv, āt (habēre), <i>to inhabit, dwell.</i>	Tectūm, ī (tegēre), <i>a covering, roof, house.</i>
Lūdūs, ī, <i>play, sport, pl. games.</i>	Vigilārē, āv, āt (vigil), <i>to watch, remain awake.</i>
Nuntiārē, āv, āt (nuntius), <i>to announce, report.</i>	

### 549. Exercises.

(a) 1. Labōrem nostrum finivīmus. 2. Canes tecta nostra custodivērunt. 3. Bellum saevit per Germaniam. 4. Dormivistīne, an vigilāsti? 5. Puellae in horto cantābant. 6. Corpōra nostra curaverāmus. 7. Puēri ludos spectavērunt. 8. Arbōres florescunt. 9. Hic ad summam gloriam florescēbat. 10. Decrevīmus habitāre in provincia. 11. Consilia sua occultavērunt. 12. Si te vidērit, statim curret ad te.

(b) 1. Have they announced your arrival? 2. Who will announce the arrival of the king? 3. Caesar sent

very large forces to guard the city. 4. They have gone into the country to witness the games. 5. They have finished the war. 6. We wish to finish the work. 7. The enemy are said to have fought bravely. 8. The flowers are beginning to bloom in our garden. 9. Do you wish to live (dwell) in the city? 10. We wish to live in the country.

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

### *Composition of Words.*

550. PREPOSITIONS often enter into composition with other words, as prefixes.

REM.—Many prepositions undergo no change of form on entering into composition, and merely impart to the simple word their own force. These, of course, require no special notice; others, however, present some peculiarities.

- 1) A, āb, abs = *away from*; e. g., abstīnērē (abs and tēnērē), *to abstain from*. In substantives and adjectives, it denotes *privation*; e. g., āmens (ā and mens), *without mind, mad*.
- 2) Ad = *to* (*d* often assimilated before consonants, except *d, j, m,* and *v*); e. g., accēpērē (ad and cāpērē), *to accept*.
- 3) Cōn (cūm) = *with, together*, sometimes *completely* (*co* before *h* and *vowels*; *com* before *b, p,* and sometimes before a vowel; *n* assimilated before *l, m,* and *r*); e. g., condūcērē (con and dūcērē), *to lead together, collect*.
- 4) Dē = *from, down*; e. g., dēdūcērē (dē and dūcērē), *to deduce*. In substantives and adjectives, *privation*; e. g., dēmens (de and mens), *mad*.
- 5) E, ex = *out of, thoroughly* (*e* before liquids and *b, d, g,* and *v*; *ef* before *f*); e. g., expugnāre (ex and pugnāre), *to vanquish, storm*.
- 6) In = *into, on, against* (*im* before *b* and *p*; *i* before *gn*; *n* assimilated before *l, m,* and *r*); e. g., incurrērē (in and currērē).

to attack. In adjectives, *not*; e. g., *indignūs* (in and dignus), unworthy.

- 7) Ob = *against* (*b* assimilated before *c, f*, and usually *p*); e. g., *oppōnĕřĕ* (ob and ponĕřĕ), to place against, to oppose.
- 8) Prĕ = *for, forth* (*pro* before vowels); e. g., *prĕpōnĕřĕ* (pro and ponĕřĕ), to set forth, propose.
- 9) Sŭb = *under, from below, somewhat* (*b* assimilated before *c, f, g*, and sometimes *m, p*, and *r*; *sub* in a few words); e. g., *subjĕřĕ* (sub and jacĕre), to throw under, to subject.

551. The inseparable prepositions, *amb*, around, about; *dīs* or *dī*, asunder; *řĕ* (*řĕd* before vowels), back, again, away; *sĕ*, without, apart from; and *vĕ*, not, often occur as prefixes in compound words; e. g., *ambĭřĕ* (amb and ire), to go round; *dispōnĕřĕ* (dis and ponĕřĕ), to put asunder, to distribute; *řĕdĭřĕ* (red and ire), to return; *sĕdlŭcĕřĕ* (se and ducĕre), to lead apart; *vĕsānŭs* (ve and sanus), not sane, insane.

552. Adverbs are sometimes used as prefixes; e. g., *bĕnĕvōlens* (bene and volens), benevolent; *mālĕvōlens* (male and volens), wishing ill, malevolent.

553. Certain vowel-changes often take place in forming compound words; thus, *a, e* and *ae* are often changed into *i* (*a* sometimes into *e*); e. g., *accĭpĕřĕ* (ad and capĕre), *abstĭnĕřĕ* (abs and tenĕre), *occĭdĕřĕ* (ob and caedĕre).

REM. 1.—Having examined the prefixes, we pass to notice a few terminations of frequent occurrence in compound words.

REM. 2.—When the first part of a compound is a noun, the connecting vowel is generally short *i*, as in *āgrĭcōlā* (ager and colĕre), a husbandman.

554. From *řacĕřĕ*, to do, are derived, (1) *fex*, agent; e. g., *artĭfex* (ars and řacĕre), an artist; (2) *řĭciŭm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *artĭřĭciŭm*, an art; (3) *řĭcŭs*, he who does (*adjectively*) e. g., *bĕnĕřĭcŭs*, beneficent.

555. From *căpěřě*, to take, are derived, (1) *ceps*, agent; e. g., *princeps* (primus and eapěre), one who takes the first (plae), a prince, a leader; (2) *cĭpiũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *princĭpiũm*, a beginning.

556. From *dĭcěřě*, to speak, are derived, (1) *dex*, agent, one who speaks: e. g., *index*, an informer; (2) *dĭciũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *indĭciũm*, a disclosure; (3) *dĭcũs* (*adj.*), speaking; e. g., *mălēdĭcũs*, slanderous.

557. From *căněřě*, to sing; *cěn*, agent; e. g., *tŭbĭcěn* (tuba and caněre), a trumpeter.

558. From *vellě*, to wish; *vĕlens* and *vŏhũs* (*adj.*), wishing; e. g., *běnevĕlens* and *běnevŏlũs* (bene and velle), benevolent.

559. From *ferrě* and *gěřěřě*, to bear; *fěr* and *gěr*, one who bears; e. g., *Lŭcĭfěr* (lux and ferre), Venus as morning star, the bearer of light; *armĭgěr* (arma and gerěre), armor-bearer.

560. From *cŏlēřě*, to cultivate; *cŏlă*, one who cultivates, or dwells in; e. g., *ăgrĭcŏlă* (ager and colěre), a field-tiller, a husbandman.

## 561. VOCABULARY.

Addŭcěřě, dux, duct (ad and dueěre), to bring to.

Attingěřě, tĭg, tact (ad and tan-gěre), to reach, attain.

Conděřě, did, dit (con and dare), to found.

Convĕnĭřě, vĕn, vent (con and venire), to assemble, convene.

Expŭgnărě, av, at (ex and pug-năre), to take by storm.

Incertũs, ă, ũm (in and certus), uncertain.

Incŏlă, ae, m. & f. (in and colěre), an inhabitant.

Invaděřě, văs, văs (in and vaděre), to go against, invade.

Ităliă, ae, Italy.

Obsĕs, ĭdis, m. & f., hostage.

Occĭděřě, cĭd, căs (ob and cĭděre), to fall, set.

Occīdērē, eīd, eīs (ob and cae-  
dēre), *to kill.*

Philōsōphūs, ī, *philosopher.*

Possidērē, ēd, ess, *to possess.*

Princeps, īpīs (primus and  
capēre), *the first, a leader,*  
*chief.*

Vērūm, ī, *truth.*

### 562. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi philosophi verum non attigērunt. 2. Rex portas urbis clausit hostībūs invadentībūs. 3. Has terras possidēmus; illas expugnabīmus. 4. Galli Romanam expugnavērunt. 5. Sol post montes illos in mare occīdit. 6. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occīdit. 7. Incōlae ad eum legātos misērunt. 8. Caesar omnem senātum ad se convenīre, principumque libēros obsīdes ad se addūci jussit. 9. Incertum est quo tempōre Dido Carthagīnem condidērīt.

(b) 1. The commander will collect large forces and invade Italy. 2. After having waged war for many years, they took the city by storm. 3. Caesar had ordered all the inhabitants to assemble in his presence. 4. Let us put the invading enemy to flight. 5. Romulus is said to have founded Rome. 6. It is uncertain at what time Carthage was founded. 7. I do not know at what time he returned home. 8. They say that Caius was killed in the first battle.





## PARADIGMS.

---

### *Nouns.—Five Declensions.*

#### 563 ENDINGS of the Genitive Singular.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ī,	īs,	ūs	ēī.*

REM.—Some Greek nouns are exceptions.

#### 564. Gender in Latin is,

- 1) Natural, when determined by sex, as in English ; as, *hōmō*, a man, *masc.* ; *mūliēr*, a woman, *fem.*
- 2) Grammatical, when not determined by sex ; as, *sermō*, a discourse, *masc.* ; *laurūs*, a laurel, *fem.*

#### 565. Natural Gender.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

566. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined partly by their signification, but principally by their endings.

#### 567. Grammatical Gender, when not determined by nom. ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns and clauses used as nouns.

REM —Grammatical gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

#### 568. *First Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ae*.
2. Nominative endings : Latin *a* ; Greek *e*, *as*, and *es*.
3. Grammatical gender : *a* and *e*, *fem.* ; *as* and *es*, *masc.*

REM —Cases coming under previous rules (565 and 567) are, of course, excepted.

---

\* In this ending *e* is long, except in *spēī*, *fīdēī*, and *τῶī*.

## 4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ă.
<i>Plur.</i>	ae,	ărŭm,	is,	ăs,	ae,	is.

REM.—The declension of Greek nouns presents some exceptions.

## 5. Paradigms.

1. *Mūsă, a muse.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>Mūs-ă,</i>	<i>Mūs-ae.</i>
G. <i>Mūs-ae,</i>	<i>Mūs-ărŭm.</i>
D. <i>Mūs-ae,</i>	<i>Mūs-is.</i>
A. <i>Mūs-ăm,</i>	<i>Mūs-ăs.</i>
V. <i>Mūs-ă,</i>	<i>Mūs-ae.</i>
A. <i>Mūs-ă,</i>	<i>Mūs-is.</i>

2. *Epitōmē, an abridgment.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ae.</i>
G. <i>Epitōm-ēs,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ărŭm.</i>
D. <i>Epitōm-ae,</i>	<i>Epitōm-is.</i>
A. <i>Epitōm-ēn,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ăs.</i>
V. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ae.</i>
A. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-is.</i>

3. *Aenēās (a man's name).*

N. <i>Aenē-ăs.</i>
G. <i>Aenē-ae.</i>
D. <i>Aenē-ae.</i>
A. <i>Aenē-ăm (ăn).</i>
V. <i>Aenē-ă.</i>
A. <i>Aenē-ă.</i>

4. *Anchīsēs (a man's name).*

N. <i>Anchīs-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Anchīs-ae.</i>
D. <i>Anchīs-ae.</i>
A. <i>Anchīs-ēn.</i>
V. <i>Anchīs-ē (ă).</i>
A. <i>Anchīs-ē (ă).</i>

569. *Second Declension.*1. Characteristic *ī*.2. Nominative endings: Latin, *er, ir, us, um*; Greek, *os* and *on*.3. Grammatical gender: *um* and *on*, neut., the rest masculine, except,

1) *Alvŭs, dŏmŭs, hŭmŭs, and vannŭs*, which are *feminine*; *pēlăgŭs* and *vīrŭs*, *neuter*; and *vulgŭs*, generally *neuter*, but some times masculine.

2) Such as come under previous rules.

## 4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl
<i>Sing. Nom. end.</i>	ī,	ī,	ō,	ŭm,	ē (or like nom.),	ō,
<i>Plur. ī (neut. ă),</i>	ōrŭm,	is,	ōs (neut. ă),	ī (neut. ă),	is	

REM.—A few Greek nouns are exceptions

## 5. Paradigms.

Servūs, <i>slave.</i>	Rēgnūm, <i>king- dom.</i>	Gēnēr, <i>son-in- law.</i>	Agēr, <i>field.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------

## SINGULAR.

Serv-ūs.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr.	Agēr.
Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ī.	Gēnēr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gēnēr-ō.	Agr-ō.
Serv-ūm.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr-ūm.	Agr-ūm.
Serv-ē.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr.	Agēr.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gēnēr-ō.	Agr-ō.

## PLURAL.

Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ōrūm.	Rēgn-ōrūm.	Gēnēr-ōrūm.	Agr-ōrūm.
Serv-īs.	Rēgn-īs.	Gēnēr-īs.	Agr-īs.
Serv-ōs.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ōs.	Agr-ōs.
Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-īs.	Rēgn-īs.	Gēnēr-īs.	Agr-īs.

REM.—Vīr, *a man*, is declined like *gēnēr*.

## 6. Paradigms of Greek nouns.

1. Iliōn, <i>n. (name of a city).</i>	2. Dēlōs, <i>f. (name of an island)</i>
N. Ili-ōn.	N. Dēl-ōs.
G. Ili-ī.	G. Dēl-ī.
D. Ili-ō.	D. Dēl-ō.
A. Ili-ōn.	A. Dēl-ōn.
V. Ili-ōn.	V. Dēl-ē.
A. Ili-ō.	A. Dēl-ō.

## 570. Third Declension.

## 1. Characteristic īs.

2. Nominative endings · *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.*

## 3. Table of gender in the third declension.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
ur, or, os, es <i>increasing in gen. and o, except do, go, and io.</i>	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, <i>s impure, es not in- creasing in gen. and x.</i>	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, <i>ur, and us.</i>

For exceptions, see 579.

## 4. Classification of nouns of the third declension, according to the formation of root from nominative ending.

Class I.	Class II.	Class III.	Class IV.
Root like Nom.	Root adds a letter.	Root drops nom. ending.	Root changes nom ending.

## 5. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	īs,	ī,	ēm, (īm),	..	ě (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	ēs,	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ībūs.

REM. 1.—The inclosed endings *īm* and *ī* belong only to a few words.

REM. 2.—The ending *iūm* of the genitive plural occurs in the following classes of nouns; viz.,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*; as, *mārē*, *māriūm*; *ānīmāl*, *ānīmālīūm*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.; as, *hostis*, *hostiūm*; *nūbēs*, *nūbiūm*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant; as, *urbs*, *urbiāz*; *crx*, *arciūm*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ūm* is sometimes used); as, *cliens*, *clientiūm*; *cohors*, *cohortiūm*.

## 6. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	īs,	ī,	..	..	ě (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	ā (iā),	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ā (iā),	ā (iā),	ībūs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

571. CLASS I. comprises nouns in *c*,\* *l*, *n*, *r*, *t*, and *y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel-changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pātēr*, a father; root, *patr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ēr* generally change *ě* into *ī* in the root; as, *flūmēr*, a river; root, *flūmīn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ū* into *ī* in the root; as, *cāpūt*, a head; root, *cāpū*.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *al* and *ēr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

572. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

- 1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*; as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmūt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlīt*.
- 2) Nouns in *o* add *n*; as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *i*, before *n* in the root; as, *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgin*.

\* There are only two nouns of this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

573. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,\* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*; as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*; as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.
- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostis*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

574. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*; as, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlūt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root; as, *ēlēphās*, an elephant; root, *ēlēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root; as, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlit*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*; as, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ē* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

### 575. Paradigms.

Mūliēr, <i>f.</i> , a woman. (root, same as nom. [126].)		Virgō, <i>f.</i> , a virgin. (root, <i>virgīn</i> [131, 2. REM. 2].)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.	N. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
G. Mūliēr-īs,	Mūliēr-ūm.	G. Virgīn-īs,	Virgīn-ūm.
D. Mūliēr-ī,	Mūliēr-ībūs	D. Virgīn-ī,	Virgīn-ībūs.
A. Mūliēr-ēm,	Mūliēr-ēs.	A. Virgīn-ēm,	Virgīn-ēs.
V. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.	V. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
A. Mūliēr-ē,	Mūliēr-ībūs.	A. Virgīn-ē,	Virgīn-ībūs.

\* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (572, 1).

Rex (gs), *m., a king.*  
(root, *rĕg* [134, 2].)

Singular.	Plural
N. Rex,	Rĕg-ēs.
G. Rĕg-īs,	Rĕg-ŭm.
D. Rĕg-i,	Rĕg-ībŭs.
A. Rĕg-ēm,	Rĕg-ēs.
V. Rex,	Rĕg-ēs.
A. Rĕg-ē,	Rĕg-ībŭs.

Corpŭs, *n., a body.*  
(root, *corpŏr* [137, 2].)

Singular.	Plural.
N. Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ā.
G. Corpŏr-īs,	Corpŏr-ŭm.
D. Corpŏr-i,	Corpŏr-ībŭs.
A. Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ā.
V. Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ā.
A. Corpŏr-ē,	Corpŏr-ībŭs.

## GREEK NOUNS.

Pĕrīclēs (*a man's name*).

Singular.	Plural.
N. Pĕrīcl-ēs.	
G. Pĕrīcl-īs	
D. Pĕrīcl-i	
A. Pĕrīcl-ēm (eā).	
V. Pĕrīcl-ēs (ē).	
A. Pĕrīcl-ē.	

Hērōs, *a hero.*

Singular.	Plural.
N. Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
G. Hērō-īs,	Hērō-ŭm.
D. Hērō-i,	Hērō-ībŭs.
A. Hērō-ēm (ā),	Hērō-ēs (ā).
V. Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
A. Hērō-ē,	Hērō-ībŭs.

576. *Fourth Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ūs*.
2. Nominative endings: *us* and *u*.
3. Grammatical Gender: *u*, neuter; *us*, masculine; except  
*Acūs*, a needle; *dŏmŭs*, a house; *mānŭs*, a hand; *īdŭs*, the ides.  
*portŭcŭs*, a gallery; *trībŭs*, a tribe; which are feminine.
4. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ūs,	ūs,	uī,	ŭm,	ūs,	ū.
<i>Plur</i>	ūs,	uŭm,	ībŭs (ŭbŭs*),	ūs,	ūs,	ībŭs (ŭbŭs*).

5. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ū,	ūs,	ū,	ū,	ū,	ū.
<i>Plur.</i>	uā,	uūm,	ībŭs (ŭbŭs*),	uā,	uā,	ībŭs (ŭbŭs*).

\* This ending is used only in a few words.

## 6. Paradigms.

Fructūs, <i>m.</i> , <i>fruit.</i> (root, <i>fruct.</i> )		Cornū, <i>n.</i> , <i>a horn.</i> (root, <i>corn.</i> )	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	N. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
G. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-uūm.	G. Corn-ūs,	Corn-uūm.
D. Fruct-uī,	Fruct-ībūs.	D. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.
A. Fruct-ūm,	Fruct-ūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
V. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	V. Corn-ū,	Corn-ut.
A. Fruct-ū,	Fruct-ībūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.

577. *Fifth Declension.*1. Characteristic *ēī*.\*2. Nominative ending : *es*.3. Grammatical gender *feminine*, except *diēs*, a day (*m.* and *f.* in singular, and *m.* in plural), and *mēridiēs*, mid-day (*masc.*).

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ēs,	ēī,*	ēī,*	ēm,	ēs,	ē.
<i>Plur.</i>	ēs,	ērūm,	ēbūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbūs.

## 5 Paradigms.

Rēs, <i>f.</i> , <i>a thing.</i> (root, <i>r.</i> )		Diēs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , <i>a day.</i> (root, <i>di.</i> )	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G. R-ēī,	R-ērūm.	G. Di-ēī,	Di-ērūm.
D. R-ēī,	R-ēbūs.	D. Di-ēī,	Di-ēbūs.
A. R-ēm,	R-ēs.	A. Di-ēm,	Di-ēs.
V. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A. R-ē,	R-ēbūs.	A. Di-ē,	Di-ēbūs.

578. *Case-endings of Substantives.*

SINGULAR.						
	Dec. I. <i>F.</i>	Dec. II. <i>M.</i> <i>N.</i>	Dec. III. <i>M. &amp; F.</i> <i>N.</i>	Dec. IV. <i>M.</i> <i>N.</i>	Dec. V. <i>F.</i>	
N.	ā	ūs, ēr, īr, ūm.	various.	ūs.	ū.	ēs.
G.	ae.	ī.	īs.	ūs.		ēī.*
D.	ae.	ō.	ī	uī.	ū.	ēī.*
A.	ām.	ūm.	ēm (īm), like nom.	ūm.	ū.	ēnl.
V.	ā.	ē, ēr, īr, ūm.	like nom.	ūs.	ū.	ēs.
A.	ā.	ō.	ē (ī).	ū.		ē.

\* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēi* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

PLURAL.								
	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V
	F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.
N.	ae.	ī	ā.	ēs.	ā or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.
G.	ārūm.	ōrūm.		ūm (iūm).		uūm.		ērūm.
D.	īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.
A.	ās.	ōs.	ā.	ēs.	ā or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.
V.	ae.	ī	ā.	ēs.	ā or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.
A.	īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

### 579. Table of Genders.

#### I. NATURAL GENDER.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

#### II. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, independent of nominative ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns, and clauses used as nouns.

#### III. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, as determined by nominative ending.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Dec. I.	as, es.	a, e.	
Dec. II.	er, us, os.*		um, on.
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, increasing in gen., o except do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ya, aus, s impure, x, es not increasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, e, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
Dec. IV.	us		u.
Dec. V.		es.	

#### Principal Exceptions.†

##### SECOND DECLENSION.

Alvūs dōmūs, hūmūs, and vannūs, are *feminine*; pēlāgūs and vīrūs, *neuter*; vulgūs, generally *neuter*, sometimes *masculine*.

\* Nouns in *ir* have natural gender.

† This list of exceptions contains some whose gender is not grammatical. They are given here for convenience of reference.



## THIRD DECLENSION.

## 1) MASCULINES.

(*do* and *go*.) Cardŏ, cŏmĕdŏ, harpăgŏ, ordŏ, ūnĕdŏ, lĭgŏ, and margŏ  
(the last sometimes *fem.*).

(*as*.) As and Greek nouns in *as* (gen. *antis*).

(*is*.) Amnĭs, anguĭs, axis, cassĭs, cĭnĭs (or *f.*), collĭs, crĭnĭs, ensĭs, fascĭa, fĭnĭs (or *f.*), follĭs, fĭnĭs, ignĭs, lĭpĭs, mensĭs, orbĭs, pānĭs, piscĭs, postĭs, pulvĭs, sanguĭs, torrĭs, unguĭs, vectĭs, and vermĭs.

(*s impure*.) Adeps, dens, fons, forceps (or *f.*), mons, pons, quadrans, and rūdens.

(*x*.) Călix, cŏdex, cortex, grex, pollex, thŏrax, and vertex.

(*l*.) Săl and sŏl.

(*n*.) Liĕn, pectĕn, rĕn, and many words of Greek origin.

(*ur*.) Furfŭr, turtŭr, and vultŭr.

(*us*.) Lĕpŭs and mŭs.

## 2) FEMININES.

(*or* and *os*.) Arbŏr, cŏs, and dŏs.

(*es increasing*.) Compĕs, mercĕs, mergĕs, quĭĕs, rĕquiĕs, sĕgĕs, and tĕgĕs.

(*o*.) Cărŏ, ĕchŏ, and Argŏ.

(*us*.) Grŭs (*m.*), incŭs, jŭventŭs, pălŭs, pĕcŭs (ŭdĭs), sălŭs, sĕnectŭs, servĭtŭs, sŭs (*m.*), tellŭs, and virtŭs.

## 3) NEUTERS.

(*er*.) Cădăvĕr, ĭtĕr, tŭbĕr, ūbĕr, vĕr, verbĕr, and names of plants in *er*.

(*or*.) Adŏr, aequŏr, cŏr, and marmŏr.

(*as* and *es*.) Făs, nĕfăs, văs, and aĕs.

(*os*.) Os (ŏrĭs), ŏs (ossĭs), and the Greek words, *chaŏs*, *ĕpŏs*, *ĕthŏs*, and *mĕlŏs*.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

Acŭs, ĭdŭs, mănŭs, portĭcŭs, and trĭbŭs, are feminine.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

Dĭēs and mĕrĭdĭēs are masculine, though the former is sometimes *fem.* in *sing.*

580. *Adjectives.—First and second Declension.*

1. Case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	Singular.			Plural.			A few† have Sing. thus :		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	2.*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ūs, ēr, †	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ūs, ēr,	ă,	ŭm.
G.	ī,	ae,	ī.	ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.	iūs,	iūs,	iūs
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ī,	ī,	ī.
A.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ă.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.
V.	ē, ēr, †	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ē, ēr,	ă,	ŭm.
A.	ō,	ă,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ō,	ă,	ō.

## 2. Paradigms.

Bōnŭs, *good*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Bōn-ūs,	ă,	ŭm ;	Bōn-ī,	ae,	ă.
G.	Bon-ī,	ae,	ī ;	Bōn-ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.
D.	Bon-ō,	ae,	ō ;	Bōn-īs,	īs,	īs.
A.	Bon-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm ;	Bōn-ōs,	ās,	ă.
V.	Bon-ē,	ă,	ŭm ;	Bōn-ī,	ae,	ă.
A.	Bon-ō,	ă,	ō ;	Bōn-īs,	īs,	īs.

Tēnēr, *tender* : root, *tēnēr* (*e* not dropped).

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Tēnēr,	ă,	ŭm ;	Tēnēr-ī,	ae,	ă.
G.	Tēnēr-ī,	ae,	ī ;	Tēnēr-ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.
D.	Tēnēr-ō,	ae,	ō ;	Tēnēr-īs,	īs,	īs.
A.	Tēnēr-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm ;	Tēnēr-ōs,	ās,	ă.
V.	Tēnēr,	ă,	ŭm ;	Tēnēr-ī,	ae,	ă.
A.	Tēnēr-ō,	ă,	ō ;	Tēnēr-īs,	īs,	īs.

REM. 1.—Most adjectives in *ēr* drop *ē* before *r* of the root in all genders.REM. 2.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *iūs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *ī* in all genders, viz. : *alius*, another ; *nullus*, no one ; *solus*, alone ; *totus*, the whole ; *ullus*, any ; *unus*, one ; *alter*, the other ; *neuter*, neither ; and *uter*, which (of the two).581. *Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

1. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz. :

\* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in *ēr*, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (*ē* is sometimes dropped) : *ēr*, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending* ; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *vcc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

‡ See list, 113, REM.

1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).

2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).

3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

2. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in *ě* or *ī*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ī* only.

2) That all except comparatives have, in the *plural*, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *iā*, and the *genitive* in *iūm*.

### 3. Paradigms.

#### CLASS I.

*Acěr, sharp.*

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Acěr,	ācěr-īs,	ācěr-ě.	N. Acr-ēs,	ācěr-ēs,	ācěr-iā.
G. Acr-īs,	ācěr-īs,	ācěr-īs.	G. Acr-iūm,	ācěr-iūm,	ācěr-iūm.
D. Acr-ī,	ācěr-ī,	ācěr-ī.	D. Acr-ībūs,	ācěr-ībūs,	ācěr-ībūs.
A. Acr-ēm,	ācěr-ēm,	ācěr-ě.	A. Acr-ēs,	ācěr-ēs,	ācěr-iā.
V. Acěr,	ācěr-īs,	ācěr-ě.	V. Acr-ēs,	ācěr-ēs,	ācěr-iā.
A. Acr-ī,	ācěr-ī,	ācěr-ī.	A. Acr-ībūs,	ācěr-ībūs,	ācěr-ībūs.

#### CLASS II.

##### 1. Tristīs, *sad*.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Trist-īs	trist-ě.	N. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
G. Trist-īs,	trist-īs.	G. Trist-iūm,	trist-iūm.
D. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	D. Trist-ībūs,	trist-ībūs.
A. Trist-ēm,	trist-ě.	A. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
V. Trist-īs,	trist-ě.	V. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
A. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	A. Trist-ībūs,	trist-ībūs.

##### 2. Tristiōr (*comparative*), *more sad*.

N. Tristiōr,	tristiūs.	N. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ā.
G. Tristiōr-īs,	tristiōr-īs.	G. Tristiōr-ūm,	tristiōr-ūm.
D. Tristiōr-ī,	tristiōr-ī.	D. Tristiōr-ībūs,	tristiōr-ībūs.
A. Tristiōr-ēm,	tristiūs.	A. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ā.
V. Tristiōr,	tristiūs.	V. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ā.
A. Tristiōr-ě (ī),	tristiōr-ě (ī).	A. Tristiōr-ībūs,	tristiōr-ībūs.

## CLASS III.

Felix, happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. Fēlix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
G. Fēlic-īs,	fēlic-īs.	G. Fēlic-iūm,	fēlic-iūm.
D. Fēlic-ī,	fēlic-ī.	D. Fēlic-ibūs.	fēlic-ibūs.
A. Fēlic-ēm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
A. Fēlic-ē (ī),	fēlic-ē (ī).	A. Fēlic-ibūs,	fēlic-ibūs.

## 582. Comparison of Adjectives.

In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issīmūs,	issimā,	issīmūm.
Examples.		Root.	Comparative.		Superlative.
Altūs ( <i>high</i> ),		alt.	altiōr (iōr, iūs),		altissīmūs (ā, ūm).
Mitīs ( <i>mild</i> ),		mīt.	mītiōr (iōr, iūs),		mītissīmūs (ā, ūm).

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ēr* add *rīmūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr, pulchriōr, pulcherrīmūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *lis* form the superlative by adding *īmūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Fācīlis ( <i>easy</i> ),	fācīliōr,	fācīllīmūs.
Diffīcīlis ( <i>difficult</i> ),	diffīcīliōr,	diffīcīllīmūs.
Sīmīlis ( <i>like</i> ),	sīmīliōr,	sīmīllīmūs.
Dissīmīlis ( <i>unlike</i> ),	dissīmīliōr,	dissīmīllīmūs.

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bōnūs ( <i>good</i> ),	mēliōr,	optīmūs.
Mālūs ( <i>bad</i> ),	pejōr,	pessīmūs.
Magnūs ( <i>great</i> ),	majōr,	maxīmūs.
Parvūs ( <i>little</i> ),	mīnōr,	mīnīmūs,
Multūs ( <i>much</i> ),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūrā),	plūrīmūs.

## 583. Numerals.\*

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	Unūs, <i>one</i>	Primūs, <i>first</i> .	Singūli, <i>one by one</i> .	Sēmēl, <i>once</i> .
2	Duō.	Sēcundūs.	Bīnī.	Bīs.
3	Triēs.	Tertiūs.	Terūī.	Tēr.

\* See Numerals, p. 145

4	Quātuor	Quartūs.	Quāternī.	Quāter.
5	Quinquē.	Quintūs.	Quīnī.	Quinquīes.
6	Sex.	Sextūs.	Sēnī.	Sexiēs.
7	Septēm.	Septimūs.	Septēnī.	Septiēs.
8	Octō.	Octāvūs.	Octōnī.	Octiēs.
9	Nōvēm	Nōnūs.	Nōvēnī.	Nōviēs.
10	Dēcēm	Dēcimūs.	Dēnī.	Dēciēs.

584. *Substantive Pronouns.*

## SINGULAR.

1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
N. Egō, <i>I.</i>	Tū, <i>thou.</i>	
G. Meī, <i>of me.</i>	Tuī, <i>of thee.</i>	{ Suī, <i>of himself, herself, itself.</i> Sībī, <i>to himself, &amp;c.</i> Sē, <i>himself.</i>
D. Mihī, <i>to or for me.</i>	Tībī, <i>to or for thee.</i>	
A. Mē, <i>me.</i>	Tē, <i>thee.</i>	
V. Tū, <i>O thou.</i>		
A. Mē, <i>with, &amp;c., me.</i>	Tē, <i>with thee.</i>	Sē, <i>with himself.</i>

## PLURAL.

N. Nōs <i>we.</i>	Vōs, <i>ye or you.</i>	
G. Nostrūm, } <i>of us.</i>	Vestrūm } <i>of you.</i>	Suī, <i>of themselves.</i> Sībī, <i>to themselves.</i> Sē, <i>themselves.</i>
D. Nōbīs, <i>to us.</i>	Vōbīs, <i>to you.</i>	
A. Nōs, <i>us.</i>	Vōs, <i>you.</i>	
V. Vōs, <i>O ye or you.</i>		
A. Nōbīs, <i>with us.</i>	Vōbīs, <i>with you.</i>	Sē, <i>with themselves.</i>

585. *Adjective Pronouns.*

I. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *noštēr, nostrā, nostrūm*; *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

II. *Demonstrative Pronouns* (so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer), are *hīc, illē, istē, īs*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

I. *Hīc, this.*

Singular			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Hīc,	haec,	hōc.	Hī,	hae,	haec.
G. Hujūs,	hujūs,	hujūs.	Hōrūm,	hārūm,	hōrūm.
D. Huīc,	huīc,	huīc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hōc.	Hōs,	hās,	haec.
V.					
A. Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

2. Illē, *he or that.*

Singular.			Plural		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Illē,	illā,	illū.	Illī,	illae,	illā.
G. Illūs,	illūs,	illūs.	Illōrum,	illārum	illōrum.
D. Illī,	illī,	illī.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
A. Illūm,	illām,	illū.	Illōs,	illās,	illā.
V					
A. Illō,	illā,	illō.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

3. Istē, *that.*

Istē, *that*, is declined like *illē*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

4. Is, *he or that.*

(Less specific than *illē*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Is,	eā,	īd.	Iī,	eae,	eā.
G. Ejūs,	ejūs,	ejūs.	Eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum.
D. Ei,	eī,	eī.	Iīs or eīs,	iīs or eīs,	iīs or eīs.
A. Eūm,	eām,	īd.	Eōs,	eās,	eā.
V.					
A. Eō,	eā,	eō.	Iīs or eīs,	iīs or eīs,	iīs or eīs.

5. Idēm, *the same.*

(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *is*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Idēm,	eādēm,	īdēm.	Iidēm,	eaedēm,	eādēm.
G. Ejusdēm,	ejusdēm,	ejusdēm.	Eōrundēm,	eārundēm,	eōrundēm.
D. Eidēm,	eīdēm,	eīdēm.	Eisdēm, or Iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm.
A. Eundēm,	eandēm,	īdēm.	Eōsdēm,	eāsdēm,	eādēm.
V.					
A. Eōdēm,	eādēm,	eōdēm.	Eisdēm, or Iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm.	eisdēm, or iisdēm.

III. The *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsē*, *himself*, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*. It is declined as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Ipsĕ,	ipsă,	ipsŭm.	Ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsă.
G. Ipsŭs,	ipsŭs,	ipsŭs.	Ipsŏrŭm,	ipsărŭm,	ipsŏrŭm.
D. Ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.
A. Ipsŭm,	ipsăm,	ipsŭm.	Ipsŏs,	ipsăs,	ipsă.
V.					
A. Ipsŏ,	ipsă,	ipsŏ.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

IV. The *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quī,	quae,	quŏd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujŭs,	cujŭs,	cujŭs.	Quŏrŭm,	quărŭm,	quŏrŭm.
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quībŭs,	quībŭs,	quībŭs.
A. Quĕm,	quăm,	quŏd.	Quŏs,	quăs,	quae.
V.					
A. Quŏ,	quă,	quŏ.	Quībŭs,	quībŭs,	quībŭs.

V. The *Interrogative Pronouns*, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except in the forms *quīs*, nom. masc., and *quīd*, nom. and acc. neut.

VI. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quidā*, a certain one; *āliquīs*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *siquīs*, if any, &c. They are compounds either of *quīs* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

**REM.**—The compounds of *quīs* generally take *quīd* in the *neut. sing.* when used *substantively*, and *quŏd* when used *adjectively*. Some of those compounds, as *āliquīs*, *siquīs*, take *quā* (not *quae*) in the *fem. sing.* and *neut. plur.*

### 586. *Paradigm of the verb Essē.*

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT (*am*).

Singular.	Plural.
Sŭm, <i>I am.</i>	Sŭmŭs, <i>we are.</i>
Es, <i>thou art.</i>	Estis, <i>you are.</i>
Est, <i>he is.</i>	Sunt, <i>they are</i>

IMPERFECT (*was*).

Singular.	Plural.
Erām, <i>I was.</i>	Erāmūs, <i>we were.</i>
Erās, <i>thou wast.</i>	Erātīs, <i>you were.</i>
Erāt, <i>he was.</i>	Erant, <i>they were.</i>

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

Erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	Erīmūs, <i>we shall be.</i>
Erīs, <i>thou wilt be.</i>	Erītīs, <i>you will be.</i>
Erīt, <i>he will be.</i>	Erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

Fuī, <i>I have been.</i>	Fuīmūs, <i>we have been.</i>
Fuistī, <i>thou hast been.</i>	Fuistīs, <i>you have been.</i>
Fuīt, <i>he has been.</i>	Fuērunt, <i>they have been.</i>
	Fuēre, <i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

Fuērām, <i>I had been.</i>	Fuērāmūs, <i>we had been.</i>
Fuērās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>	Fuērātīs, <i>you had been.</i>
Fuērāt, <i>he had been.</i>	Fuērant, <i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

Fuērō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	Fuērīmūs, <i>we shall have been.</i>
Fuērīs, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>	Fuērītīs, <i>you will have been.</i>
Fuērīt, <i>he will have been.</i>	Fuērint, <i>they will have been.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

Sīm, <i>I may be.</i>	Sīmūs, <i>we may be.</i>
Sīs, <i>thou mayest be.</i>	Sītīs, <i>you may be.</i>
Sīt, <i>he may be.</i>	Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

Essēm, <i>I might be.</i>	Essēmūs, <i>we might be.</i>
Essēs, <i>thou mightest be.</i>	Essētīs, <i>you might be.</i>
Essēt, <i>he might be.</i>	Essent, <i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuērūn, <i>I may have been.</i>	Fuērīmūs, <i>we may have been.</i>
Fuērīs, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	Fuērītīs, <i>you may have been.</i>
Fuērīt, <i>he may have been.</i>	Fuērint, <i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i>
Fuissēs, <i>thou mightest have been.</i>	Fuissētīs, <i>you might have been.</i>
Fuissēt, <i>he might have been.</i>	Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i>



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Es, <i>or</i> estǫ, <i>be thou.</i>	Estě <i>or</i> estǫtě, <i>be ye.</i>
Estǫ, <i>let him be.</i>	Suntǫ, <i>let them be.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essě, <i>to be.</i>
PERFECT,	Fuissě, <i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	Fütürüs (ǣ, ūm) essě, <i>to be about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fütürüs, ǣ, ūm, <i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------------------------

587. *Regular Verbs.—Four Conjugations.*

## 1. Infinitive endings.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ǣř,	ěř,	ěř,	irě.

## 2. Favorite vowels.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ǣ,	ě,	ě (ĩ),	ĩ

588. FIRST CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ǣř*).

## 1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2.	3.
ǣv,	ǣt.

## 2. Paradigm.

Amǣř, *to love* : 1st root, *ǣm* ; 2d, *ǣmǣv* ; 3d, *ǣmǣt*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Active, <i>I love.</i>		Passive, <i>I am loved.</i>	
Singular.	Plural	Singular.	Plural
Am-ǫ,	Am-ǣmūs,	Am-ǫr,	Am-ǣmūr,
Am-ǣs,	Am-ǣtis,	Am-ǣris (rě),	Am-ǣmĩnĩ,
Am-ǣt.	Am-ǣnt.	Am-ǣtūr ;	Am-ǣntūr.

IMPERFECT, *was loving* ; *was loved.*

Am-ǣbām,	Am-ǣbāmūs,	Am-ǣbǣr,	Am-ǣbāmūr.
Am-ǣbās,	Am-ǣbǣtis,	Am-ǣbǣris (rě),	Am-ǣbāmĩnĩ,
Am-ǣbǣt.	Am-ǣbant.	Am-ǣbǣtūr ;	Am-ǣbantūr.

FUTURE, *will love ; will be loved.*

Singular	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ābō,	Am-ābimūs,	Am-ābōr,	Am-ābimūr,
Am-ābis,	Am-ābitīs,	Am-ābērīs (rē),	Am-ābimīnī,
Am-ābit ;	Am-ābunt.	Am-ābitūr ;	Am-ābuntūr.

PERFECT, *have loved ; have been loved.*

Amāv-ī,	Amāv-imūs,	Amāt-ūs sūm,*	Amāt-ī sūmūs,
Amāv-istī,	Amāv-istīs,	Amāt-ūs ēs,	Amāt-ī estīs,
Amāv-īt ;	Amāv-erunt (ērē).	Amāt-ūs est ;	Amāt-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had loved ; had been loved.*

Amāv-ērām,	Amāv-ērāmūs,	Amāt-ūs ērām,*	Amāt-ī ērāmūs,
Amāv-ērās,	Amāv-ērātīs,	Amāt-ūs ērās,	Amāt-ī ērātīs,
Amāv-ērāt ;	Amāv-erant.	Amāt-ūs ērāt ;	Amāt-ī erant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *will have loved ; will have been loved.*

Amāv-ērō,	Amāv-ērīmūs,	Amāt-ūs ērō,*	Amāt-ī ērīmūs,
Amāv-ērīs,	Amāv-ērītīs,	Amāt-ūs ērīs,	Amāt-ī ērītīs,
Amāv-ērīt ;	Amāv-erint.	Amāt-ūs ērīt ;	Amāt-ī erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may love ; may be loved.*

Am-ēm,	Am-ēmūs,	Am-ēr,	Am-ēmūr,
Am-ēs,	Am-ētīs,	Am-ērīs (rē),	Am-ēmīnī,
Am-ēt ;	Am-ent.	Am-ētūr ;	Am-entūr.

IMPERFECT, *might love ; might be loved.*

Am-ārēm,	Am-ārēmūs,	Am-ārēr,	Am-ārēmūr,
Am-ārēs,	Am-ārētīs,	Am-ārērīs (rē),	Am-ārēmīnī,
Am-ārēt	Am-arent.	Am-ārētūr ;	Am-arentūr.

PERFECT, *may have loved ; may have been loved.*

Amāv-ērīm,	Amāv-ērīmūs,	Amāt-ūs sīm,†	Amāt-ī sīmūs,
Amāv-ērīs,	Amāv-ērītīs,	Amāt-ūs sīs,	Amāt-ī sītīs,
Amāv-ērīt ;	Amāv-erint.	Amāt-ūs sīt ;	Amāt-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have loved ; might have been loved.*

Amāv-issēm,	Amāv-issēmūs,	Amāt-ūs essēm,†	Amāt-ī essēmūs,
Amāv-issēs,	Amāv-issētīs,	Amāt-ūs essēs,	Amāt-ī essētīs,
Amāv-issēt ;	Amāv-issent.	Amāt-ūs essēt ;	Amāt-ī essent.

\* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular	Plural.	Singular	Plural.
Am-ā, <i>or</i> ām-ātō,	Am-ātē, <i>or</i> ām-ātōtē,	Am-ārē, <i>or</i> ām-ātōr,	Am-āmīnī,
Am-ātō;	Am-antō.	Am-ātōr;	Am-antōr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Am-ārē.	Am-ārī.
PERF.	Amāv-issē.	Amāt-ūs essē.
FUT.	Amāt-ūrūs essē.	Amāt-ūm irī.

## PARTICIPLS.

PRES.	Am-ans.	PERF.	Amāt-ūs.
FUT.	Amāt-ūrūs.	FUT.	Am-andūs.

## GERUND.

Am-andī, andō, andūm, andō.

## SUPINES.

Amāt-ūm.	Amāt-ū.
----------	---------

589. SECOND CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ērē*).

## 1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots

2.	3
u ( <i>ēv</i> ),*	īt.

## 2. Paradigm.

Mōnērē, *to advise* : 1st root, *mōn* ; 2d, *mōnu* ; 3d, *mōnēt*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Active, <i>I advise</i> .		Passive, <i>I am advised</i> .	
Singular	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mōn-eō,	Mōn-ēmūs,	Mōn-eōr,	Mōn-ēmūr,
Mōn-ēs,	Mōn-ētīs,	Mōn-ērīs ( <i>rē</i> ),	Mōn-ēmīnī,
Mōn-ēt;	Mōn-ent.	Mōn-ētūr;	Mon-entūr.

IMPERFECT, *was advising* ; *was advised*.

Mōn-ēbām,	Mōn-ēbāmūs,	Mōn-ēbār,	Mōn-ēbāmūr,
Mōn-ēbās,	Mōn-ēbātīs,	Mōn-ēbārīs ( <i>rē</i> ),	Mōn-ēbāmīnī,
Mōn-ēbāt;	Mōn-ēbant.	Mōn-ēbātūr;	Mōn-ēbantūr.

FUTURE, *shall advise* ; *shall be advised*.

Mōn-ēbō,	Mōn-ēbīmūs,	Mōn-ēbōr,	Mōn-ēbīmūr,
Mōn-ēbīs,	Mōn-ēbītīs.	Mōn-ēbērīs ( <i>rē</i> ),	Mōn-ēbīmīnī,
Mōn-ēbīt;	Mōn-ēbunt.	Mōn-ēbītūr;	Mōn-ēbuntūr.

PERFECT, *have advised ; have been advised.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mönu-ī,	Mönu-īmūs,	Mönit-ūs sūm,*	Mönit-ī sūmūs,
Mönu-istī,	Mönu-istīs,	Mönit-ūs ēs,	Mönit-ī estīs,
Mönu-it ;	Mönu-erunt (ērē).	Mönit-ūs est ;	Mönit-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had advised ; had been advised.*

Mönu-ērām,	Mönu-ērāmūs,	Mönit-ūs ērām,*	Mönit-ī ērāmūs,
Mönu-ērās,	Mönu-ērātīs,	Mönit-ūs ērās,	Mönit-ī ērātīs,
Mönu-ērāt ;	Mönu-erant.	Mönit-ūs ērāt ;	Mönit-ī erant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have advised ; shall have been advised.*

Mönu-ērō,	Mönu-ērīmūs,	Mönit-ūs ērō,*	Mönit-ī ērīmūs,
Mönu-ērīs,	Mönu-ērītīs,	Mönit-ūs ērīs,	Mönit-ī ērītīs,
Mönu-ērīt ;	Mönu-erint.	Mönit-ūs ērīt ;	Mönit-ī erunt.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may advise ; may be advised.*

Mön-eām,	Mön-eāmūs,	Mön-eār,	Mön-eāmūr,
Mön-eās,	Mön-eātīs,	Mön-eārīs (rē),	Mön-eāmīnī.
Mön-eāt ;	Mön-eant.	Mön-eātūr ;	Mön-eantūr.

IMPERFECT, *might advise ; might be advised.*

Mön-ērēm,	Mön-ērēmūs,	Mön-ērēr,	Mön-ērēmūr,
Mön-ērēs,	Mön-ērētīs,	Mön-ērērīs (rē),	Mön-ērēmīnī,
Mön-ērēt ;	Mön-erent.	Mön-ērētūr ;	Mön-erentūr.

PERFECT, *may have advised ; may have been advised.*

Mönu-ērīm	Mönu-ērīmūs,	Mönit-ūs sīm,†	Mönit-ī sīmūs,
Mönu-ērīs,	Mönu-ērītīs.	Mönit-ūs sīs,	Mönit-ī sītīs,
Mönu-ērīt ;	Mönu-erint.	Mönit-ūs sīt ;	Mönit-ī siut.

PLUPERFECT, *might have advised ; might have been advised.*

Mönu-issēm,	Mönu-issēmūs,	Mönit-ūs essēm,†	Mönit-ī essēmūs,
Mönu-issēs,	Mönu-issētīs,	Mönit-ūs essēs,	Mönit-ī essētīs,
Mönu-issēt ;	Mönu-issent.	Mönit-ūs essēt ;	Mönit-ī essent.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Mön-ē,	Mön-ētē,	Mön-ērē,	Mön-ēmīnī,
or mōn ētē,	or mön-ētētē.	or mön-ētör,	
Mön-ētē ;	Mön-entō.	Mön-ētör ;	Mön-entör.

\* See 331 N.

† See 332, N.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mön-ěřě.		Mön-ērī
PERF.	Mönu-issě.		Mönit-ūs essě
FUT.	Mönit-ūrūs essě.		Mölit-üm irī.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Mön-ens.		Mönit-ūs.
FUT.	Mönit-ūrūs.		Mön-endūs.

## GERUND.

Mön-endī, endō, endüm, endō.

## SUPINES.

Mönit-üm.		Mönit-ū.
-----------	--	----------

590. THIRD CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ěřě*).

## 1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, *s*, or *like 1st*; 3d, *t*, sometimes *a*.

## 2. Paradigm.

Rěgěřě, *to rule*: 1st root, *rěg*; 2d, *rex*; 3d, *rect*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Act., <i>I rule</i> .		Pass., <i>I am ruled</i> .	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rěg-ě,	Rěgimūs,	Rěg-ör,	Rěg-īmūr,
Rěg-īs,	Rěg-itīs,	Rěg-ěrīs (rě),	Rěg-īmīnī,
Rěg-it;	Rěg-unt.	Rěg-itūr;	Rěg-untūr.

IMPERFECT, *was ruling*; *was ruled*.

Rěg-ěbām,	Rěg-ěbāmūs,	Rěg-ěbār,	Rěg-ěbāmūr,
Rěg-ěbās,	Rěg-ěbātīs,	Rěg-ěbārīs (rě),	Rěg-ěbāmīnī
Rěg-ěbāt;	Rěg-ěbant.	Rěg-ěbātūr;	Rěg-ěbantūr.

FUTURE, *shall rule*; *shall be ruled*.

Rěg-ām,	Rěg-ēmūs,	Rěg-ār,	Rěg-ēmūr,
Rěg-ēs,	Rěg-ētīs,	Rěg-ērīs (rě),	Rěg-ēmīnī,
Rěg-ēt;	Rěg-ent.	Rěg-ētūr;	Rěg-entūr.

PERFECT, *have ruled ; have been ruled.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rex-ī,	Rex-īmūs,	Rect-ūs sūm,*	Rect-ī sūmūs,
Rex-istī,	Rex-istīs,	Rect-ūs ēs,	Rect-ī estīs,
Rex-īt ;	Rex-ērunt (ērē).	Rect-ūs est ;	Rect-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled ; had been ruled.*

Rex-ērām,	Rex-ērāmūs,	Rect-ūs ērām,*	Rect-ī ērāmūs,
Rex-ērās,	Rex-ērātīs,	Rect-ūs ērās,	Rect-ī ērātīs,
Rex-ērāt ;	Rex-erant.	Rect-ūs ērāt ;	Rect-ī erant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have ruled ; shall have been ruled.*

Rex-ērō,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Rect-ūs ērō,*	Rect-ī ērīmūs,
Rex-ērīs,	Rex-ērītīs,	Rect-ūs ērīs,	Rect-ī ērītīs,
Rex-ērīt ;	Rex-erint.	Rect-ūs ērīt ;	Rect-ī erunt.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may rule ; may be ruled.*

Rēg-ām.	Rēg-āmūs,	Rēg-ār,	Rēg-āmūr,
Rēg-ās,	Rēg-ātīs,	Rēg-ārīs (rē),	Rēg-āmīnī,
Rēg-āt ;	Rēg-ant.	Rēg-ātūr ;	Rēg-antūr.

IMPERFECT, *might rule ; might be ruled.*

Rēg-ērēm,	Rēg-ērēmūs,	Rēg-ērēr,	Rēg-ērēmūr,
Rēg-ērēs,	Rēg-ērētīs,	Rēg-ērērīs (rē),	Rēg-ērēmīnī,
Rēg-ērēt ;	Rēg-erent.	Rēg-ērētūr,	Rēg-erentūr.

PERFECT, *may have ruled ; may have been ruled.*

Rex-ērīm,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Rect-ūs sīm,†	Rect-ī sīmūs
Rex-ērīs,	Rex-ērītīs,	Rect-ūs sīs,	Rect-ī sītīs,
Rex-ērīt ;	Rex-erint.	Rect-ūs sīt ;	Rect-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have ruled ; might have been ruled.*

Rex-issēm,	Rex-issēmūs,	Rect-ūs essēm,†	Rect-ī essēmūs,
Rex-issēs,	Rex-issētīs,	Rect-ūs essēs,	Rect-ī essētīs,
Rex-issēt ;	Rex-issent.	Rect-ūs essēt ;	Rect-ī essent.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rēg-ē,	Rēg-ītē,	Rēg-ērē,	Rēg-īmīnī,
or rēg-ītō,	or rēg-ītōtē,	or rēg-ītōr,	
Rēg-ītē ;	Rēg-untō.	Rēg-ītōr ;	Rēg-untōr.

\* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ.		Rĕg-l
PERF	Rex-issĕ.		Rect-ŭs essĕ.
FUT.	Rect-ŭrŭs essĕ.		Rect-ŭm ŭrĭ.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Rĕg-ens.		PERF.	Rect-ŭs.
FUT.	Rect-ŭrŭs.		FUT.	Rĕg-endŭs.

## GERUND.

Rĕg-endĭ, endō, endŭm, endō.

## SUPINES.

Rect-ŭm.		Rect-ŭ.
----------	--	---------

## 3. Paradigm of verbs in i ō of the third conjugation.

Căpĕrĕ, *to take*: 1st root, *căp*; 2d, *cĕp*; 3d, *capt*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Căp-iŏ,	Căp-ĭmŭs,	Căp-iŏr,	Căp-ĭmŭr,
Căp-ĭs,	Căp-ĭtĭs,	Căp-ĕrĭs (rĕ),	Căp-ĭmĭnĭ,
Căp-ĭt;	Căp-iunt.	Căp-ĭtŭr;	Căp-iuntŭr.

## IMPERFECT.

Căp-iĕbăm,	Căp-iĕbămŭs,	Căp-iĕbăr,	Căp-iĕbămŭr.
Căp-iĕbās,	Căp-iĕbătĭs,	Căp-iĕbărĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iĕbămĭnĭ.
Căp-iĕbăt;	Căp-iĕbant.	Căp-iĕbătŭr;	Căp-iĕbantŭr.

## FUTURE.

Căp-iām,	Căp-iēmŭs,	Căp-iār,	Căp-iēmŭr,
Căp-iēs,	Căp-iētĭs,	Căp-iērĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iēmĭnĭ,
Căp-iēt	Căp-ient.	Căp-iētŭr;	Căp-ientŭr.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Căp-iām,	Căp-iāmŭs,	Căp-iār,	Căp-iāmŭr
Căp-iās,	Căp-iātĭs,	Căp-iārĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iāmĭnĭ,
Căp-iāt	Căp-iant.	Căp-iātŭr;	Căp-iantŭr.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.


3d Pl. Căp-iuntō. | 3d Pl. Căp-iuntōr

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Căp-iens. | Fut. Căp-iendūs.

## GERUND.

Căp-iendī, dō, &c.

 The other parts of verbs in i ō are entirely regular

## 591. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Inf. ending īrē).

## 1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, īv; 3d, īt.

## 2. Paradigm.

Audīrē, to hear: 1st root, aud; 2d, audīv; 3d, audit.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Act., I hear.		Pass., I am heard.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Aud-iō,	Aud-īmūs,	Aud-iōr,	Aud-īmūr,
Aud-is,	Aud-itīs,	Aud-īrīs (rē),	Aud-īmīnī,
Aud-īt;	Aud-iunt.	Aud-ītūr;	Aud-iuntūr.

## IMPERFECT, was hearing; was heard.

Aud-iēbām,	Aud-iēbāmūs,	Aud-iēbār,	Aud-iēbāmūr
Aud-iēbās,	Aud-iēbātīs,	Aud-iēbārīs (rē),	Aud-iēbāmīnī,
Aud-iēbāt;	Aud-iēbant.	Aud-iēbātūr;	Aud-iēbantūr.

## FUTURE, shall hear; shall be heard.

Aud-iām,	Aud-iēmūs,	Aud-iūr,	Aud-iēmūr,
Aud-iēs,	Aud-iētīs,	Aud-iērīs (rē),	Aud-iēmīnī,
Aud-iēt;	Aud-ient.	Aud-iētūr;	Aud-iētūr.

## PERFECT, have heard; have been heard.

Audīv-ī,	Audīv-īmūs,	Audit-ūs sūm,*	Audit-ī sūmūs,
Audīv-istī,	Audīv-istīs,	Audit-ūs ēs,	Audit-ī estīs,
Audīv-īt;	Audīv-ērunt (ērē).	Audit-ūs est;	Audit-ī sunt.

\* See 331, N.



PLUPERFECT, *had heard ; had been heard.*

Audiv-ěram,	Audiv-ěramūs,	Audit-ūs ěrām,*	Audit-i ěramūs,
Audiv-ěrās,	Audiv-ěrātīs,	Audit-ūs ěrās,	Audit-i ěrātīs,
Audiv-erāt ;	Audiv-erant.	Audit-ūs ěrāt ;	Audit-i erant

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have heard ; shall have been heard.*

Audiv-ěrō,	Audiv-ěrīmūs,	Audit-ūs ěrō,*	Audit-i ěrīmūs,
Audiv-ěrīs,	Audiv-ěrītīs,	Audit-ūs ěrīs,	Audit-i ěrītīs,
Audiv-ěrīt ;	Audiv-erint.	Audit-ūs ěrīt ;	Audit-i erunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may hear ; may be heard.*

Aud-iām,	Aud-iāmūs,	Aud-iār,	Aud-iāmūr,
Aud-iās,	Aud-iātīs,	Aud-iārīs (rě),	Aud-iāmīnī,
Aud-iāt ;	Aud-iant.	Aud-iātūr ;	Aud-iantūr.

IMPERFECT, *might hear ; might be heard.*

Aud-irēm,	Aud-irēmūs,	Aud-irēr,	Aud-irēmūr,
Aud-irēs,	Aud-irētīs,	Aud-irērīs (rě),	Aud-irēmīnī,
Aud-irēt ;	Aud-irent.	Aud-irētūr ;	Aud-irentūr.

PERFECT, *may have heard ; may have been heard.*

Audiv-ěrim,	Audiv-ěrimūs,	Audit-ūs šim,†	Audit-i šimūs,
Audiv-ěrīs,	Audiv-ěrītīs,	Audit-ūs šīs,	Audit-i šītīs,
Audiv-ěrīt ;	Audiv-erint.	Audit-ūs šīt ;	Audit-i sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have heard ; might have been heard.*

Audiv-issēm,	Audiv-issēmūs,	Audit-ūs essēm,†	Audit-i essēmūs,
Audiv-issēs,	Audiv-issētīs,	Audit-ūs essēs,	Audit-i essētīs,
Audiv-issēt	Audiv-issent.	Audit-ūs essēt ;	Audit-i essent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aud-i,	Aud-itě,	Aud-irě,	Aud-imīnī,
or aud-itō,	or aud-itōtě,	or aud-itōr,	
Aud-itō ;	Aud-iuntō.	Aud-itōr ;	Aud-iuntōr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Aud-irě.	Aud-irī.
PERF.	Audiv-issě.	Audit-ūs essě.
FUT.	Audit-ūrūs essě.	Audit-ūm irī.

\* See 331, N.

† See 332, N

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES	Aud-iens.		PERF.	Audit-ūs.
FUT.	Audit-ūrūs.		FUT.	Aud-iendūs.

## GERUND.

Aud-iendī, iendō, iendūm, iendō.

## SUPINES.

Audit-ūm.		Audit-ū.
-----------	--	----------

592. *Formation of Second Root.*

Conj. I.		Conj. II.		Conj. III.		Conj. IV.
----------	--	-----------	--	------------	--	-----------

## REGULAR.

āv.		u or ēv.		s or like 1st root.		iv
-----	--	----------	--	---------------------	--	----

## FIRST IRREGULARITY.

Radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).		radical vowel lengthened.
------------------------------	--	------------------------------	--	---	--	------------------------------

## SECOND IRREGULARITY.

Reduplication.		reduplication.		reduplication.	
----------------	--	----------------	--	----------------	--

## THIRD IRREGULARITY.

Analogy of 2d conj.		analogy of 3d conj.		analogy of 2d or 4th conj.		analogy of 2d or 3d conj.
------------------------	--	------------------------	--	-------------------------------	--	------------------------------

593. *Deponent Verbs.*

Deponent verbs are such as have a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*. They take, however, all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Lōquens, *speaking*; 2) lōcūtūs, *having spoken*; 3) lōcūtūrūs, *about to speak*; 4) lōquendūs, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

*Irregular Verbs.*

594. Paradigm of *Possē*,\* to be able.

2d root, *pōtu*.

## INDICATIVE.

*Pres.* Possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūnūs, pōtestīs, possunt.

*Imp.* pōtērām *Fut.* pōtērō; *Perf.* pōtu-ī; *Pluperf.* pōtu-ērām; *Fut. Perf.* pōtu-erō.

\* For the conjugation of the simple verb, *essē*, see 586.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres.* possīm *Imp.* possēm ; *Perf.* pōtu-ērīm ; *Pluperf.* pōtu-issēm

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* possē ; *Perf.* pōtu-issē.

## PARTICIPLE.

Pōtens (*used as an adjective, powerful*).

595. Paradigms of *Vellē* (to be willing) and its compounds.

Vellē.	Nollē.	Mallē.
2d root, <i>vōlu</i> .	2d root, <i>nōlu</i> .	2d root, <i>mālu</i> .

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

Vōlō,	Nōlō,	Mālō,
Vis,	Nonvis,	Māvis,
Vult ;	Nonvult ;	Māvult ;
Vōlūmūs,	Nōlūmūs,	Mālūmūs,
Vultīs,	Nonvultīs,	Māvultīs,
Vōlunt.	Nōlunt.	Mālunt.

## IMPERFECT.

Vōl-ēbām, bās, &c.	Nōl-ēbām, bās, &c.	Māl-ēbām, bās, &c.
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------

## FUTURE.

Vōl-ām.	Nōl-ām.	Māl-ām.
---------	---------	---------

## PERFECT.

Vōlu-ī.	Nōlu-ī.	Mālu-ī.
---------	---------	---------

## PLUPERFECT.

Vōlu-ērām.	Nōlu-ērām.	Mālu-ērām.
------------	------------	------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Vōlu-ērō.	Nōlu-ērō.	Mālu-ērō.
-----------	-----------	-----------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Vēl-īm, īs, &c.	Nōl-īm, īs, &c.	Māl-īm, īs, &c.
-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

## IMPERFECT.

Vell-ēm, ēs, &c.	Noll-ēm.	Mall-ēm.
------------------	----------	----------

## PERFECT.

Vōlu-ērīm.	Nōlu-ērīm.	Mālu-ērīm.
------------	------------	------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Vōlu-issēm.	Nōlu-issēm.	Mālu-issēm.
-------------	-------------	-------------

## IMPERATIVE.

	Nōl-i or itō.	
	Nōl-itē or itōtē.	

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. Vellē.		Nollē.		Mallē.
PERF. Vōlu-issē.		Nōlu-issē.		Mālu-issē.

## PARTICIPLES.

Vōlens.		Nōlens.	
---------	--	---------	--

596 Paradigm of *Ferrē*, to bear.

2d root, *tūl*; 3d, *lāt*.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr-ō fer-s, fer-t, fēr-īmūs, fer-tīs, fēr-unt.		Fēr-ōr, fer-rīs, fer-tūr, fēr-īmūr, fēr-īmīnī, fēr-untūr.

## IMPERFECT.

Fēr-ēbām, bās, &c.		Fēr-ēbār, bārīs, &c.
--------------------	--	----------------------

## FUTURE.

Fēr-ām, ēs, &c.		Fēr-ār, ērīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

## PERFECT.

Tūl-i, istī, &c.		Lāt-ūs sūm, ēs, &c.
------------------	--	---------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-ērām, ās, &c.		Lāt-ūs ērām, &c.
-------------------	--	------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Tūl-ērō, &c.		Lāt-ūs ērō, &c.
--------------	--	-----------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Fēr-ām, ās, &c.		Fēr-ār, ārīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

## IMPERFECT.

Fer-rēm, rēs, &c.		Fer-rēr, rērīs, &c.
-------------------	--	---------------------

## PERFECT.

Tūl-ērīm, &c.		Lāt-ūs sīm, &c.
---------------	--	-----------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-issēm.		Lāt-ūs essēm, &c.
------------	--	-------------------

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
Fěr, or fertǫ,	Fer-rě, or fer-tǫr,
Fer-tǫ;	Fer-tǫr;
Fer-tě, or fer-tǫtě,	Fěr-imīnī,
Fěr-untǫ.	Fěr-untǫr.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Fer-rě,	Fer-rī,
<i>Perf.</i> Tǫl-isse,	Lāt-ūs essě,
<i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ūrūs essě.	Lāt-ūm irī.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> Fěr-ens,	<i>Perf.</i> Lāt-ūs (ǎ, ūm).
<i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ūrūs (ǎ, ūm).	<i>Fut.</i> Fěr-endūs (ǎ, ūm).

## GERUND.

Fěr-endī, dō, dūm, dō.

## SUPINE.

Lāt-ūm.

Lāt-ū.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrē* are conjugated like the simple verb.

597. Paradigm of *Fiērī*, to become, be made.

## PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Fīǫ, fīs, fīt, &c.	Fī-ām, fī-ās, fī-āt, &c.

## IMPERFECT.

Fī-ēbām, ēbās, &c.	Fī-ērēm, ērēs, &c.
--------------------	--------------------

## FUTURE.

Fī-ām, ēs, &c.

## PERFECT.

Fact-ūs sūm, &c.	Fact-ūs sīm, &c.
------------------	------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Fact-ūs ērām, &c.	Fact-ūs essēm, &c.
-------------------	--------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-ūs ērǫ, &c.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fī, or fī-tǫ, Fī-tǫ.	<i>Plur.</i> Fī-tě, or fī-tǫtě. Fī-untǫ.
--------------------------------------	---

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* Fiēri; *Perf.* Fact-ūs essē; *Fut.* Fact ūm iri.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perf.* Fact-ūs (ā, ūm); *Fut.* Fāciendūs (ā, ūm).

598. Paradigm of *Irē*, to go.

2d root, *iv*; 3d, *it*.

## PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Eā, is, it; imūs, itīs, eunt.		Eām, eās, &c.

## IMPERFECT.

Ibām, ibās, &c.		Irēm, irēs, &c.
-----------------	--	-----------------

## FUTURE.

Ibō, ibīs, &c.

## PERFECT.

Iv-ī, iv-istī, &c.		Iv-ērīm, ēris, &c.
--------------------	--	--------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

Iv-ērām, ērās, &c.		Iv-issēm, issēs, &c.
--------------------	--	----------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ērō, ēris, &c.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> I, or itō, Itō.		<i>Plur.</i> Itē, or itētē, Euntō.
---------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* Irē; *Perf.* Iv-issē; *Fut.* Itūrūs essē.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* Iens (*gen.* euntīs); *Fut.* Itūrūs, ā, ūm.

## GERUND.

Eundī, dō, dūm, dō.

## SUPINE.

Itūm, itū.

599. *Edērē*, to eat.

*Edērē*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essē*. These are as follows:

*Regular.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Edō, &c.
<i>Imperat.</i>	Edē, &c.
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	Edērēm, &c.
<i>Infim.</i>	Edērē.

*Irregular.*

<i>Es, est, estīs.</i>
<i>Es, estō, estē, estētē.</i>
<i>Essēm, essēs, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Essē.</i>

600. *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *scriptūrūs sūm*, I am about to write: the second expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *virtūs cōlendā est*, virtue must be cultivated.

601. *Impersonal Verbs.*

1. Impersonal verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,  
Oportēt, *it behooves.*

Taedēt mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

2. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, *it is known.*

Juvāt, *it delights.*

3. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Mihī scribendū est, *I must or should write.*

Tibī scribendū est, *you must or should write.*

Illī scribendū est, *he must or should write.*

Nōbīs scribendū est, *we must or should write.*

Vōbīs scribendū est, *you must or should write.*

Illīs scribendū est, *they must or should write.*

4. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēditūr, *I am believed.*

Tibī crēditūr, *Thou art believed.*

Illī crēditūr, *He is believed.*

Nōbīs crēditūr, *We are believed.*

Vōbīs crēditūr, *You are believed.*

Illīs crēditūr, *They are believed.*





# SYNTAX.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

602. PARTS of speech (as we have seen, 2), either singly or combined, form propositions; e. g., *Amās, thou lovest*; *puēr lūdīt, the boy plays*.

603. Propositions, either singly or combined, form sentences; e. g., *Equūs currīt (one prop.), the horse runs*; *Puēr lūdīt ēt ēquūs currīt (two propositions)*.

604. Sentences, in their various forms and combinations, of course, comprise the language.

605. Sentences may be divided into two classes, viz.:

- 1) Simple sentences, or such as contain a single proposition; e. g., *Puēr lūdīt*.
- 2) Compound sentences, or such as contain more than one proposition; e. g., *Puēr lūdīt ēt ēquūs currīt*.

606. In a compound sentence, the propositions which compose it are either,

- 1) Independent of each other, as in the above example, and are called co-ordinate propositions; or,
- 2) One of them is used to qualify the other, or some part of it, and is called a dependent or subordinate proposition, while that on which it depends is called a leading or principal proposition; e. g., *Servūs vēnīt ūt portās claudāt, the slave has come to shut the gates*. Here, '*servūs vēnīt*' is a principal proposition, and '*ūt portās claudāt*' is a dependent proposition.

## CHAPTER I.

*The Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.*

## SECTION I—SUBJECT.

607. EVERY sentence, however simple, consists of two distinct parts, viz..

- 1) The *Subject*, or that of which it speaks, as, *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*.
- 2) The *Predicate*, or that which is said of the subject, as *lūdīt*, in the above sentence.

608. The subject of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A noun; e. g., *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*; or,
- 2) A word or clause used as a noun; e. g., *mentīrī*, in the sentence *turpē est mentīrī*.

609. RULE I. *The Subject*.—The subject of a finite\* verb is put in the nominative; e. g., *Equūs currit*, *the horse runs*.

610. The subject may either be *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple subject* consists either of a single nominative, or of two or more nominatives representing the same person or thing; e. g., (1) *Lātinūs rēgnābāt*, *Latinus was reigning*; (2) *Lātinūs rex rēgnābāt*, *Latinus the king was reigning*.
- 2) The *compound subject* consists of two or more simple subjects connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., *Caesār ēt Balbūs Rōmām vērērunt*, *Caesar and Balbus came to Rome*.

## SECTION II.—PREDICATE.

611. The predicate of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A verb; e. g., *lūdīt*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*; or,
- 2) The verb *essē* (or sometimes a passive verb) with an attributive† noun or adjective; e. g.,

---

\* For the subject of an infinitive see 655.

† By an *attributive* noun is meant one which is used to qualify or describe another noun.

## 1.

Cicēřǒ fuīt consŭl, *Cicero was consul.*

Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.* Here, *fuīt consŭl* and *Christiānī est* are the predicates.

## 2.

Terrā est rōtundā, *the earth is round.*

Hŭmānŭm est errārē, *to err is human.* Here, *est rōtundā* and *hŭmānŭm est* are the predicates.

612. RULE II. *Finite Verb.*—A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person; e. g., *Puēr lŭdīt, the boy plays.*

REM.—If the subject is *compound*, the verb is generally put in the plural.

613. RULE III. *Attributive Noun.*—An attributive noun in the predicate, after the verb *essē* and a few passive verbs, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Cicēřǒ fuīt consŭl, Cicero was consul.*
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē, it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

614. RULE IV. *Adjectives.*—Adjectives and participles (whether in the subject or the predicate) agree in *gender, number, and case*, with the nouns which they qualify; e. g., *Terrā est rōtundā, the earth is round.*

615. The predicate, like the subject, may be either *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple* predicate contains but a single finite verb; e. g., *Puēr currīt, the boy runs.*
- 2) The *compound* predicate consists of two or more simple predicates connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g. *Puēr currīt et lŭdīt, the boy runs and plays.*

616. In principal sentences (including simple sentences) the verb of the predicate may be put in any finite mood.

- 1) The *indicative* is used, in positive assertions; e. g., *Portās claudīt, he is shutting the gates.*
- 2) The *subjunctive* is used,

- a) To express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*  
e. g., *Dārēt, he would give it* (i. e., *if he had it, perhaps*)  
b) Sometimes to express a *wish* or *command*; e. g., *Scribāt,*  
*he may write, may he write, or let him write.*

- 3) The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., *Per-  
tās claudē, shut the gates.*

617. RULE V. *Vocative.*—The name of the person or thing ad-  
dressed is put in the vocative; e. g., *Quīd est, Cātilinā? why is  
this, Catiline?*

REM.—This, of course, forms no part of the subject or predicate.

## CHAPTER II.

### *Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.*

#### SECTION I.—USE OF MODIFIERS.

618. BOTH subject and predicate may have qualifying words and  
clauses connected with them, to limit or modify their meaning; e. g.,

- 1) *Lātinūs rex rēgnāvīt, Latinus the king reigned.* Here the  
subject is modified by *rex* (59).
- 2) *Militēs fortītēr pāgnant, the soldiers fight bravely.* Here  
the predicate is modified by *fortītēr* (77).

619. Any modifier, whether in the subject or the predicate, may  
be itself modified; e. g., *Lātinūs, bōnūs rex, rēgnāvīt.* Here the  
modifier, *rex*, is itself modified by *bōnūs*.

620. Nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs, are often found with  
modifiers.

#### SECTION II.—MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.

621. Nouns, including pronouns, may be modified,

I. By adjectives and participles.

II. By nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives.

622. I. Nouns may be modified by adjectives and participles; e. g.,

*Bōnūs puēr, a good boy.*

See Rule IV.

623. II. Nouns may be modified by nouns and clauses used with  
the force of adjectives. These are,

- 1) Limiting nouns.
- 2) Relative clauses.

624. RULE VI. *Limiting Nouns*.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Lātinūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Rēgīs filiūs*, *the king's son*: except,
  - a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; e. g., *Puēr exīmiāe pulchritūdīnīs*, or *Puēr exīmiā pulchritūdīnē*, *a boy of remarkable beauty*.

625. RULE VII. *Relative Clauses*.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; e. g., *Puēr quī lūdīt*, *the boy who plays*.

626. The predicate of a relative clause is sometimes in the *indicative* and sometimes in the *subjunctive*. It may be observed, however, that the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express *purpose* or *result*; e. g., *Lēgātōs mīserunt quī dicērent*, *they sent ambassadors to say* (lit., *who might say*).
- 2) To define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., *Sunt quī pūtent*, *there are (some) who think*.

### SECTION III.—MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.

627. Adjectives may be modified,

I. By adverbs.

II. By words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs.

628. I. Adjectives may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficilis*, *not difficult*.

629. RULE VIII. *Adverbs*.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficilis*, *not difficult*; *mīlēs fortitēr pugnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*.

REM —It will be observed that *adverbs* modify verbs and other adverbs as well as adjectives.

630. II. Adjectives may be modified by words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs. These are,

- 1) The genitive.
- 2) The dative.
- 3) The ablative.
- 4) The infinitive.

631. RULE IX. *Genitive*.—Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness*, and the like, together with their *contraries*, take the genitive; e. g., *Cūpīdus laudis, desirous of praise.*

632. RULE X. *Dative*.—Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the object to which the quality is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi grātissimā ērat, peace was very acceptable to me.*

633. RULE XI. *Ablative*.—Adjectives may be modified by an ablative denoting *cause, manner, or means*; e. g., *Aegēr āvāritiā, diseased by avarice.*

634. RULE XII. *Ablative*.—The adjectives, *dignūs, indignūs, contentūs, praeditūs, frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g., *Virtūs parvō contentā est, virtue is content with little.*

635. RULE XIII. *Supine in ū as Ablative*.—The supine in *ū* as a verbal noun in the ablative is used after adjectives signifying *good or bad, easy or difficult, agreeable or disagreeable, &c.*; e. g., *Difficilē dictū (difficult in saying), difficult to say.*

636. RULE XIV. *Ablative*.—The comparative degree without *quām* is followed by the ablative; e. g., *Clēmētiā dīvinīus, more godlike than clemency.*

Obs.—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes; e. g., *Eurōpā minōr est quām Asiā, Europe is smaller than Asia.*

637. RULE XV. *Infinitive*.—The infinitive sometimes depends upon adjectives; e. g., *Dignūs amārī, worthy to be loved.*

Rem.—Infinitives dependent upon adjectives are generally used as substantives, and as such may be referred to Rule XI. or XII.

#### SECTION IV.—MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

638. Verbs may be modified,

- I. By objects.
- II. By adverbial modifiers.

§ 1. *Objects.*

639. Verbs may be modified by objects. These are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns.
- 2) Infinitives or clauses used as nouns.

640. Verbs may take one or more oblique cases of nouns as *objects*; e. g., (1) Caiūs puellām laudāt, *Caius praises the girl*. (2) Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt, *Balbus shows the way to the boy*.

641. RULE XVI.—The *accusative* is used as the *direct object* of an action; e. g., Caiūs puellām laudāt, *Caius praises the girl*.

642. RULE XVII.—The *genitive* is used,

- 1) After verbs of pitying; e. g., Mīsērēmīnī sōciōrūm, *pity the allies*.
- 2) After verbs of remembering and forgetting; e. g., Mēmīnī vivōrūm, *I remember the living*.
- 3) After rēfert and intērest; e. g., Intērest omniūm, *it is the interest of all*.

REM.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the *accusative*; e. g., Mēmīnī Cinnām, *I remember Cinna*.

643. RULE XVIII.—The *dative* is used,

- 1) After *essē* in expressions denoting possession; e. g., Puērō est libēr, *the boy has a book* (lit., *there is a book to the boy*).
- 2) After the compounds of *essē*, except *possē*, to be able; e. g., Mihī prōfuīt, *it profited me*.
- 3) After the compounds of *bēnē*, *sātīs*, and *mālē*; e. g., Officiō suō sātīsfēcīt, *he has discharged his duty* (lit., *has done enough for*).
- 4) After the compounds of the prepositions, *ād*, *antē*, *cōn*, *īn*, *intēr*, *ōb*, *post*, *prae*, *sūb*, and *sūpēr*, together with a few others; e. g., Vēnī ūt mihī succurrās, *I have come that you may assist (succor) me*.
- 5) After verbs signifying *to command* or *obey*, *please* or *displease*, *favor* or *injure*, *serve* or *resist*, together with *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *believe*, *persuade*, &c.; e. g., Lēgibūs pārēt, *he obeys the laws* (is obedient to the laws).

644. RULE XIX.—The *ablative* is used,

- 1) After the deponent verbs, *ūtī*, *frui*, *fungī*, *pōtirī*, *vescī*,

*dignārī*,\* and their compounds; e. g., *Lactē vescantūr*, *they live upon milk*.

- 2) After verbs signifying *to abound* or *be destitute of*; e. g., *Nēmō aliōrūm opē cārērē pōtest*, *no one can be (do) without the assistance of others*.

645. RULE XX. *Two Accusatives*.—Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching*, and *concealing*, may take two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing; e. g., *Caesār frūmentū Aeduōs flagitābāt*, *Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui*.

646. RULE XXI. *Accusative and Genitive*.—Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *acquitting*, *warning*, and the like, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g., *Caiūm prōditiōnis accūsant*, *they accuse Caius of treachery*.

REM.—The genitive is perhaps best explained by making it depend upon the ablative *crīmīnē*, understood. See 214, Note.

647. RULE XXII. *Accusative and Genitive*.—The impersonal verbs of feeling, *mīsērēt*, *poenītēt*, *pūdēt*, *taedēt*, and *pīgēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling; e. g., *Taedēt mē vitae*, *I am weary of life* (lit., *it wearies me of life*).

648. RULE XXIII. *Accusative and Dative*.—Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the *direct object* and the dative of the *indirect object*; e. g., *Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt*, *Ballus shows the way to the boy*.

649. RULE XXIV. *Accusative and two Datives*.—Transitive verbs of *giving*, *sending*, *imputing* (*dārē*, *mittērē*, *vertērē*, &c.), sometimes take a *direct object* in the accusative, together with two *indirect objects* in the dative; e. g., *Rēgnūm suū Rōmānīs donō dēdit*, *he gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present* (for a present).

650. RULE XXV. *Accusative and Ablative*.—Verbs signifying *to separate from*, or *deprive of*, take the accusative of the *direct object*, together with the ablative of that from which it is separated, &c.; e. g., *Mē lucē privant*, *they deprive me of light*.

---

\* *Dignārī* takes a direct object in connection with the ablative; e. g., *Tū hōnōrē dignātur*, *he thinks you worthy of honor*.



651. RULE XXVI. *Two Datives*.—Intransitive verbs signifying *to be, to come, to go*, and the like, often take two datives, one denoting the object *to which*, and the other the object *for which*; e. g., *Caesārī auxīliō vēnit*, *he went to the assistance of Caesar*.

652. RULE XXVII. *Dative and Ablative*.—*Opūs est* and *ūsūs est*, as impersonal verbs signifying *need*, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the object needed; e. g., *Dūcē nōbīs ōpūs est*, *we need a leader* (lit., *there is need to us of a leader*).

653. Verbs sometimes take an infinitive or clause as object; e. g.,

1. *Cūpīt pūgnārē*, *he desires* (what?) *to fight*.
2. *Spērō tē essē beatūm*, *I hope* (what?) *that you are happy*.
3. *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt*, *I know not* (what?) *whence the sun derives its fire*.

654. RULE XXVIII. *Infinitive as Object*.—The infinitive mood, either alone or with other words connected with it, may be used as the object of a verb. (See examples above.)

REM.—The infinitive as *object* is used chiefly after verbs of *perceiving, declaring, desiring*, and the like.

655. RULE XXIX. *Subject of Infinitive*.—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; e. g., *Spērō tē essē beatūm*, *I hope you are happy*.

REM.—In this example *te*, which is the subject of *essē*, is put in the accusative according to rule.

656. RULE XXX. *Dependent Question as Object*.—An *indirect or dependent question* may be used as the object of a verb; e. g., *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt*, *I know not whence the sun derives its fire*.

657. The verb in dependent questions is put in the subjunctive, as in the above example.

658. RULE XXXI. *Object after Passive Verbs*.—Verbs in the passive voice are followed by the same cases as in the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive; e. g., (*Act.*) *Balbūm furtī accūsant*, *they accuse Balbus of theft*; (*Pass.*) *Balbūs furtī accūsātūr*, *Balbus is accused of theft*.

659. RULE XXXII. *Agent of Passive Verbs*.—After passive verbs, the agent of the action is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *āb* e. g., *Puēr a Caiō dōcētūr*, *the boy is taught by Caius*; except.

The second periphrastic conjugation (425), which takes the dative of the agent; e. g., *Mihī scribendū est, I must write.*

660. RULE XXXIII. *Impersonal Passive Verbs.*—Verbs which have no direct object in the active voice, are only used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *Mihī crēditūr, I am believed* (lit., *it is believed to me*).

## § II. Adverbial Modifiers.

661. Verbs often take adverbial modifiers: these are,

- 1) Adverbs.
- 2) Adverbial expressions.

662. Verbs may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Fortitēr pūgnāt, he fights bravely.*

See Rule VIII.

REM.—Adverbial modifiers are the same whether the verb is *active* or *passive*.

663. Verbs may be modified by adverbial expressions: these are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions.
- 2) Infinitives, or dependent propositions.

664. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) used as adverbial modifiers, may be referred to the following classes, viz.:

- 1) Adverbial expressions of *manner, means, &c.*
- 2) Adverbial expressions of *time.*
- 3) Adverbial expressions of *place.*
- 4) Miscellaneous adverbial expressions.

665. The oblique cases of nouns (and sometimes of adjectives) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *manner, means, &c.*

666. RULE XXXIV. *Manner, Means, &c.*—The *manner* or *cause* of an action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the ablative; e. g., *Dōmīnū glādiō occīdit, he killed his master with a sword.*

667. RULE XXXV. *Price.*—Price, when expressed by nouns, is usually put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, usually in the genitive; e. g., (1) *Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt, the avaricious man will sell his country for gold*; (2) *Avārūs pēcūniām magni aestimāt, the avaricious man values money highly.*

668. The oblique cases of nouns may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *time*.

669. RULE XXXVI. *Time*.—Time *when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; e. g., *Hiēmē ursūs dormīt, the bear sleeps in winter.*

670. RULE XXXVII. *Length of Time*.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g., *Caiūs annūm unūm vixīt, Caius lived one year*

671. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *place*.

672. RULE XXXVIII.—The name of a town where any thing is, or is done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative; e. g., (1) *Caiūs Cortōnæ vixīt, Caius lived at Cortona*; (2) *Caiūs Tībūrē vixīt, Caius lived at Tibur.*

673. RULE XXXIX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town, is generally put in the ablative with a preposition; e. g., *Ursūs īn antrō dormīt, the bear sleeps in a cave.*

674. RULE XL.—After verbs of motion,

1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, otherwise by the accusative with one; e. g., (1) *Rōmām vēnīrē, to come to Rome*; (2) *īn Itāliām vēnīrē, to come into Italy.*

2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, otherwise by the ablative with one; e. g., (1) *Rōmā vēnīrē, to come from Rome*; (2) *Ab Itāliā vēnīrē, to come from Italy.*

675. RULE XLI.—*Dōmūs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *bellī*, *hūmī*, and *mīlītiæ*, are used like names of towns; e. g., *Caiūs rūrē rēdiīt, Caius returned from the country*; *Balbūs ēt dōmī ēt mīlītiæ fuit, Balbus was with me both at home and on service.*

676. RULE XLII.—The supine in *ūm*, as a verbal noun in the accusative, follows verbs of motion to express the purpose or object

of that motion; e. g., *Mittit lēgātōs pācēm pētītūm*, *he sends ambassadors to sue for peace.*

677. The ablative absolute and the oblique cases of nouns with prepositions are used to express various adverbial relations.

678. RULE XLIII. *Ablative Absolute*.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, are put in the ablative absolute; e. g., *Caesār victīs hostībūs*, *Caesar having conquered his enemies* (or, *when he had conquered*; lit., *his enemies being conquered*).

REM.—The ablative absolute generally expresses either the adverbial relation of *time* (as in the above example) or that of *cause*; sometimes, however, it adds an attendant circumstance.

679. RULE XLIV. *Prepositions with Accusative*.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad*, *adversūs*, *antē*, *apūd*, *cirēa* or *circūm*, *cīs* or *citra*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infra*, *intēr*, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *ob*, *pēnēs*, *pēr*, *pōnē*, *post*, *praetēr*, *prōpē*, *propētēr*, *sēcundūm*, *sūprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*, *versūs* (*rare*).

680. RULE XLV. *Prepositions with Ablative*.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A* (*āb* or *abs*), *absquē*, *cōrām*, *cūm*, *dē*, *ē* or *ex*, *pālām*, *prae*, *prō*, *sīnē*, *tēnūs*.

681. RULE XLVI. *Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative*.—The five prepositions, *clām*, *īn*, *sūb*, *subtēr*, and *sūpēr*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM. 1.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Sūpēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion, and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

REM. 2.—Prepositions in composition often govern the same cases as when they stand alone.

682. Verbs may be modified by infinitives or by dependent propositions.

683. RULE XLVII. *Infinitive as Modifier of Verb*.—The infinitive mood may be used after verbs denoting *custom*, *ability*, and the like; e. g., *Nōn faciēre possūm*, *I am not able to do*, &c.

684. Dependent propositions, as adverbial modifiers, are geno-

rally introduced by conjunctions, and express a great variety of relations, as *time, place, manner, condition, &c.*

685. Dependent propositions take the verb,

- 1) Sometimes in the indicative; e. g., *Itēr fāciēbām, quūm hās littērās dābām, I was making a journey when I gave these letters.*
- 2) But more commonly in the subjunctive; e. g., *Sī quīd hābeāt, dābit, if he has any thing, he will give it.*

#### SECTION V.—MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.

686. Adverbs are modified by other adverbs; e. g., *Sātīs bēnē scripsit, he has written sufficiently well.*

687. Prepositions and conjunctions are connectives, and neither modify nor are modified.

688. Interjections are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address, and have no grammatical influence upon the rest of the sentence.

### CHAPTER III.

#### USE OF MOODS, PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

689. THE indicative is used in positive assertions; e. g., *Pačr lādīt, the boy plays.*

REM.—The indicative is commonly used in principal propositions, but sometimes in dependent ones.

690. The subjunctive is used both in principal and dependent propositions.

691. I. In principal propositions the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express a wish or a command; e. g., *Scribāt, he may write, may he write, or let him write.*
- 2) To express an affirmation *doubtfully or conditionally*; e. g., *Dārēt, he would give it (i. e. if he had it, perhaps).*

692. II. In dependent propositions.

- 1) With *ūt, nē, quō, quīn, quōmīnūs*, to express *purpose or*

- consequence; e. g., *Vēnit ūt scribāt*, *he has come to write*; *Caiō nihīl obstat quōmīnūs sit beātūs*, *nothing prevents Caius from being happy (by which he should be less happy)*
- 2) With *quām* (*cūm*), when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g., *Quae cūm itā sint*, *since these things are so*
- 3) With *licēt*, although, *quāsi*, *tanquām*, *ac si*, as if, *dūm*, *mōdō*, *dummōdō*, provided, if only, *quāmvīs*, however much, however; e. g., *Imprōbūs itā vivit, quāsi nesciāt*, &c., *the wicked (man) lives, as if he did not know, &c.*; *Nēmō, quāmvīs sit locūplēs*, *no one, however wealthy he may be.*
- 4) In conditional sentences, to represent the condition either as *simply possible* or as *impossible*; e. g., *Sī quid hābeāt, dābit*, *if he has any thing, he will give it.* *Sī quid hāberēt, dārēt*, *if he had any thing, he would give it.*
- 5) In *indirect* or *dependent* questions; e. g., *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt*, *I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*
- 6) In relative clauses, (1) to express *purpose* or *result*, and (2) to define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., (1) *Lēgātōs misērunt quī dicērent*, *they sent ambassadors to say*; (2) *Sunt quī pūtent*, *there are (some) who think.*

693. *Subjunctive Tenses in Dependent Propositions.*—The subjunctive, (1) when dependent upon a present tense (*pres.*, *perf. def.*, or *fut.*) is put in the *present* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *perfect* to denote a completed action; and (2) when dependent upon a past tense (*imperf.*, *perf. indef.*, or *pluperf.*), in the *imperfect* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *pluperfect* to denote a completed action; e. g.,

1. *Nesciō quid dicāt*, *I know not what he is saying.*
2. *Nesciō quid dixērīt*, *I know not what he said.*
3. *Nesciuit quid dicērēt*, *I knew not what he said.*
4. *Nesciuit quid dixissēt*, *I knew not what he had said.*

694. The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., *Portās claudē*, *shut the gates.*

695. The infinitive, which expresses the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number, is used,

- 1) As the subject of another verb; e. g., *Difficilē est iudicārē*, *it is difficult to judge.*

- 2) As the object of another verb; e. g., Cúpiő sàpèřě, *I desire to be wise.*
- 3) As the modifier of an adjective or verb; e. g., (1) Dignūs āmāri, *worthy to be loved*; (2) Nōn făcěřě possūm, *I am not able to do, &c.*

696. Participles, gerunds, and supines are followed by the various cases of nouns like the other parts of verbs. In regard to their own government, it must be observed,

- 1) That participles, like adjectives, agree with substantives.
- 2) That gerunds are governed like the same cases of substantives.
- 3) That supines, as verbal nouns, are governed like the same cases of other nouns.





## DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

---

### ENGLISH IDIOM.

- 1 To think nothing of
- 2 To value highly.\*
- 3 To think little of.† }  
To hold cheap. }
- 4 No stability.

*Some time.*

*Much good.*

*How much pleasure.*

### LATIN IDIOM.

To reckon on nothing (*nihili ducere* or *facere*).

To value at a high price (*magni aestimare*).

To value at a little price (*parvi aestimare*).

Nothing of stability (*nihil stabilitatis*).

Something of time (*aliquid temporis*).

Much of good (*multum boni*).

How much of pleasure (*quantum voluptatis*).

REM.—Hence *no*, *some* (when they denote quantity, not number), *much*, *how much*, are to be translated by *nihil*, *aliquid*, *multum*, *quantum*, followed by the *gen.*

5. He did it *unwillingly*.

He *unwilling* did it.

6. *It* is disgraceful to lie.

To lie is disgraceful.

7. It is the *part*  
       — *duty*  
       — *business*  
       — *mark*  
       — *character* } of a wise man.

It is of a wise man.

8. To condemn a man *to death*.

To condemn a man *of the head*.

9. As many as *possible*.  
       — *he can or could*. }  
       The greatest *possible*. }  
       — *he can or could*. }

As the most (*quam plurimi*).

As the greatest (*quam maximus*).

[That is, *as many as the most* : *as great as greatest*, &c.]

10. On the *top* of the mountain.  
       In the *middle* of the water.

On the mountain *highest*.

In the water *middle* (in *summo monte* ; in *media aqua*).

\* To value *very highly* (*maximi aestimare*).

† The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the *of* for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

## ENGLISH IDIOM.

11. Is going to bed.  
 12. It is hard *to say*.  
 13. Whilst they were (are, &c.) playing.  
 14. The intention of writing a letter.  
 15. We must cultivate virtue.  
 16. Caius must write.  
 17. We must believe Caius.  
 18. The ways of expressing the *purpose* are,

He comes to see the games.

19. *a)* I may go.  
       *b)* I might *have gone*.  
 20. *a)* I ought to go.  
       *b)* I ought to have gone.

## LATIN IDIOM.

Is going *to lie down* (*cubitum*, sup.)  
 It is hard *in saying* (*difficile est dictu*; supine).

During playing (*inter ludendum*).

The intention of a letter *to-be-written* (*scribendae epistolae*).

Virtue is *to-be-cultivated* (*colenda est virtus*).

It is *to-be-written* by Caius (*Caius scribendum est*).

It is *to-be-believed* to Caius (*credendum est Caio*).

- { *(a)* Venit ut ludos spectet.  
   *(b)* Venit ludos spectatum (*sup.*).  
   *(c)* Venit ludos spectaturus.  
   *(d)* Venit ad ludos spectandos.  
       To which add,  
   *(e)* Venit causa (*for the purpose*)  
       *ludorum spectandorum*; and  
   *(f)* Instead of *ut*, the relative  
       may be used;

He sent ambassadors, *qui pacem petèrent* (*to sue for peace*).

Mihi ire licet (*it is permitted to me to go*).

Mihi ire licuit (*it was permitted to me to go*).

Me ire oportet.

Me ire oportuit.

## CAUTIONS.

---

- a. *Him, her, them* (or *he, she, they*, when they are to be translated by the *accusative*), must be translated into Latin by the proper case of *suī*, when they and the *nominative of the verb* stand for the *same person*. Also, in the same case, *his, hers, its, theirs*, must be translated by *suūs*.
- b. In a sentence with *that* dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated into Latin by the *present infinitive*, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as *over before the time* of the principal verb.
- c. *Would, should*, after a past tense are future forms:
 

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{He says that he will come.} \\ \text{He said that he would come.} \end{array} \right\}$$
- d. *Thing* should be expressed by *res* (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant:
 

Thus, of many things, not *multōrum*, but *multārum rerum*.
- e. *Cum* is written *after*, and as *one word with* the ablatives *me, te, &c.* *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*.
- f. Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition*; for instance, *to smile at, &c.*
- g. *Such* in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. It should then be translated into Latin by *tantus, quantus*; not *talis, qualis*.
- h. *That* or *those*, when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.
- i. When *that* introduces a *consequence*, *that not* is *ut non*, not *ne*.
 

$$\text{That—not} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{for a purpose ..... ne.} \\ \text{for a consequence ... ut non.} \end{array} \right.$$
- j. After verbs of *fearing*, the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated into Latin by the *present* or *imperfect subjunctive*, with *ut* or *nē*.
- k. *Who, what, which*, are often *dependent interrogatives*, especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*

- l. *May, might*, sometimes mean *can, could*, and must be translated by *possūm*.
- m. The *perf. infin.* must be translated into Latin by the *present infin.* after *might, could, ought*, unless the action is to be represented as *over* before the time to which *might, could, &c.* refer.
- n. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used *adjectively*, and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.
- o. *What* is sometimes used for *how* (*quam*) sometimes for *how great* (*quantus*).
- p. *For* and *as* are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.
- q. When *one, two, &c.* mean *one, two, &c. apiece*, or *for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive* numerals, *singŭli, binī, &c.*
- r. *I have* to do it, must be translated by the part. in *dus*.  
(*Eng.*) With whom we *have* to live.  
(*Lat.*) With whom *it is to-be-lived* (*quibuscum vivendum est*).
- s. *It is*, followed by what is in form the *infin. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness, or something intended*.
- t. But *is to be* sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness, or intention*, but *possibility*; as, 'the passage *is to be found* in the fifth book,' = the passage *may or can* be found in the fifth book.
- u. A *present participle* must be translated into Latin by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.
- v. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.*, when the verb is *deponent*.
- w. When the action was not done *in*, but only near a town, *at* must be translated by *ad* or *apud*.
- x. *One* often means *some one* (*aliquis*) or *a certain one* (*quidam*).
- y. *Will* and *would, will not* and *would not*, are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.  
They are to be so translated when for  
*will, would*, we may substitute  
*is* (are, &c.) *willing, was* (were, &c.) *willing*.
- z. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case; and then by what preposition or what case.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

### A.

*A*, *āb*, *abs* (*prep. with abl.*), *from, by*.  
*Abīrē*, *i*, *it*, *to go away, depart*.  
*Absolvērē*, *v*, *ūt*, *to acquit*.  
*Ac*, *and*.  
*Accēdērē*, *cess*, *cess*, *to approach*.  
*Accīpērē* (*iō*), *cēp*, *cept*, *to receive, accept*.  
*Accipītēr*, *trīs*, *hawk*.  
*Accūsārē*, *āv*, *āt*, *to accuse*.  
*Acēr*, *ācrīs*, *ācrē*, *sharp, severe*.  
*Achillēs*, *is*, *Achilles, a Grecian hero*.  
*Acīēs*, *ēi*, *line of battle*.  
*Ad* (*prep. with acc.*), *to*.  
*Adducērē* (*ad and ducēre*), *dux*, *duct*, *to lead to*.  
*Adeō*, *so, in such a manner*.  
*Adessē* (*ad and esse*), *fu*, *fūt*, *to be present*.  
*Adjumentū*, *i*, *aid, help*.  
*Adjūvārē*, *jūv*, *jūt*, *to aid, help*.  
*Admīrātiō*, *ōnīs*, *admiration*.  
*Admōnērē*, *u*, *it*, *to admonish, warn*.  
*Adulātiō*, *ōnīs*, *flattery*.  
*Adulātōr*, *ōrīs*, *flatterer*.  
*Adventūs* (*advenire*), *ūs*, *approach*.  
*Aedificārē*, *āv*, *āt*, *to build*.  
*Aedificiū*, *i*, *building, edifice*.  
*Aenēas*, *ae*, *Aeneas, a Trojan prince*.  
*Aequitās*, *ātis*, *equality, justice*.  
*Aestās*, *ātīs*, *summer*.  
*Aestimārē*, *āv*, *āt*, *to value, prize*;  
*māgnū aestimārē*, *to prize highly*.  
*Afferrē* (*ad and ferre*), *attūl*, *allāt*, *to bring to*.  
*Agēr*, *āgrī*, *field*.  
*Agērē*, *ēg*, *act, to drive, lead, do*;  
*grātiās āgērē*, *to render thanks*.  
*Aguūs*, *i*, *lamb*.  
*Agricolā* *ae*, *husbandman*.  
*Alīquandō*, *some time*.

*Alīquīs*, *quā*, *quid*, *any one, any, some*; *āliquid tempōrīs*, *some time*.  
*Aliūs*, *ā*, *ūd* (113. R.), *other*.  
*Alpēs*, *iūm*, *the Alps*.  
*Altūs*, *ā*, *ūm*, *high, lofty*.  
*Amārē*, *āv*, *āt*, *to love*.  
*Ambītūs*, *ūs*, *bribery*.  
*Ambulārē*, *āv*, *īt*, *to walk*.  
*Amēricānūs*, *ā*, *ūm*, *American*.  
*Amīcitiā*, *ae*, *friendship*.  
*Amīcūs*, *i*, *friend*.  
*Amittērē*, *mīs*, *miss, to lose*.  
*Amphibitū*, *i*, *an amphibious animal*.  
*Amplius* (*adv.*), *more, further*.  
*Amplūs*, *ā*, *ūm*, *ample, large*.  
*Au*, *interrog. part.*, *used in double questions*, 482.  
*Anchīsēs*, *ae*, *Anchises, the father of Aeneas*.  
*Anguis*, *īs*, *m.* or *f.*, *snake*.  
*Angustiae*, *ārūm*, *a narrow pass, defile*.  
*Animāl*, *ālīs*, *animal*.  
*Animūs*, *i*, *mind, soul*.  
*Annuērē*, *nu*, *nūt*, *to assent, to give assent*.  
*Annūs*, *i*, *year*.  
*Antē* (*prep. with acc.*), *before*.  
*Antea* (*adv.*), *before*.  
*Antrūm*, *i*, *cave*.  
*Anulūs*, *i*, *ring*.  
*Apērīrē*, *ēru*, *ert*, *to uncover, to open*.  
*Apprōpinquārē*, *āv*, *āt*, *to approach*.  
*Aquā*, *ae*, *water*.  
*Aquārī*, *āt*, *to bring water*.  
*Aquilā*, *ae*, *eagle*.  
*Arā*, *ae*, *altar*.  
*Arārē*, *āv*, *āt*, *to plough*.  
*Arbōr*, *ōrīs*, *f.*, *tree*.  
*Argentūm*, *i*, *silver*.

Armĭgĕr, ĭ, *armor-bearer*  
 Arrĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), ĭpu, ept, *to snatch, seize.*  
 Ars, artĭs, *art.*  
 Arx, arcĭs, *citadel, tower.*  
 Ascĕniŭs, ĭ, *Ascanius, son of Aeneas.*  
 Asinŭs, ĭ, *ass.*  
 Aspergĕrĕ (or adspĕrgĕrĕ), ers, ers, *to sprinkle.*  
 At, *but.*  
 Athĕnae, ārum, *Athens, city of Greece.*  
 Athĕniensĭs (Athĕnae), ĕ, *Athenian, pl., the Athenians.*  
 Atquĭ (conj.), *but, now (as used in reasoning).*  
 Attĕmĕn, *but, but yet.*  
 Attingĕrĕ (ad and tangĕrĕ), tĭg, tact, *to attain, reach.*  
 Auctŏr, ōrĭs, *author.*  
 Auctumnŭs, ĭ, *autumn.*  
 Audax, ācĭs, *daring, audacious.*  
 Audĭrĕ, ĭv, ĭt, *to hear.*  
 Augĕrĕ, aux, auct, *to increase.*  
 Aureŭs (aurĕm), ā, ŭm, *golden.*  
 Aurŭm, ĭ, *gold.*  
 Aut, or; aut—aut, *either—or.*  
 Autĕm, *but.*  
 Auxĭliŭm, ĭ, *aid.*  
 Avāricĭā, ae, *avarice.*  
 Avārus, ā, ŭm, *avaricious.*  
 Avĭs, ĭs, *bird.*

## B.

Balbŭs, ĭ, *Balbus, a man's name*  
 Barbā, ae, *beard.*  
 Beātĕ (beātus), *happily.*  
 Beātŭs, ā, ŭm, *happy.*  
 Bellŭm, ĭ, *war.*  
 Bĕnĕ, *well.*  
 Bĕnĕficiŭm, ĭ, *benefit.*  
 Bĕnĭgnŭs, ā, ŭm, *kind.*  
 Bibĕrĕ, bib, bibĭt, *to drink.*  
 Biennĭum, ĭ, *two years, space of two years.*  
 Bonŭs, ā, ŭm, *good.*  
 Brāchiŭm, ĭ, *arm.*  
 Brĕvĭs, ĕ, *short.*  
 Brŭtŭs, ĭ, *Brutus, a Roman consul.*

## C.

Cādĕrĕ, cĕcid, cās, *to fall.*  
 Caecŭs, ā, ŭm, *blind.*  
 Caesār, ārĭs, *Caesar, a distinguished Roman general.*  
 Caiŭs, ĭ, *Caius, a man's name.*  
 Cālāmĭtās, ātis, *misfortune, calamity*  
 Candĭdŭs, ā, ŭm, *white.*  
 Cānĕrĕ, cĕcĭn, cant, *to sing.*  
 Cānis, ĭs, c., *dog.*  
 Cantārĕ (canĕre), āv, āt, *to sing.*  
 Cāpĕrĕ (iŏ), cĕp, capt, *to take, receive.*  
 Captivŭs, ā, ŭm, *captive.*  
 Cāpŭt, ĭtis, *head; cāpĭtis, of the head, to death.*  
 Carpĕrĕ, carps, carpt, *to gather, to pluck, to card.*  
 Carthāgĭniensĭs (Carthāgo), ĕ, *Carthaginian.*  
 Carthāgŏ, ĭnis, *Carthage, an ancient city in northern Africa.*  
 Castĭgārĕ, āv, āt, *to chastise.*  
 Castrā, ōrum, *camp.*  
 Cātĕnā, ae, *chain.*  
 Cāvĕrĕ, cāv, caut, *to take care, to be on one's guard against.*  
 Cĕlĕbĕr, brĭs, brĕ, *celebrated*  
 Cĕlĕrĭtĕr, *quickly.*  
 Certĕmĕn, ĭnis, *contest.*  
 Certŭs, ā, ŭm, *certain.*  
 Christiānŭs, ĭ, *Christian.*  
 Cĭbŭs, ĭ, *food.*  
 Cĭcĕrŏ, ōnis, *Cicero, the great Roman orator.*  
 Cĭngĕrĕ, nx, nct, *to surround.*  
 Circumdārĕ (circum and dāre), dĕd, dāt, *to surround.*  
 Cĭs, *on this side.*  
 Cĭvilĭs (cĭvĭs), ĕ, *civil.*  
 Cĭvis, ĭs, *citizen.*  
 Cĭvĭtās (cĭvĭs), ātis, *state.*  
 Claudĕrĕ, claus, claus, *to shut.*  
 Clĕmens, entĭs, *mild, merciful.*  
 Clĕmentĭā, ae, *mildness, clemency.*  
 Clĭpeŭs, ĭ, *shield.*  
 Coelŭm, ĭ, *heaven, the heavens.*  
 Coenā, ae, *supper, feast.*  
 Cŏgitārĕ, āv, āt, *to think, to think about.*  
 Cŏgnĭtŭs, ā, ŭm, *known.*

Cōgnosecēre, nōv, nīt, *to ascertain.*  
 Cōlēre, cōlu, cult, *to till, cultivate, practise.*  
 Collōquium, ī, *conference.*  
 Cōlōr ōris, *color.*  
 Cōlumbā, ae, *dove.*  
 Committēre, mīs, miss, *to engage; proeliūm committēre, to engage battle.*  
 Compārāre, āv, āt, *to procure, raise, levy.*  
 Compellēre, pūl, puls, *to compel, drive.*  
 Compescēre, escu, *to restrain, repress.*  
 Complēre, ēv, ēt, *to fill.*  
 Comprēhendēre, nd, ns, *to arrest.*  
 Concertāre, āv, āt, *to contend, quarrel.*  
 Conciliūm, ī, *council, meeting.*  
 Condēre (con [cūm] and dāre), dīd, dīt, *to build, found.*  
 Conditio, ōnis, *condition, terms.*  
 Confūgēre (iō), fūg, *to flee for refuge.*  
 Conjux, ūgis, *spouse, wife, husband.*  
 Conservāre, āv, āt, *to preserve.*  
 Consiliūm, ī, *advice, instruction.*  
 Conspicēre (iō), spex, spect, *to see, discover.*  
 Constāt (impers.), *it is known, is an admitted fact.*  
 Constituēre, u, ūt, *to arrange, appoint.*  
 Construēre, strux, struct, *to build, construct.*  
 Consul, ūlis, *consul, the Roman chief magistrate.* [advice].  
 Consulēre, sūlu, sult, *to consult, ask.*  
 Contemnēre, ps, pt, *to despise.*  
 Contentūs, ā, ūm, *contented, content.*  
 Continēre, u, tent, *to restrain, confine.*  
 Continuūs, ā, ūm, *successive.*  
 Contrā (prep. with acc.), *against.*  
 Convēnīre (cōn [cūm] and venīre), vēn, vent, *to come together.*  
 Convertēre, t, s, *to turn, convert.*  
 Cōpia, arūm, *forces.*  
 Cōquēre, x, ct, *to cook, to bake, to ripen.*  
 Cōr, cordis, n., *heart.*  
 Cōrām (prep. with abl.), *before, in presence of; adv., openly, in person.*

Cōrōnā, ae, *crown, garland.*  
 Corpūs, ōris, *body.*  
 Corrīgēre, rex, rect, *to correct.*  
 Corrupēre, rūp, rupt, *to mislead, corrupt.*  
 Crābrō, ōnis, *wasp.*  
 Crēbēr, brā, brūm, *frequent.*  
 Crēdēre, crēdīd, crēdīt, *to believe, put confidence in.*  
 Crescēre, crēv, crēt, *to increase, to wax (as moon).*  
 Culpā, ae, *fault, blame.*  
 Cūm (prep. with abl.), *with.*  
 Cunctūs, ā, ūm, *all as a whole.*  
 Cūpēre (iō), īv (i), īt, *to desire.*  
 Cūpiditās, ātis, *desire, passion.*  
 Cūpidūs, ā, ūm, *desirous of.*  
 Cūrāre (cura), āv, āt, *to take care of.*  
 Currēre, cūcurr, curs, *to run.*  
 Currūs, ūs, *chariot.*  
 Custōdirē (custos), īv, īt, *to guard.*

## D.

Damnāre, āv, āt, *to condemn.*  
 Dāre, dēd, dāt, *to give.*  
 Dē (prep. with abl.), *from, about, concerning.*  
 Dēcēm, ten.  
 Dēcernēre, crēv, crēt, *to decree, decide.*  
 Dēcimūs, ā, ūm, *tenth.*  
 Dēcipēre (iō), cēp, cept, *to deceive.*  
 Dēdēre, dēdīd, dēdīt, *to surrender.*  
 Dēfendēre, d, s, *to defend.*  
 Dēglūbēre, ups, upt, *to skin, flay.*  
 Dēlēre, lēv, lēt, *to destroy.*  
 Dēmōstrāre, āv, āt, *to show, demonstrate.*  
 Dēprēhendēre, d, s, *to seize, catch.*  
 Dētērrēre, u, īt, *to deter, prevent.*  
 Dēvincēre, vic, viet, *to conquer.*  
 Dīcere, dix, dict, *to say.*  
 Dīdō, ōnis, *Dido, the foundress of Carthage.*  
 Dīēs, ēī, dāy.  
 Dīficilis, ē, *difficult.*  
 Dīgnūs, ā, ūm, *worthy.*  
 Dīlāniāre, āv, āt, *to tear in pieces.*  
 Dīlīgens, tīs, *diligent.*



Diligentia (*diligens*), *ae*, *diligence*.  
 Dimitterē, *mī*s, *miss*, *to dismiss*.  
 Discerē, *didic*, *to learn*.  
 Discipulū, *i*, *pupil*.  
 Disjungērē, *x*, *ct*, *to separate*.  
 Dividērē, *vīs*, *vīs*, *to divide*.  
 Divinū, *ā*, *ū*m, *divine*.  
 Divitiacū, *i*, *Divitiacus*, *a man's name*.  
 Docērē, *u*, *t*, *to teach*.  
 Dolērē, *u*, *it*, *to grieve*.  
 Dolor, *ō*rīs, *pain*, *grief*, *sorrow*.  
 Dominū, *i*, *master as owner*.  
 Dōmū, *ūs* or *i*, *f.*, *house*; *dōmī*, *at home*.  
 Dōnārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to give*, *present*.  
 Dōnū, *i*, *gift*.  
 Dormirē, *iv*, *it*, *to sleep*.  
 Dūbitārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to doubt*.  
 Dūcentī, *ae*, *ā*, *two hundred*.  
 Dūcērē, *dux*, *duct*, *to lead*.  
 Dūm, *while*.  
 Dummodō, *if*, *but*, *provided*.  
 Duō, *ae*, *ō*, *two*.  
 Duōdecim, *twelve*.  
 Dūrārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to last*.  
 Dux, *dūcīs*, *leader*, *guide*.

## E.

Edērē, *ēd*, *ēs* (420), *to eat*.  
 Educērē (*e* and *ducere*), *dux*, *duct*, *to lead forth*.  
 Efficērē (*iō*), *fēc*, *fect*, *to effect*, *accomplish*.  
 Egō, *meī*, *&c.*, *I*.  
 Elegantiā, *ae*, *elegance*.  
 Elēphās, *antīs*, *m.*, *elephant*.  
 Emērē, *ēm*, *empt*, *to buy*, *purchase*.  
 Enī, *for*, *indeed*.  
 Enūmērārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to enumerate*.  
 Epistolā, *ae*, *letter*, *epistle*.  
 Epitōmē, *ēs*, *abridgment*.  
 Equēs, *itīs*, *horseman*.  
 Equitātū, *ūs*, *cavalry*.  
 Equū, *i*, *horse*.  
 Ergā (*prep. with acc.*), *towards*.  
 Ergō (*conj.*), *therefore*.  
 Errārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to err*.  
 Erūdirē, *iv*, *it*, *to instruct*.  
 Essē, *fu*, *fūt*, *to be*; *est*, *is*, *it is*.  
 Et and; *et*—*et*, *both*—*and*.

Etiām, *also*, *even*; *ētiām* atquē *ētiām*, *again and again*.  
 Evertērē, *rt*, *rs*, *to pull down*, *to overthrow*.  
 Evōlārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to fly away*, *to flee from*.  
 Ex (*prep. with abl.*), *from*.  
 Excitārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to excite*, *arouse*.  
 Exclamārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to exclaim*, *cry out*.  
 Excruciārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to torture*.  
 Exercērē, *u*, *it*, *to practise*, *exercise*.  
 Exercitū, *ūs*, *army*.  
 Exorārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to supplicate*.  
 Expellērē, *pū*l, *puls*, *to expel*, *banish*.  
 Expōnērē, *pō*su, *pō*sīt, *to set forth*, *explain*.  
 Expūgnārē (*ex* and *pūgnare*), *āv*, *āt*, *to storm*.  
 Expectārē, *āv*, *āt*, *to expect*.

## F.

Fābulōsū, *ā*, *ū*m (*fabūla*), *fabulous*.  
 Fācērē (*iō*), *fēc*, *fact*, *to do*, *make*, *act*.  
 Fāciēs, *ēi*, *face*, *appearance*.  
 Fācilis, *ē*, *easy*.  
 Fallax (*fallere*), *ācīs*, *false*, *deceptive*.  
 Fāmēs, *is*, *hunger*.  
 Faustulū, *i*, *Faustulus*, *an Italian shepherd*.  
 Fāvērē, *fāv*, *faut*, *to favor*.  
 Felicitās, *ātis*, *happiness*.  
 Ferrē, *tū*l, *lāt* (414), *to bear*.  
 Ferrū, *i*, *iron*.  
 Fidēlis, *ē*, *faithful*.  
 Fidēs, *ēi*, *faith*, *fidelity*; *fidēm* vīd  
 lārē, *to break one's word*.  
 Fiērī, *fact* (416), *to become*, *be made*.  
 Figūrā, *ae*, *figure*.  
 Filiā, *ae* (*D. pl. filiābūs*), *daughter*.  
 Filiū, *i*, *son*.  
 Finirē (*finis*), *iv*, *it*, *to finish*.  
 Finis, *is* (*m. and f. sing., m. pl.*), *end*.  
 Firmū, *ā*, *ū*m, *firm*.  
 Flāgitium, *i*, *crime*.  
 Flērē, *flev*, *flēt*, *to weep*.  
 Flōrērē (*flō*), *u*, *to flourish*, *bloom*.  
 Flōrescērē (*flōrere*), *to begin to bloom*.



Flōs, ōris, *flower*.  
 Fluērē, x, x, *to flow*.  
 Flūmēn, inīs, *river, stream*.  
 Foedūs, ēris, *treaty*.  
 Fortis, ē, *brave*.  
 Fortitēr (*fortis*), *bravely*.  
 Fortunā, ae, *fortune*.  
 Frangērē, frēg, fract, *to break*.  
 Frāter, trīs, *brother*.  
 Fraudārē, āv, āt, *to defraud*.  
 Frētūs, ā, ūm, *relying on*.  
 Frīgūs, ōris, *cold*.  
 Frūtex, icīs, m., *shrub*.  
 Fūgā, ae, *flight*.  
 Fūgārē (*fūgā*), āv, āt, *to put to flight*.  
 Fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee*.  
 Fundūs, i, *estate, farm*.  
 Fungī, funct, *to discharge, fulfil*.  
 Furtūm, i, *theft*.  
 Futūrūs, ā, ūm, *future*.

## G.

Gallicūs (*Galliā*), ā, ūm, *Gallic*.  
 Gallūs, i, a *Gaul*.  
 Gēnēr, i, *son-in-law*.  
 Gēnūs, ēris, *kind, nature*.  
 Gērērē, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage (as war)*.  
 Germāniā, ae, *Germany*.  
 Glādiūs, i, *sword*.  
 Glōriā, ae, *glory*.  
 Graeci, ōrūm, *the Greeks*.  
 Grānūm, i, *grain*.  
 Grātiā, ae, *gratitude, favor*; pl., *thanks*.  
 Grāvis, ē, *heavy*.  
 Grex, ēgis, m. *flock, herd*.

## H.

Hābērē, u, it, *to have*.  
 Hābitārē (*habēre*), āv, āt, *to inhabit*.  
 Haedūs, i, *kid*.  
 Hannibāl, ālis, *Hannibal*.  
 Hastā, ae, *spear*.  
 Hērōs, ōis, *hero*.  
 Hesternūs, ā, ūm, *of yesterday*.  
 Hic, haec, hōc, *this*.  
 Hiems, ēmīs, *winter*.  
 Histōriā, ae, *history*.

Hōmō, inīs, *man*.  
 Hōnōr, ōris, *honor*.  
 Hortulūs (*hortūs*), *little garden*.  
 Hortūs, i, *garden*.  
 Hostis, is, *enemy*.  
 Hūmānūs, ā, ūm, *human, natural to man*.  
 Hūmērūs, i, *shoulder*.

## I.

Ibī, *there*.  
 Idēm, eādēm, idem, *same*.  
 Ideō, *therefore*.  
 Igītūr, *therefore*.  
 Ignārūs, ā, ūm, *ignorant*.  
 Ignāvūs, ā, ūm, *indolent, cowardly*.  
 Ignis, is, m., *fire, heat*.  
 Ignōrātiō, ōnis, *ignorance*.  
 Ignoscērē, ōv, ōt, *to pardon*.  
 Illē, illā, illūd, *that, he, she, it*.  
 Illustrārē, āv, āt, *to illumine, to enlighten*.  
 Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense*.  
 Immergērē, rs, rs, *to plunge into*.  
 Immōbilis, ē, *immovable*.  
 Immortālis, ē, *immortal*.  
 Impēdirē, iv, it, *to impede, hinder*.  
 Impendērē, *to overhang, threaten*.  
 Impērārē, āv, āt, *to command*; imperātā, ōrūm, *commands*.  
 Impērātōr (*impērāre*), ōris, *commander*.  
 Impētūs, ūs, *attack*.  
 Impiūs, ā, ūm, *impious*.  
 Imprōbūs, ā, ūm, *bad, wicked*.  
 Imprūdēns, entīs, *imprudent*.  
 In (*prep. with acc. or abl.*), with acc., *into, to, against*; with abl., *in*.  
 Incendērē, d, s, *to set on fire, to burn*.  
 Inceptūm, i, *beginning*.  
 Incertūs, ā, ūm, *uncertain*.  
 Incōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *unknown*.  
 Incōlā (*in and colēre*), ae, *inhabitant*.  
 Incōlūmis, ē, *safe, uninjured*.  
 Incrēdibilis (*in and credēre*), ē, *incredible*.  
 Indicērē, dix, dict, *to declare (as war)*.  
 Indignūs, ā, ūm, *uncorthy*.  
 Indoctūs, ā, ūm, *unlearned*.

Indulgērē, *ls, lt, to indulge.*  
 Industriā, *ae, industry.*  
 Inferrē, *intūl, illāt (414), to wage.*  
 Infērā (*prep. with acc.*), *below.*  
 Infligērē, *fliſ, flict, to inflict.*  
 Ingēuium, *i, talent, ability.*  
 Injūriā, *ae, injury, wrong done.*  
 Innōcens, *tis, innocent.*  
 Innoxius, *ā, ūm, harmless.*  
 Instruērē, *strux, struct, to arrange, array.*  
 Intelligērē, *lex, lect, to understand.*  
 Intēr (*prep. with acc.*), *between, during.*  
 Interdūm, *sometimes.*  
 Interessē, *fu, fūt, to be engaged in.*  
 Interficērē (iō), *fec, fect, to kill.*  
 Intērīm, *in the mean time, meanwhile.*  
 Intervallūm, *i, distance, space.*  
 Intrā (*prep. with acc.*), *within.*  
 Inūtilis, *ē, useless.*  
 Invādērē (*in and vādere*), *vās, vās, to invade.*  
 Invēnirē, *vēn, vent, to find.*  
 Invidērē, *vid, vīs, to envy.*  
 Invitūs, *ā, ūm, unwilling.*  
 Ipsē, *ā, ūm, self, he himself.*  
 Irā, *ae, anger.*  
 Irē, *iv, it, to go.*  
 Irritārē, *āv, āt, to irritate.*  
 Is, *eā, id, he, she, it, that.*  
 Istē, *ā, ūd, that.*  
 Italiā, *ae, Italy.*  
 Itāquē, *therefore.*  
 Itēr, *itinēris, journey, way.*  
 Itērūm, *again.*

## J.

Jūbērē, *juss, juss, to direct, order.*  
 Jūcundūs, *ā, ūm, pleasant, delightful.*  
 Jūdex, *icīs, judge.*  
 Jūdicārē, *āv, āt, to judge.*  
 Jūrārē, *āv, āt, to swear.*  
 Justūs, *ā, ūm, just, fair.*

## L.

Lābōr, *ōris, labor.*  
 Lābōrārē, *āv, āt, to labor.*  
 Lānā, *ac, wool.*

Lātinūs, *i, Latinus, a king of Latium.*  
 Laudārē, *āv, āt, to praise.*  
 Laus, *dis, praise.*  
 Lāvārē, *lāv, laut, or lāvāt, to wash.*  
 Lāviniā, *ae, Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.*  
 Lēgātūs, *i, ambassador.*  
 Lēgērē, *lēg, lect, to read.*  
 Lēgiō, *ōnis, legion, body of foot.*  
 Lēnis, *ē, mild, merciful.*  
 Leō, *ōnis, lion.*  
 Lex, *lēgis, law.*  
 Lībēr, *libri, book.*  
 Lībēr, *ā, ūm, free.*  
 Lībērī, *ōrum, children.*  
 Līcēt (*impers. v.*), *it is lawful.*  
 Līcēt, *although.*  
 Līquescērē, *licu, to melt.*  
 Lītērac, *ārūm (pl.), letter, epistle.*  
 Lōcūplēs, *ētīs, wealthy, rich.*  
 Lōcūs, *i (pl. lōcī or lōcū), place.*  
 Lōqui, *lūcūt, to speak.*  
 Lūcērē, *lux, to shine.*  
 Luctūs, *ūs, grief, sorrow.*  
 Lūcūs, *i, grove.*  
 Lūdērē, *lūs, lūs, to play.*  
 Lūdūs, *i, play, sport.*  
 Lūgērē, *lux, to grieve, mourn, weep for.*  
 Lūnā, *ae, moon.*  
 Lūpūs, *i, wolf.*  
 Lusciniā, *ae, nightingale.*  
 Lux, *lūcis, light.*

## M.

Mācūlārē, *āv, āt, to stain, to blemish.*  
 Māgistēr, *tri, master as teacher.*  
 Māgnitūdō (*magnus*), *inīs, greatness, size.*  
 Māgnūs, *ā, ūm, great, large; māgnī, at a great price, highly; māgnūm est, it is a great thing.*  
 Majōr, *ūs (comp. of magnus), greater, larger.*  
 Mālē (*malus*), *badly.*  
 Mālč, *mālu (410), to prefer.*  
 Mālūm, *i, evil, misfortune.*  
 Mālūs, *ā, ūm, bad.*  
 Mānērē, *ns, ns, to remain.*

Mānūs, ūs, *f.*, hand, force.  
 Mārē, īs, sea.  
 Mārīnūs, ā, ūm, marine, of the sea.  
 Mātēr, trīs, mother.  
 Mātrouā, ae, matron.  
 Maximūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of magnus*), greatest, very great; maximī, at a very great price.  
 Mēdicūs, ī, physician.  
 Mēdiūs, ā, ūm, middle, midst of, middle of, 267.  
 Mēl, mellis, honey.  
 Mendāciūm, lie, falsehood.  
 Mens, tis, mind, the reasoning faculty.  
 Mensis, īs, m., month.  
 Mētuerē, u, to fear.  
 Mētūs, ūs, fear.  
 Meū, ā, ūm (*masc. voc. sing., mi*), my.  
 Micārē, u, to glitter, shine.  
 Milēs, itīs, soldier.  
 Militiā, ae, military service; militiæ (*gen. sing.*), in war, on service.  
 Millē, thousand.  
 Minōr, ūs (*comp. of parvus*), smaller.  
 Mirābilis, ē, wonderful.  
 Mīsēr, ā, ūm, miserable, wretched.  
 Mīsērēri, ert or ērit, to pity.  
 Mīsērēt (*impers. verb*), it pities, one pities.  
 Mittērē, mīs, miss, to send.  
 Mōbilis, ē, movable.  
 Mōdō, only.  
 Mōnerē, u, it, to advise, admonish.  
 Mons, tis, m., mountain.  
 Moustrārē, āv, āt, to show.  
 Mordērē, mōmord, mors, to bite.  
 Mors, tis, death.  
 Mortālis (*mors*), ē, mortal.  
 Mōvērē, mōv, mōt, to move.  
 Mūliēr, ēris, woman.  
 Multitūdō (*multūs*), īnis, multitude.  
 Multūs, ā, ūm, much, many; multā (*neut. pl.*), many things; multūm bōnī, much good; multūm tempōris, much time.  
 Mūrūs, ī, wall.  
 Mūtārē, āv, āt, to change

## N.

Nām, for  
 Namquē, for.

Nārē, nāv, to swim.  
 Narrārē, āv, āt, to relate, narrate.  
 Narrātiō (*narrārē*), narration, narrative.  
 Nasei, nāt, to be born.  
 Nātiō, ōnis, nation.  
 Nē, interrog. particle, 287 and 288.  
 Nē (*used with imperat. and subj.*), not.  
 Nēc, neither; nēc—nēc, neither—nor.  
 Nēgligērē, lex, lect, to disregard.  
 Nēmō (*īnis, not in good use*), nobody, no one.  
 Nēquidēm, not even, generally with the emphatic word between the two parts; as, nē pōpūlūs quidēm, not even the people.  
 Nērē, nēv, nēt, to spin.  
 Nescirē, iv, it, not to know, to be ignorant of.  
 Nidūs, ī, nest.  
 Nihil, nothing.  
 Nimiūs, ā, ūm, too much, excessive.  
 Nix, nivīs, snow.  
 Nōcērē, u, it, to hurt.  
 Nollē, nōlu (410), to be unwilling.  
 Nōmēn, īnis, name.  
 Nōn, not; nōn solūm—sēd etiām, not only—but also.  
 Nondūm, not yet.  
 Nonnē, interrog. particle; expects ans, yes. 288, REM.  
 Nostēr, trā, trūm, our.  
 Nōvembēr, brīs (*abl. ī*), November.  
 Nox, noctīs, night.  
 Nūbēs, īs, cloud.  
 Nullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), no, no one.  
 Nūm, interrog. particle; expects ans, no. 288, REM. [*Kome.*]  
 Nūmā, ae, Numa, second king of Nuuc, now.  
 Nūmērārē, āv, āt, to number.  
 Nūmērūs, ī, number.  
 Nunquām, never.  
 Nuntiārē (*nuntiūs*), āv, āt, to announce, report.  
 Nuntiūs, ī, messenger.

## O.

O (interjection), O.  
 O sī, O if, would that.

- Obessē, fu, fūt, *to be prejudicial to.*  
 Obliviscī, oblīt, *to forget.*  
 Obsēs, idīs, *hostage.*  
 Obstārē, stīt, stāt, *to oppose, prevent.*  
 Obtīnērē, īnu, ent, *to acquire, obtain.*  
 Occāsiō, ōnis, *occasion.*  
 Occidērē (*ob and caedēre*), cīd, cīs, *to kill.*  
 Occidērē (*ob and cādēre*), cīd, cās, *to fall.*  
 Occultārē (*occulēre*), āv, āt, *to conceal, hide.*  
 Octō, *eight.*  
 Oculūs, ī, *eye.*  
 Odiūm, ī, *hatred.*  
 Officiūm, ī, *duty.*  
 Olīm, *once, formerly.*  
 Omnīō, *in all.*  
 Omnis, ē, *all, every.*  
 Oportēt (*impers.*), *it behooves, one ought.*  
 Optiō, ōnis, *choice.*  
 Opūs, ēris, *work.*  
 Orātiō, ōnis, *oration.*  
 Orātōr, ōris, *orator.*  
 Ornārē, āv, āt, *to adorn.*  
 Ovīs, īs, *sheep.*
- P.
- Pābulārī, āt, *to forage.*  
 Palliūm, ī, *cloak.*  
 Pārārē, āv, āt, *to prepare.*  
 Pārērē, u, īt, *to obey.*  
 Parcērē, pēpere, parcīt, *to spare.*  
 Pars, tīs, *part.*  
 Parvūs, ā, ūm, *small, little; parvūm, little, a little; parvī, at a low price; parvī aestīmārē, to think little of.*  
 Pastōr (*pascēre*), ōris, *shepherd.*  
 Pātēr, trīs, *father.*  
 Pātriā, ae, *native country.*  
 Paucūs, ā, ūm, *little, few.*  
 Paupēr, ēris, *a poor man.*  
 Pausāniās, ae, *Pausanias, a distinguished Spartan general.*  
 Pāvō, ōnis, *peacock.*  
 Pax, pācis, *peace.*  
 Peccārē, āv, āt, *to sin, do wrong.*  
 Pēcūniā, ae, *money.*  
 Pendērē, pēpend, *to hang*  
 Pēr (*prep. with acc.*), *through.*  
 Perdērē, dīd, dīt, *to waste.*  
 Perfidiā, ae, *perfidy.*  
 Perfūgiūm, ī, *refuge.*  
 Pēriculōsūs (*periculūm*), ā, ūm, *dangerous.*  
 Pēritūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in.*  
 Perniciēs, cī, *destruction.*  
 Perpētūō, *for ever.*  
 Perspicērē (iō), ex, ect, *to perceive, see.*  
 Persuādērē, s, s, *to persuade.*  
 Pertimescērē, tīmu, *to fear greatly.*  
 Pervēnirē, vēn, vent, *to arrive at reach.*  
 Pēs, pēdis, *foot.*  
 Pētērē, iv or ī, īt, *to seek.*  
 Philōsōphūs, ī, *philosopher.*  
 Piētās, ātis, *piety, faithfulness.*  
 Pigēt (*impers.*), *it irks, one is grieved at; mē pigēt, I am grieved.*  
 Piscīs, īs, *m., fish.*  
 Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious.*  
 Plācārē, āv, āt, *to appease.*  
 Plācērē, u, īt, *to please.*  
 Plānē, *plainly.*  
 Plūrimūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of multus*), *very much or great; pl., very many.*  
 Poēmā, ātis, *poem.*  
 Poenitēt (*impers.*), *it repents, one repents.*  
 Poētā, ae, *poet.*  
 Pōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt, *to place.*  
 Pons, tīs, *m., bridge.*  
 Pōpūlārīs (*popūlūs*), ē, *popular.*  
 Pōpūlūs, ī, *people.*  
 Portā, ae, *gate.*  
 Poscērē, pōpose, *to demand.*  
 Possē, pōtu (*irreg.*, 407), *to be able.*  
 Possidērē, ēd, ess, *to possess.*  
 Post (*prep. with acc.*), *after.*  
 Postērī, ūm (*mas. not used*), *next, following.*  
 Postulārē, āv, āt, *to demand.*  
 Pōtīrī, īt, *to get possession of.*  
 Præ (*prep. with abl.*), *before, in comparison with.*  
 Præbērē, u, īt, *to furnish, offer.*  
 Præceptūm, ī, *precept, instruction.*  
 Prædiā, ae, *booty.*  
 Præditūs, ā, ūm, *endued with.*

Praemittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to send before*.  
 Praepārārĕ, āv, āt, *to prepare*.  
 Praesens, tīs, *present*.  
 Praestans, tīs, *excellent*.  
 Praestāt (*impers.*), *it is better*.  
 Praetĕrītūs, ā, ūm, *past*; neut. pl.,  
*the past*.  
 Prātūm, ī, *meadow*.  
 Prĕtĭosūs, ā, ūm, *valuable*.  
 Prīmūs, ā, ūm, *first*.  
 Princeps (*prīmūs* and *cāpĕre*), ĩpīs,  
*chief, leader*.  
 Prīvārĕ, āv, āt, *to deprive*.  
 Prīvātūs, ā, ūm, *private, personal*.  
 Prō (*prep. with abl.*), *for, before*.  
 Prōbūs, ā, ūm, *honest*.  
 Prōdessĕ, prōfū, prōfūt, *to profit*.  
 Prōdītĭō, ōnīs, *treachery*.  
 Prōdītōr, ōrīs, *traitor*.  
 Prōdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct, *to lead for-*  
*ward, or out*.  
 Proeliūm, ī, *battle*.  
 Prōficiscĭ, fect, *to set out, to march*.  
 Prōmittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to promise*.  
 Prōmōvĕrĕ, mōv, mōt, *to move for-*  
*ward, advance*.  
 Prōpensūs, ā, ūm, *inclined to*.  
 Prōpiōr, ūs (*comp.*), *nearer*.  
 Prōvidūs, ā, ūm, *cautious, prudent*.  
 Prōvinciā (*pro* and *vincĕre*), ae, *pro-*  
*vince*.  
 Proximūs, ā, ūm, *nearest, next*.  
 Prūdēns, tīs, *prudent, cautious*.  
 Prūdētiā (*prudens*), ae, *prudence*.  
 Pūdōr, ōrīs, *shame, modesty*.  
 Puellā, ae, *girl*.  
 Puēr, ī, *boy*.  
 Pūgnārĕ (*pugnā*), āv, āt, *to fight*.  
 Pulchĕr, chrā, chrūm, *beautiful*.  
 Pūnĭrĕ, ĩv, ĩt, *to punish*.  
 Pūtārĕ, āv, āt, *to think, regard*.

## Q.

Quaestiō, ōnīs, *question*.  
 Quām (*adv.*), *how*; quām multī, *how*  
*many*; with superl. intensive, as  
 quām maximūs, *as great as pos-*  
*sible*.  
 Quām (*conj.*), *than*.  
 Quamvis, *however, however much*.  
 Quantūs, ā, ūm, *how great*.

Quārĕ, *wherefore*.  
 Quartūs, ā, ūm, *fourth*.  
 Quāsī, *as if*.  
 Quatuōr, *four*.  
 Quē (always appended to another  
 word), *and*.  
 Quī, quae, quōd, *who, which, that*.  
 Quī, quae, quōd (*interrog.*), *who,*  
*which, what?*  
 Quīā, *because*.  
 Quiescĕrĕ, ēv ēt, *to rest, be quiet*.  
 Quīn (473), *that not, but that*.  
 Quinquē, *five*.  
 Quintūs, ā, ūm, *fifth*.  
 Quīs, quae, quīd (*interrog. subs.*)  
*who, which, what?*  
 Quō, *that, in order that*.  
 Quōmīnūs (472), *that not, from*.  
 Quōquē, *also*.  
 Quūm, *when*; quūm—tūm, *both—*  
*and*.

## R.

Rātiō, ōnīs, *reason*.  
 Rĕcĭpĕrĕ (iō), cĕp, cept, *to receive*.  
 Rĕcordārĭ, āt, *to remember, call to*  
*mind*.  
 Rĕdirĕ, ī, ĩt, *to return*.  
 Rĕdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct, *to lead back*.  
 Rĕferrĕ, tūl, lāt, *to relate*.  
 Rĕgĕrĕ, rex, rect, *to rule, govern*.  
 Rĕgīnā, ae, *queen*.  
 Rĕgnārĕ, āv, āt, *to reign*.  
 Rĕgnūm, ī, *kingdom, government*.  
 Rĕliquūs, ā, ūm, *remaining, the rest*.  
 Rĕpĕrĭrĕ, rĕpĕr, rĕpert, *to find*.  
 Rĕs, rĕī, *thing, affair*.  
 Rĕsistĕrĕ, stīt, *to resist*.  
 Respondĕrĕ, d, s, *to answer*.  
 Responsūm, ī, *answer, response*.  
 Respuĕrĕ, pu, *to reject*.  
 Reūs, ī, *criminal*.  
 Rĕvertĕrĕ, vert, vers, *to return, turn*  
*back*.  
 Rex, rĕgīs, *king*.  
 Rhēnūs, ī, *Rhine*.  
 Rīdĕrĕ, rīs, rīs, *to laugh, laugh at*.  
 Rōbustūs, ā, ūm, *robust, strong*.  
 Rōgārĕ, āv, āt, *to ask, entreat*.  
 Rōmā, ae, *Rome*.  
 Rōmānūs (Rōmā), ā, ūm, *Roman*.

Rōmūlūs, ī, *Romulus*.  
 Rōtundūs, ā, ūm, *round*.  
 Ruērē, ru, rūt (rūt), *to rush*.  
 Rūmōr, ōrīs, *rumor*.  
 Rumpērē, rūp, rupt, *to break, violate*.  
 Rūs, rūrīs, n., *country*.

## S.

Sācerdōs, ōtīs, *priest, priestess*.  
 Saepē, *often*.  
 Saevirē (saevūs), īv (ī), īt, *to rage*.  
 Sāgittā, ae, *arrow*.  
 Saltārē, āv, āt, *to dance*.  
 Sālūs, ūtīs, *safety*.  
 Sānārē, āv, āt, *to cure, reform*.  
 Sancirē, x, ct, *to enact, confirm*.  
 Sanguis, īnīs, m., *blood*.  
 Sāpērē, īv or ī, *to be wise*.  
 Sāpiens, entīs, *wise*.  
 Sāpientiā, ae, *wisdom*.  
 Sātiārē, āv, āt, *to satisfy*.  
 Sātīs, *enough*.  
 Sceptrūm, ī, *sceptre*.  
 Scientiā, ae, *knowledge*.  
 Scipiō, ōnīs, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman*.  
 Scirē, īv, īt, *to know*.  
 Scribērē, ps, pt, *to write*.  
 Sēcundūs, ā, ūm, *second*.  
 Sēd, *but*.  
 Sēmēn, īnīs, *seed*.  
 Sempēr, *always*.  
 Sempiternūs, ā, ūm, *lasting, eternal*.  
 Sēnātor, ōrīs, *senator*.  
 Sēnātūs (senex), ūs, *senate*.  
 Sēnectūs, ūtīs, *old age*.  
 Sēnex, sēnīs, *an old man*.  
 Sensūs, ūs, *feeling, perception*.  
 Sententiā, ae, *sentiment*.  
 Sentirē, s, s, *to perceive, to feel (as pain)*.  
 Sēpēlirē, pēlrv or ī, pult, *to bury*.  
 Sermō, ōnīs, *discourse*.  
 Servārē, āv, āt, *to keep, observe, save*.  
 Servirē, īv, īt, *to serve, be slave to*.  
 Serviūs, ī, *Servius, a man's name*.  
 Servūs, ī, *slave*.  
 Sēv—sēv, *whether—or, either—or*.

Sex, *six*.  
 Si, *if*.  
 Sic, *so*.  
 Sicūt, *so as, just as*.  
 Simplex, īclis, *simple*.  
 Simulātiō, ōnīs, *assumed appearance, pretence*.  
 Sinē (prep. with abl.), *without*.  
 Sinūs, ūs, *bosom*.  
 Sīrēn, ēnīs, *siren*.  
 Sītirē, īv, īt, *to thirst*.  
 Sīv—sivē, *whether—or*.  
 Sōcrātēs, īs, *Socrates, the celebrated Grecian philosopher*.  
 Sōl, sōlīs, m., *sun*.  
 Somnūs, ī, *sleep*.  
 Sōnūs, ī, *sound*.  
 Sōrōr, ōrīs, *sister*.  
 Spargērē, rs, rs, *to scatter, sow*.  
 Spēciosūs (species), ā, ūm, *specious, plausible*.  
 Spectārē (specere), āv, āt, *to look at, behold*.  
 Spērārē, āv, āt, *to hope for*.  
 Spēs, eī, *hope*.  
 Splendens, tīs, *shining*.  
 Spōliārē, āv, āt, *to rob of, despoil*.  
 Stābilitās, ātīs, *firmness, stability*.  
 Stātīm (stare), *immediately*.  
 Stellā, ae, *star*.  
 Stūdērē, u, *to study, strive for*.  
 Stūdiosūs, ā, ūm, *studious*.  
 Stultitiā, ae, *folly*.  
 Suādērē, s, s, *to advise*.  
 Subvėuirē, vėn, vent, *to aid*.  
 Succurrērē, curr, curs, *to aid, succor*.  
 Suērē, su, sūt, *to sew, stitch*.  
 Suī, sibī (257), *of himself, herself, &c.*  
 Sullā, ae, *Sulla, a man's name*.  
 Summūs, ā, ūm, *highest, greatest; sometimes the top of (267); summūs mons, the top of the mountain*.  
 Sumptūs, ūs, *expense*.  
 Sūpērārē, āv, āt, *to surpass, conquer, to go over*.  
 Sūperficiēs, eī, *surface*.  
 Sūpervācūūs, ā, ūm, *unnecessary*.  
 Supplicātiō, ōnīs, *thanksgiving*.



Sūprā (*adv. and prep. with acc.*),  
*above.*  
Sustīnērē, u, *tent, to sustain, en-*  
*dure.*  
Snūs, ā, ūm, *his, her, &c.*

T.

Tācērē, u, īt, *to be silent, to pass over*  
*in silence.*  
Tām, *so*; tām—quām, *so—as.*  
Tāmēn, *yet.*  
Tangērē, tētīg, *tact, to touch.*  
Tanquām, *as if.*  
Tantūs, ā, ūm, *so great.*  
Tārentūm, ī, *Tarentum, a town in*  
*Italy.*  
Tardūs, ā, ūm, *slow.*  
Tarquīniūs, ī, *Turquin, one of the*  
*kings of Rome.*  
Tectūm (*tegēre*), ī, *roof, house.*  
Tēgērē, tex, tect, *to cover.*  
Tempūs, ōrīs, *time.*  
Tēnērē, u, t, *to hold.*  
Tentārē, āv, āt, *to try, attempt.*  
Terrā, ae, *the earth.*  
Terrērē, u, īt, *to terrify.*  
Tertiūs, ā, ūm, *third.*  
Tībūr, ūrīs, *Tibur, a town in Italy.*  
Tīmērē, u, *to fear.*  
Tīmīdūs, ā, ūm, *timid.*  
Tondērē, tōtōnd, tons, *to shear,*  
*shave.*  
Tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *the whole, the*  
*entire.*  
Tranquillūs, ā, ūm, *calm, tranquil.*  
Transīrē, ī, īt, *to go over.*  
Trēs, triā, *three.*  
Trojānūs (*Trojā*), ā, ūm, *Trojan.*  
Tū, tuī, *thou.*  
Tullia, ae, *Tullia, a queen of*  
*Rome.*  
Turpūs, ē, *base, disgraceful.*  
Turris, īs (*acc., em or im*; *abl., ē or ī*),  
*tower.*  
Tuūs, ā, ūm, *your.*

U.

Ullīs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *any.*  
Undē, *whence.*  
Unquām, *ever.*

Unūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *one, single,*  
*single one.*  
Urbs, īs, *city.*  
Ursūs, ī, *bear.*  
Usquē, *as far as*; usquē ād, *even*  
*to.*  
Ut (*conj.*), *that, as.*  
Uti, ūs, *to use.*  
Utilis, ē, *useful.*  
Utilitās (*ūtīls*), ātīs, *utility, advan-*  
*tage.*  
Utinām (*conj.*), *would that.*  
Utrūm (*interrog. part.*), *whether*;  
utrūm—ān, *whether—or.*  
Uvā, ae, *grape.*

V.

Vācārē, āv, āt, *to have leisure for.*  
Vēl (*conj.*), *or*; vēl—vēl, *either—*  
*or.*  
Vellē, vōlu (410), *to wish, be wil-*  
*ling.*  
Vēlox, ōcīs, *swift.*  
Vēnārī, āt, *to hunt.*  
Vendērē, dīd, dīt, *to sell.*  
Vēnīrē, vēn, vent, *to come.*  
Vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*  
Verbūm, ī, *word.*  
Vērērī, īt, *to fear.*  
Vērō, *indeed, truly.*  
Vērūs, ā, ūm, *true, real*; vērūm,  
*truth.*  
Vēruntāmēn, *but yet.*  
Vestēr, trā, trūm, *your.*  
Vestīs, īs, *garment.*  
Vētustūs, ā, ūm, *ancient.*  
Viā, ae, *way, road.*  
Victimā, ae, *victim.*  
Victōriā, ae, *Victoria.*  
Vidērē, vīd, vīs, *to see*; pass., vī  
dērī, *to seem.*  
Vīgīlārē (*vīgīl*), āv, āt, *to watch.*  
Vīgintī, *twenty.*  
Vincērē, vic, vict, *to conquer.*  
Vincīrē, vīnx, vīnct, *to bind.*  
Vincūlūm, ī, *chain.*  
Vīdicārē, āv, āt, *to avenge.*  
Viōlārē, āv, āt, *to violate, wrong,*  
*break.*  
Vir, virī, *man, hero.*  
Virgō, īnīs, *virgin, maiden.*

Virtūs, ūtīs, <i>virtue, manliness.</i>	Vŏcārě, āv, āt, <i>to call.</i>
Vīs, vīs ( <i>acc., vīm</i> ), <i>pl.</i> , vīrēs, vīriūm, &c., <i>force, strength.</i>	Vŏlārě, āv, āt, <i>to fly.</i>
Vītā, ae, <i>life.</i>	Vŏluptās, ātīs, <i>pleasure.</i>
Vītārě, āv, āt, <i>to shun, avoid.</i>	Vox, vŏcīs, <i>voice.</i>
Vītŭpěrārě, āv, āt, <i>to blame, criticise.</i>	Vulnērārě, āv, āt, <i>to wound.</i>
Vivěrě, vix, vict, <i>to live.</i>	Vulnūs, ěrīs, <i>wound.</i>
	Vulpēs, is, <i>fox.</i>



## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

### A.

- Ability*, ingenium, i.  
*About*, de (with abl.).  
*Above*, supra (adv. and prep. with acc.).  
*Abridgment*, epitomē, ēs.  
*Accept*, accipere (iō), cēp, cept (550).  
*Accomplish*, efficere (iō), fēc, fect.  
*Accuse*, accusare, av, at.  
*Achilles*, Achillēs, is.  
*Acquire*, obtinere, tīnu, tent.  
*Acquit*, absolvēre, v, ut.  
*Act*, v., facere (iō), fēc, fact.  
*Admiration*, admiratiō, ōnis.  
*Admonish*, mōnere, u, it, admōnere, &c.  
*Adorn*, ornare, av, at.  
*Advance*, prōmovere, mōv, mōt.  
*Advantage*, utilitās, atis.  
*Advice*, consilium, i.  
*Advise*, suadere, s, s; mōnere, u, it.  
*Aeneas*, Aenēās, ae.  
*Affair*, rēs, rei.  
*After*, post (with acc.).  
*Again*, iterum.  
*Again and again*, etiām atque etiām.  
*Against*, in (acc.); contra (acc.).  
*Aid*, s., adjumentum, i; auxilium, i.  
*Aid*, v., subvenire, ven, vent, adjuvare, jūv, jūt.  
*All* (as a whole), cunctus, ā, ūm.  
*All* (every), omnis, ē.  
*Alps*, Alpēs, ium.  
*Also*, etiām, quōque.  
*Altar*, arā, ae.  
*Although*, licet.  
*Always*, semper.  
*Ambassador*, legātus, i.  
*American*, Amēricānus, ā, ūm.

- Amphibious animal*, amphibiūm, i.  
*Ample*, amplūs, ā, ūm.  
*Anchises*, Anchīsēs, ae.  
*Ancient*, vētustus, ā, ūm.  
*And*, et, quē (enclitic), ac.  
*Anger*, irā, ae.  
*Animal*, animal, alis.  
*Announce*, nuntiāre, av, at (540).  
*Answer*, s., responsū, i.  
*Answer*, v., respondere, d, s.  
*Any*, ullus, ā, ūm (113, R.).  
*Any one*, aliquis, ā, quid.  
*Appearance*, faciēs, ei.  
*Appease*, placare, av, at.  
*Appoint*, constituere, u, ut.  
*Approach*, s., adventus, ūs (521).  
*Approach*, v., appropinquare, av, at accēdere, cess, cess.  
*Arm*, brachiū, i.  
*Armor-bearer*, armiger, i.  
*Army*, exercitus, ūs.  
*Arouse*, excitare, av, at.  
*Arrange*, constituere, u, ut.  
*Arrange, array*, instruere, ux, uct.  
*Arrest*, comprehendere, d, s.  
*Arrival*, adventus, ūs (521).  
*Arrive at*, pervenire, ven, vent.  
*Arrow*, sagittā, ae.  
*Art*, ars, artis.  
*As*, ut.  
*As far as*, usque.  
*As if*, quasi, tanquam.  
*As possible*, quam with superl. (309).  
*Ascanius*, Ascānius, i.  
*Ascertain*, cognoscere, nōv, nīt.  
*Ask*, rogare, av, at.  
*Ask advice*, consulere, lu, lt.  
*Ass*, asinus, i.  
*Assemble*, convenire, ven, vent (550).  
*Assent, give assent*, annuere, u, ut.  
*Assumed appearance*, simulatiō, ōnis

*At a high price*, māguī; *at a very high price*, maximī.  
*At a low price*, parvī.  
*At home*, domī.  
*Athenian*, Athēniensis, ē.  
*Athens*, Athēnæ; ārum.  
*Attack*, impētūs, ūs.  
*Attain*, attingērē, tīg, tact.  
*Attempt*, tentārē, āv, āt.  
*Audacious*, audax, ācis.  
*Author*, auctōr, ōris.  
*Autumn*, auctumnūs, ī.  
*Avarice*, āvāritiā, ae.  
*Avaricious*, āvārūs, ā, ūm.  
*Avenge*, vindicārē, āv, āt.  
*Avoid*, vitārē, āv, āt.

## B.

*Bad*, imprōbūs, ā, ūm; mālūs, ā, ūm.  
*Badly*, mālē.  
*Bake*, cōquērē, cox, coct.  
*Balbus*, Balbūs, ī.  
*Banish*, expellērē, pūl, puls.  
*Base*, turpis, ē.  
*Battle*, proeliūm, ī.  
*Be*, essē, fu, fūt.  
*Be able*, possē, pōtu.  
*Be born*, nascī, nāt.  
*Be engaged in*, intēressē, fu, fūt.  
*Be ignorant of*, nescīre, īv (ī), īt.  
*Be made*, fiērī, fact.  
*Be on one's guard against*, cāvērē, cāv, caut.  
*Be prejudicial to*, ōbessē, fu, fūt.  
*Be present*, ādessē, fu, fūt.  
*Be quiet*, quiescērē, quīēv, quīēt.  
*Be silent*, tēcērē, u, īt.  
*Be slave to*, servīrē, īv, īt.  
*Be unwilling*, nollē, nōlu.  
*Be willing*, vellē, vōlu.  
*Be wise*, sāpērē, īv or ī.  
*Bear*, s., ursūs, ī.  
*Bear*, v., ferrē, tūl, lāt.  
*Beard*, barbā, ae.  
*Beautiful*, pulchēr, chrā, chrūm.  
*Because*, quīā.  
*Become*, fiērī, fact.  
*Before* (adv.), antē.  
*Before* (prep.), antē, cōrīm, prae, prō.  
*Beg for, sue for*, pētērē, īv (ī), īt.  
*Begin to bloom, flourish* (544).

*Beginning*, inceptūm, ī.  
*Behold*, spectārē, āv, āt.  
*Believe*, crēdērē, crēdīd, crēdīt.  
*Below*, infrā (with acc.).  
*Benefit*, bēnēficiūm, ī.  
*Between*, intēr (with acc.).  
*Bind*, vincērē, vīnx, vīnct.  
*Bird*, āvis, īs, f.  
*Bite*, mordēre, mōmord, morz.  
*Blame*, s., culpā, ae.  
*Blame*, v., vitūpērārē, āv, āt.  
*Blind*, caecūs, ā, ūm.  
*Blood*, sanguis, īnis, m.  
*Bloom*, flōrērē, u.  
*Body*, corpūs, ōris.  
*Book*, libēr, librī.  
*Booty*, praedā.  
*Bosom*, sinūs, ūs.  
*Both—and*, et—et; quān—tūm.  
*Boy*, puēr, ī.  
*Brave*, fortīs, ē.  
*Bravely*, fortītēr.  
*Break*, frangērē, frēg, fract; rum-  
 pērē, rūp, rupt; violārē, āv, āt:  
*break one's word*, fidēm violārē.  
*Bribery*, ambitūs, ūs.  
*Bridge*, pons, tīs, m.  
*Bring, bring to*, afferrē, attūl, allāt.  
*Bring water*, āquārī, āt.  
*Brother*, frātēr, trīs.  
*Brutus*, Brūtūs, ī.  
*Build*, aedificārē, āv, āt; construērē,  
 x, ct; condērē, did, dit.  
*Building*, aedificiūm, ī.  
*Burn*, incendērē, d, s.  
*Bury*, sēpērērē, īv (ī), pult.  
*But*, sēd, āt, autēm.  
*But, now* (in reasoning), atquī.  
*But, but yet*, attāmēn, vērutāmēn.  
*But that*, quān.  
*Buy* emērē, em, empt.  
*By* (with voluntary agent), ā, āb, abs,  
 in other cases indicated by abl.

## C.

*Caesar*, Caesār, āris.  
*Caius*, Caiūs, ī.  
*Calamity*, cālāmītās, ātis.  
*Call*, vōcārē, āv, āt.  
*Call to mind*, rēcōrdārī, āt.  
*Calm*, tranquillūs, ā, ūm.

*Camp*, castră, őrüm.  
*Captive*, captivus, i.  
*Card*, carpere, ps, pt.  
*Carry*, ferrē, tūl, lāt.  
*Carry on (as war)*, gērere, gess, gest.  
*Carthage*, Carthāgō, iuis.  
*Carthaginian*, Carthāginiensis, ē.  
*Catch*, dēprēhendere, d, s.  
*Cautious*, prūdēns, tīs; prōvidus, ā, ūm.  
*Cavalry*, equitātus, ūs.  
*Cave*, antrūm, i.  
*Celebrated*, cēlēber, brīs, brē.  
*Censure*, vitūpērare, āv, āt.  
*Certain*, certus, ā, ūm.  
*Chain*, vinculūm, i; cātēnă, ac.  
*Change*, mūtare, āv, āt.  
*Chariot*, currus, ūs.  
*Chastise*, castigare, āv, āt.  
*Chief*, princeps, cipis.  
*Children*, libērī, őrüm.  
*Choice*, optiō, ōnis.  
*Christian*, Christiānus, i.  
*Cicero*, Cicerō, ōnis.  
*Citadel*, arx, arcis.  
*Citizen*, civis, is.  
*City*, urbs, urbīs.  
*Civil*, civilis, ē (528).  
*Clemency*, clemētiă, ac.  
*Cloak*, palliūm, i.  
*Cloud*, nūbēs, is.  
*Cold*, frigūs, őrīs.  
*Collect*, compārare, āv, āt.  
*Color*, cōlōr, őrīs.  
*Come*, venīre, vēm, vent.  
*Come together*, convēnīre, vēm, vent.  
*Command*, v., impērare, āv, āt.  
*Commands*, s., impērātă, őrüm.  
*Commander*, impērătōr, őrīs (521).  
*Compel*, compellere, pūl, puls.  
*Conceal*, oecultare, āv, āt.  
*Concerning*, dē (with abl.)  
*Condemn*, damnare, āv, āt.  
*Condition*, conditiō, ōnis.  
*Conference*, collōquiūm, i.  
*Confine*, continere, tinu, tent.  
*Confirm*, sancire, sanx, sanct.  
*Conquer*, sūpērare, āv, āt; vincere, vic, vict; dēvincere, vic, vict.  
*Construct*, construere, x, ct.  
*Consul*, consūl, ūlis.  
*Consult*, consūlere, lu, lt.

*Contend*, concertare, āv, āt.  
*Contented*, contentus, ā, ūm.  
*Contest*, certāmeu, iuis.  
*Convert*, convertēre, t, s.  
*Cook*, cōquere, cox, coct.  
*Correct*, corrīgere, rex, rect.  
*Corrupt*, corrupere, rūp, rupt.  
*Council*, conciliūm, i.  
*Country*, rūs, rūris.  
*Cover*, tēgere, tex, tect.  
*Cowardly*, ignāvus, ā, ūm.  
*Crime*, flagitiūm, i.  
*Criminal*, reus, i.  
*Criticise*, vitūpērare, āv, āt.  
*Crown*, s., cōrōnă, ac.  
*Crown, erown with a garland*, cōrōnă cingere, nx, nct.  
*Cry out*, exclāmare, āv, āt.  
*Cultivate*, cōlere, cōlu, cult.  
*Cure*, sārare, āv, āt.

## D.

*Dance*, saltare, āv, āt.  
*Dangerous*, pēriculōsus, ā, ūm.  
*Daring*, audax, ācis.  
*Daughter*, filiă, ae.  
*Day*, diēs, ei.  
*Death*, mors, tīs.  
*Deceive*, dēcipere (iō), cēp, cept.  
*Deceptive*, fallax, ācis.  
*Decide*, dēcernere, crēv, crēt.  
*Declare*, indicere, dix, dict; *declare war*, bellūm indicere.  
*Decree*, dēcernere, crēv, crēt.  
*Defend*, dēfendere, d, s.  
*Defile*, angustiae, ārūm.  
*Defraud*, fraudare, āv, āt.  
*Delightful*, jucundus, ā, ūm.  
*Demand*, poscere, pōpose; postulare, āv, āt.  
*Demonstrate*, demonstrare, āv, āt.  
*Depart*, abire, i, it.  
*Deprive*, privare, āv, āt.  
*Derive*, have, habere, u, it.  
*Desire*, s., cūpīditās, ātis.  
*Desire*, v., cūpere (iō), iv or i, it.  
*Desirous of*, cūpidus, ā, ūm.  
*Despoil*, spoliare, āv, āt.  
*Destroy*, delere, ēv, ēt.  
*Destruction*, pernīciēs, ei.  
*Deter*, dēterrere, u, it.

*Dido*, Dīdō, ōnis.  
*Difficult*, diffīcilis, ē.  
*Diligence*, diligentiā, ac.  
*Diligent*, diligens, tis.  
*Direct, order*, jūbērē, juss, juss.  
*Discharge*, fungī, funct.  
*Discourse*, sermō, ōnis.  
*Discover*, conspicērē (iō), spex, spect.  
*Disgraceful*, turpis, ē.  
*Dismiss*, dīmīttērē, mīs, miss.  
*Disregard*, uēglīgērē, lex, lect.  
*Distance*, intervallū, ī.  
*Divide*, dīvidērē, vīs, vīs.  
*Divine*, divīnus, ā, ūm.  
*Divitiacus*, Divitiācūs, ī.  
*Do*, faciērē (iō), fēc, fact.  
*Do good to*, prōdessē, prōfu, prōfūt.  
*Do wrong*, peccārē, āv, āt.  
*Dog*, cānis, is.  
*Doubt*, dūbītārē, āv, āt.  
*Dove*, cōlumbā, ae.  
*Drink*, bibērē, bib, bibīt.  
*Drive*, āgērē, ēg, act; compellērē, pūl, puls.  
*During*, inter (*with acc.*).  
*Duty*, officiū, ī.  
*Dwell*, hābitārē, āv, āt.

## E.

*Eagle*, aquilā, ae.  
*Earth*, terrā, ae.  
*Easy*, faciļis, ē.  
*Eat*, edērē, ed, ēs.  
*Edifice*, aedificiū, ī.  
*Effect*, efficiērē (iō), fēc, fect.  
*Eight*, octō.  
*Either—or*, aut—aut.  
*Elegance*, elegantiā, ac.  
*Elephant*, elēphās, antīs,  
*Enact*, sancirē, x, ct.  
*End*, finīs, is, *m.* and *f.*  
*Endued with*, praeditūs, ā, ūm.  
*Endure*, sustinērē, tiuu, tent; ferrē, tūl, lāt.  
*Enemy*, hostīs, is, c.  
*Engage (as battle)*, committērē, mīs, miss; *engage battle*, proeliū, committērē.  
*Enjoy*, fruī, fruct (fruit).  
*Enlighten*, illustrārē, āv, āt.  
*Enough*, sātīs,

*Entire*, tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).  
*Entreat*, rōgārē, āv, āt.  
*Enumerate*, enūmērārē, āv, āt.  
*Envy*, invīdērē, vīd, vīs.  
*Epistle*, epistolā, ae; *literae*, ārūm.  
*Equity*, aequitās, ātis.  
*Err*, errārē, āv, āt.  
*Estate*, fundūs, ī.  
*Eternal*, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.  
*Even*, etiām.  
*Even to*, usquē ad.  
*Ever*, unquāū.  
*Every*, omnis, e.  
*Evil*, mālū, ī.  
*Excellent*, praestans, tis.  
*Excessive*, nimīus, ā, ūm.  
*Excite*, excitārē, āv, āt.  
*Exclaim*, exclāmārē, āv, āt.  
*Exercise*, exercērē, u, it.  
*Expect*, expectārē, āv, āt.  
*Expel*, expellērē, pūl, puls.  
*Expense*, sumptūs, ūs.  
*Explain*, expōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt.  
*Eye*, oculūs, ī.

## F.

*Fabulous*, fabulōsūs, ā, ūm.  
*Face*, faciēs, ei.  
*Faith*, fidēs, ei.  
*Faithful*, fidēlis, ē.  
*Faithfulness*, piētās, ātis.  
*Fall*, cādērē, cēcīd, cās; cecidērā, cīd, cas.  
*False*, fallax, ācis (535).  
*Falshood*, mendāciū, ī.  
*Farm*, fundūs, ī.  
*Father*, pātēr, pātris.  
*Fault*, culpā, ae.  
*Faustulus*, Faustulūs, ī.  
*Favor*, s., grātiā, ae.  
*Favor*, v., fāvērē, fāv, faul.  
*Fear*, s., mētūs, ūs.  
*Fear*, v., tīmērē, u; metuērē, u, nt vērē, it.  
*Fear greatly*, pertimescērē, mu.  
*Feast*, coenā, ae.  
*Feel (as pain, &c.)*, sentirē, s, s.  
*Feeling*, sensūs, ūs.  
*Few*, paucī, ae, ā.  
*Fidelity*, fidēs, ei.  
*Field*, āgēr, āgrī.

*Fifth*, quintūs, ā, ūm.  
*Fight*, pugnārē, āv, āt.  
*Figure*, figurā, ae.  
*Fill*, complērē, ēv, ēt.  
*Find*, invēnirē, ven, vent; rēpērirē, rēpēr, rēpert.  
*Fine, beautiful*, pulchēr, chrā, chrūm.  
*Finish*, finirē, iv, it (540).  
*Fire*, ignis, is, m.  
*Firm*, firmūs, ā, ūm.  
*Firmness*, stābilitās, atis.  
*First*, primūs, ā, ūm.  
*Fish*, piscis, is, m.  
*Five*, quinquē.  
*Flatterer*, ādulātōr, ōris.  
*Flattery*, ādulātiō, ōnis.  
*Flay*, āeglūbērē, ps, pt.  
*Flee*, fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgit.  
*Flee for refuge*, confūgērē (iō), fūg.  
*Flee from*, ēvōlārē, āv, āt.  
*Flight*, fūgā, ae.  
*Flock*, grex, grēgis, m.  
*Flourish*, florērē, u.  
*Flow*, fluērē, x, x.  
*Flower*, flōs, ōris.  
*Fly*, vōlārē, āv, āt.  
*Fly away*, ēvōlārē, āv, āt.  
*Following*, postērā, ūm (*masc. nom. not used*).  
*Folly*, stultitiā, ae.  
*Food*, cibūs, i.  
*Foot*, pēs, pēdis.  
*For (conj.)*, enīm, nām, namquē.  
*For (prep.)*, prō (*with abl.*).  
*For ever*, perpētūō.  
*Forage*, pābū arī, āt.  
*Force*, mānūs, ūs vīs, vis (*pl. virēs*).  
*Forces*, cōpiaē, ārūm.  
*Forget*, obliviscī, oblīt.  
*Formerly*, ōlim.  
*Fortune*, fortūnā, ae.  
*Found*, condērē, did, dīt (550).  
*Four*, quātuōr.  
*Fourth*, quartūs, ā, ūm.  
*Fox*, vulpēs, is.  
*Free*, libēr, ā, ūm.  
*Frequent*, crēbēr, brā, brūm.  
*Friend*, āmicūs, i.  
*Friendship*, āmicitiā, ae.  
*Frighten*, terrērē, u, it.

*From*, ā, āb, abs, dē, ex, and *sometimes before participial nouns*, quōmīnūs.  
*Fulfil*, fungī, funct.  
*Furnish*, praeberē, u, it.  
*Further*, ampliūs.  
*Future*, fūtūrūs, ā, ūm.

## G.

*Gallic*, Gallicūs, ā, ūm.  
*Game*, lūdūs, i.  
*Garden*, hortūs, i.  
*Garland*, cōrōnā, ae.  
*Garment*, vestis, is.  
*Gate*, portā, ae.  
*Gather*, carpērē, ps, pt.  
*Gaul, a Gaul*, Gallūs, i.  
*Germany*, Germāniā, ae.  
*Get possession of*, pōtirī, it.  
*Gift*, dōnūm, i.  
*Girl*, puellā, ae.  
*Give*, dārē, dēd, dāt; dōnārē, āv, āt.  
*Glitter*, mīcārē, u.  
*Glory*, glōriā, ae.  
*Go, irē, iv or i, it.*  
*Go away*, ābirē, i, it.  
*Go over*, transirē, i, it; sūpērārē, āv, āt.  
*Gold*, aurūm, i.  
*Golden*, aureūs, ā, ūm.  
*Good*, bōnūs, ā, ūm.  
*Govern*, rēgērē, rex, rect.  
*Government*, rēgnūm, i.  
*Grain*, grānūm, i.  
*Grape*, ūvā, ae.  
*Gratitude*, grātiā, ae.  
*Great*, māgnūs, ā, ūm; *at a great price*, māgnī; *it is a great thing*, māgnūm est.  
*Greater*, majōr, ūs.  
*Greatest, highest*, summūs, ā, ūm.  
*Greatest, very great*, maximūs, ā, ūm, *at a very great price*, maximī.  
*Greatness*, māgnitūdō, ūis.  
*Greeks*, Graeci, ōrūm.  
*Grief*, dōlōr, ōris; luctūs, ūs.  
*Grieve*, dōlērē, u, it; lūgērē, lux.  
*Grove*, lūcūs, i.  
*Guard*, custōdirē, iv, it (540).  
*Guide*, dux, dūcis.

## H.

*Hand*, mănūs, ūs.  
*Hang*, penderē, pēpend.  
*Hannibal*, Hannibāl, ālis.  
*Happily*, beātē.  
*Happiness*, felicitās, ātis.  
*Happy*, beātūs, ā, ūm.  
*Harmless*, innoxius, ā, ūm.  
*Hatred*, ōdiūm, ī.  
*Have*, hāberē, u, it.  
*Hawk*, accipitēr, trīs.  
*He himself*, ipsē, ā, ūm.  
*He, she, it*, illē, ā, ūd.  
*He, she, or it is*, est.  
*Head*, cāpūt, itīs.  
*Hear*, audirē, iv, it.  
*Heart*, cōr, cordis, n.  
*Heat*, ignis, is, m.  
*Heaven, the heavens*, coelūm, ī.  
*Heavy*, grāvis, ē.  
*Help*, s., adjūmentūm, ī.  
*Help*, v., adjūvārē, jūv, jūt.  
*Herd*, grex, grēgis, m.  
*Hero*, vir, viri; hērōs, ōis.  
*Hide*, occultārē, āv, āt.  
*High*, altūs, ā, ūm.  
*Highest*, summūs, ā, ūm.  
*Hinder*, impēdirē, iv (i), it.  
*His, her, its, &c.*, suūs, ā, ūm.  
*History*, histōriā, ae.  
*Hold*, tēnērē, u, tent.  
*Home*, dōmūs, ūs or ī, f.  
*Honest*, prōbūs, ā, ūm.  
*Honey*, mēl, mellis.  
*Honor*, hōnōr, ōris.  
*Hope*, s., spēs, ēl.  
*Hope, hope for*, spērārē, āv, āt.  
*Horse*, ēquūs, ī.  
*Horseman*, ēquēs, itīs.  
*Hostage*, obsēs, idīs.  
*House*, tectūm, ī; dōmūs, ūs or ī, f.  
*How, quām; how many*, quām multī.  
*How great, quantūs, ā, ūm; how much, quantūm (with gen.)*.  
*However, however much, quamvis*.  
*Human*, hūmānūs, ā, ūm.  
*Hunger*, fāmēs, is.  
*Hunt*, vērārī, āt.  
*Hurt*, nōcērē, u, it.  
*Husband, conjux*, ūgis.  
*Husbandman*, āgrīcōlā, ae.

## I.

*I, ego*, meī.  
*If*, sī, dummōdō.  
*Ignorance*, ignōrātiō, ōnīa.  
*Ignorant*, ignārūs, ā, ūm.  
*Illuminate, illustrārē, āv, āt*.  
*Immediately*, statim.  
*Immense*, immensūs, ā, ūm.  
*Immortal*, immortalīs, ē.  
*Immovable*, immōbilīs, ē.  
*Impede, impēdirē, iv (i), it*.  
*Impious*, impiūs, ā, ūm.  
*Imprudent*, imprūdēns, tīa.  
*In, in (with abl.)*.  
*In all*, omnīnō.  
*In comparison with*, prae.  
*In order that*, quō.  
*In person, in presence of*, cōrām.  
*In the mean time*, intērīm.  
*In such a manner*, ādeō.  
*Inclined to*, prōpensūs, ā, ūm.  
*Increase*, augērē, aux, auct; crescērē crēv, crēt.  
*Incredible, incredibīlis, ē (535)*.  
*Indeed*, enīm, vērō.  
*Indolent*, ignāvūs, ā, ūm.  
*Indulge*, indulgērē, ls, lt.  
*Industry*, industriā, ae.  
*Inflict*, infligērē, x, ct.  
*Inhabit*, hābitārē, āv, āt.  
*Inhabitant*, incolā, ae, (560).  
*Injury*, injuriā, ae.  
*Innocent*, inuocēns, tīs.  
*Instruct*, ērūdirē, iv, it.  
*Instruction, consiliūm, ī: praeceptūm, ī*.  
*Into, in (with acc.)*.  
*Invade*, invādērē, vās, vās, (550).  
*Invite, call*, vōcārē, āv, āt.  
*Iron*, ferrūm, ī.  
*Irritate*, irritārē, āv, āt.  
*It behooves, oportēt*.  
*It is better, praestāt*.  
*It is well known, is an admitted fact, constāt*.  
*It is lawful, licēt*.  
*It pities, one pities, misērēt*.  
*It repents, one repents, poenitēt*.  
*Italy, Itāliā, ae*.



## J.

*Journey*, ĭter, ĭtinĕrĭs, *n.*  
*Judge*, s., jūdex, ĭcĭs.  
*Judge*, v., jūdicārĕ, āv, āt.  
*Just*, justūs, ā, ūm.  
*Just as*, sicūt.  
*Justice*, æquitās, ātis.

## K.

*Keep*, servārĕ, āv, āt.  
*Kid*, hædūs, ĭ.  
*Kill*, occidĕrĕ, cĭd, cĭs; interficĕrĕ (iō), fĕc, fect.  
*Kind*, sort, s., gĕnūs, ĕrĭs.  
*Kind*, a., bĕnĭguūs, ā, ūm.  
*King*, rex, rĕgis.  
*Kingdom*, rĕgnūs, ĭ.  
*Know*, scĭrĕ, scĭv, scĭt.  
*Knowledge*, scientiā, ae.  
*Known*, cōgnītūs, ā, ūm.

## L.

*Labor*, s., lābōr, ōrĭs.  
*Labor*, v., lābōrārĕ, āv, āt.  
*Lamb*, āgnūs, ĭ.  
*Large*, māgnūs, ā, ūm; amplūs, ā, ūm.  
*Larger*, majōr, ūs.  
*Last*, dūrārĕ, āv, āt.  
*Lasting*, sempĭternūs, ā, ūm.  
*Latinus*, Lātĭnūs, ĭ.  
*Laugh*, laugh at, rĭdĕrĕ, rĭs, rĭs.  
*Lavinia*, Lāvĭniā, ae.  
*Law*, lex, lĕgis.  
*Lead*, dūcĕrĕ, dux, duct; āgĕrĕ, ĕg, act.  
*Lead back*, rĕdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct.  
*Lead forth*, ēdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct.  
*Lead forward or out*, prōdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct.  
*Lead to*, addūcĕrĕ, dux, duct.  
*Leader*, dux, dūcĭs.  
*Learn*, discĕrĕ, didĭc.  
*Legion*, lĕgiō, ōnĭs.  
*Letter*, literæ, ārūm: ĕpistōlā, ae.  
*Levy*, compārārĕ, āv, āt.  
*Lie*, a falsehood, mendāciūm, ĭ.  
*Life*, vitā, ae.  
*Light*, lux, lūcĭs.

*Line of battle*, āciēs, ēi.  
*Lion*, leō, ōnĭs.  
*Listen to*, audĭrĕ, ĭv, ĭt.  
*Little*, parvūs, ā, ūm; a little, parvūm: paucūs, ā, ūm.  
*Little garden*, hortulūs, ĭ. (515).  
*Live*, vīvĕrĕ, vix, vict.  
*Lofty*, altūs, ā, ūm.  
*Look at*, spectārĕ, āv, āt.  
*Lose*, āmittĕrĕ, mĭs, miss.  
*Love*, āmārĕ, āv, āt.

## M.

*Maiden*, virgō, ĭnĭs.  
*Make*, faciĕrĕ (iō), fĕc, fact: make a reply, responsū dare.  
*Man*, hōmō, ĭnĭs: vĭr, ĭ.  
*Manliness*, virtūs, ūtis.  
*Many*, multūs, ā, ūm; many things, multā.  
*March*, prōficiscĭ, fect.  
*Marine*, of the sea, mārĭnūs, ā, ūm.  
*Master as teacher*, māgistĕr, trĭ.  
*Master as owner*, dōminūs, ĭ.  
*Matron*, mātĕrōnā, ae.  
*Meadow*, prātūm, ĭ.  
*Meanwhile*, intĕrĭm.  
*Meeting*, concĭliūm, ĭ.  
*Melt*, liquescĕrĕ, lĕcu.  
*Merciful*, clĕmĕns, tĭs: lĕnĭs, ĕ.  
*Messenger*, nuntĭūs, ĭ.  
*Middle*, midst of, mĕdiūs, ā, ūm, (267.)  
*Mild*, lĕnĭs, ĕ: clĕmĕns, tĭs.  
*Mildness*, clĕmentĭā, ae.  
*Military service*, milĭtiā, ae.  
*Mind*, ānimūs, ĭ; mind, the reasoning faculty, mĕns, tĭs.  
*Miserable*, mĭsĕr, ā, ūm.  
*Misfortune*, cālānitās, ātis: mālūm, ĭ.  
*Mislead*, corrupĕrĕ, rūp, rupt.  
*Modesty*, pūdōr, ōrĭs.  
*Money*, pecūniā, ae.  
*Month*, mensĭs, ĭs, m.  
*Moon*, lūnā, ae.  
*More*, ampliūs, (adv.).  
*Mortal*, mortālis, ĕ.  
*Mother*, mātĕr, trĭs.  
*Mountain*, mons, tĭs, n.  
*Mourn*, wear mourning for, lāgĕrĕ, x, ct.

*Movable*, mōbīlis, ē.  
*Move*, mōvērē, mōv, mōt.  
*Move forward*, prēmōvērē, mōv, mōt.  
*Much*, multūs, ā, ūm; *much good*,  
 multūm bonī; *much time*, mul-  
 tūm temporīs.  
*Multitude*, multītūdō, īnis.  
*My*, meūs, ā, ūm.

## N.

*Name*, nōmēn, īnis.  
*Narrate*, narrārē, āv, āt.  
*Narration*, narrative, narrātiō, ōnis,  
 (521.)  
*Narrow pass*, angustiae, ārūm.  
*Nation*, nātiō, ōnis.  
*Native country*, patriā, ae.  
*Natural to man*, hūmānūs, ā, ūm.  
*Nature*, gēnūs, ēris.  
*Neurer*, prōpiōr, ūs.  
*Neither*, nec; *neither—nor*, nec—  
 nec.  
*Nest*, nidūs, ī.  
*Never*, nunquām.  
*Next*, nearest, proximūs, ā, ūm;  
*next following*, postērā, ūm (masc.  
 nom. not used).  
*Night*, nox, noctis.  
*Nightingale*, lusciniā, ae.  
*No*, *no one* (adj.), nullūs, ā, ūm  
 (113, R.).  
*No one*, nobody, (sub.), nēmō, (īnis).  
*Not*, nōn; *with imperat. or subj.*, nē;  
*not only—but also*, nōn solum—  
 sed etiām.  
*Not even*, nequidēm.  
*Not to know*, nescirē, iv, it.  
*Not yet*, nondūm.  
*Nothing*, nihil (indec.).  
*November*, Nōvembēr, brīs (abl. ī.).  
*Numa*, Nūmā, ae.  
*Number*, s., nūmērūs, ī.  
*Number*, v., nūmērārē, āv, āt.

## O.

## O.

*O if*, o sī.  
*Obey*, pārērē, u, it.  
*Observe*, servārē, āv, āt.  
*Obtain*, obtinērē, u, tent.

*Occasion*, occāsiō, ōnis.  
*Of himself*, suī.  
*Of yesterday*, hesternūs, ā, ūm.  
*Offend-against*, violārē, āv, āt.  
*Offer*, prābērē, u, it.  
*Often*, saepē.  
*Old age*, sēnectūs, ūtis.  
*Old man*, sēnex, sēnis.  
*On service*, militiae.  
*On this side*, cis.  
*One*, single one, ūnūs, ā, ūm (113 R.).  
*One is grieved at*, pigēt; *I am grieved*  
 at, mē pigēt.  
*One ought*, oportēt.  
*Only*, mōdō.  
*Open*, āpērērē, u, t.  
*Openly*, cōrām.  
*Opportunity*, occāsiō, ōnis.  
*Oppose*, obstārē, stit, stāt.  
*Or*, aut, vėl; *either—or*, vėl—vėl.  
*Or*, in double questions, ān.  
*Oration*, ōrātiō, ōnis.  
*Orator*, ōrātōr, ōris.  
*Order*, jūbērē, juss, juss.  
*Other*, āliūs, ā, ūd (113. R.).  
*Our*, nostēr, trā, trūm.  
*Overhang*, impendērē.  
*Overthrow*, ēvertērē, rt, rs.

## P.

*Pain*, dōlōr, ōris.  
*Pardon*, ignoscērē, nōv, nōt.  
*Parent*, pārens, entīs.  
*Part*, pars, tīs.  
*Pass over in silence*, tēcērē, u, it.  
*Passion*, cūpiditās, ātis.  
*Past*, praetērītūs, ā, ūm; *the past*,  
 praetērītā.  
*Pausanias*, Pausāniās, ae.  
*Peace*, pax, cis.  
*Peacock*, pāvō, ōnis.  
*People*, pōpūlūs, ī.  
*Perceive*, sentirē, s. s; perspicērē  
 (iō), spex, spect.  
*Perception*, sensūs, ūs.  
*Perfidy*, perfidiā, ae.  
*Personal*, prīvātūs, ā, ūm.  
*Persuade*, persuādērē, s. s.  
*Philosopher*, philōsōphūs, ī.  
*Physician*, mēdicūs, ī.  
*Pictu*, piētās, ātis.



*Pious*, piūs, ā, ūm,  
*Pity*, misērērī, īt.  
*Place*, s., lōcūs, ī (*pl.* ī, *or* ā.)  
*Place*, v., pōnērē, pūsu, pōsīt.  
*Plainly*, plānē.  
*Plausible*, spēcīōsūs, ā, ūm.  
*Play*, s., lūdūs, ī.  
*Play*, v., lūdērē, s. s.  
*Pleasant*, jūcundūs, ā, ūm.  
*Please*, plācērē, u, īt.  
*Pleasure*, vōluptās, ātis.  
*Plough*, ārārē, āv, āt.  
*Pluck*, carpērē, ps, pt.  
*Plunge into*, immergērē, rs, rs.  
*Poem*, poēmā, ātis.  
*Poet*, poētā, ae.  
*Poor man*, paupēr, črīs.  
*Popular*, pōpūlārīs, ē (528).  
*Possess*, possidērē, ēd, ess.  
*Practise*, cōlērē, u, cult; exercērē, u, īt.  
*Praise*, s., laus, dis.  
*Praise*, v., laudārē, āv, āt.  
*Precept*, praeceptūm, ī.  
*Prefer*, mallē, mālu.  
*Prepare*, pārārē, āv, āt; praepārārē.  
*Present (adj.)*, praesens, tis.  
*Present, to make a present*, dōuārē, āv, āt.  
*Preserve*, conservārē, āv, āt.  
*Pretence*, sīmūlatiō, ōnīs.  
*Prevent*, deterrērē, u, īt; obstārē, stīt, stāt.  
*Priest*, priestess, sācerdōs, ōtis.  
*Private*, privātūs, ā, ūm.  
*Prize*, aestimār, āv, āt; *prize highly*, māgnī aestimārē.  
*Procure*, compārārē, āv, āt.  
*Profit*, prōdessē, prōfu, prōfūt.  
*Promise*, prōmittērē, mīs, miss.  
*Provided*, dummōdō.  
*Province*, prōvincia, ae.  
*Prudence*, prūdentiā, ae.  
*Prudent*, prūdēns, tis; prōvīdūs, ā, ūm.  
*Pull down*, ēvertērē, t, s.  
*Punish*, pūnērē, īv, īt.  
*Pupil*, discipulūs, ī.  
*Purchase*, ēmērē, ēm, empt.  
*Put confidence in*, erēdērē, crēdīd, crēdīt.  
*Put to flight*, fūgārē, āv, āt, (540).

## Q.

*Quarrel*, concertārē, āv, āt.  
*Queen*, rēgīnā, ae.  
*Question*, quaestiō, ōnīs.  
*Quickly*, cēlērītēr.

## R.

*Rage*, saevīrē, īv, īt.  
*Raise*, compārārē, āv, āt.  
*Reach*, attingērē, tīg, tact; *per-* nīrē, vērē, vent.  
*Read*, lēgērē, lēg, lect.  
*Real*, vērūs, ā, ūm.  
*Reason*, rātiō, ōnīs.  
*Receive*, accipērē (iō), cēp, cept  
 rēcīpērē (iō); cāpērē (iō), cēp, capt.  
*Reform*, sārārē, āv, āt.  
*Refuge*, perfūgiūm, ī.  
*Regard*, pūtārē, āv, āt.  
*Reign*, rēgnārē, āv, āt.  
*Reject*, respuērē, pu.  
*Relate*, narrārē, āv, āt; rēferrē, tūl, lāt.  
*Relying on*, frētūs, ā, ūm.  
*Remain*, mārērē, mans, mans.  
*Remaining*, rēliquūs, ā, ūm.  
*Remember*, rēcōrdārī, āt.  
*Render thanks*, grātiās āgērē.  
*Repent, one repents*, poenītēt (135).  
*Report*, s., rūmōr, ōrīs.  
*Report*, nuntiārē, āv, āt.  
*Repress*, compescērē, cu.  
*Resist*, rēsistērē, stīt, stīt.  
*Response*, responsūm, ī.  
*Rest, the rest*, rēliquūs, ā, ūm.  
*Rest*, quiescērē, quīēv, quīēt.  
*Restrain*, continērē, u, tent; compescērē, cu.  
*Return*, rēdīrē, ī, īt; rēvertārē, t, s (551.)  
*Rhine*, Rhēnūs, ī.  
*Rich*, lōcuplēs, ētis.  
*Ring*, ānūlūs, ī.  
*Ripen*, cōquērē, cox, coct.  
*River*, flūmēn, īnīs.  
*Road*, viā, ae.  
*Rob of*, spōliārē, āv, āt.  
*Robust*, rōbustūs, ā, ūm.  
*Roman*, Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.  
*Rome* Rōmā, ae.

*Romulus*, Rōmūlūs, i.  
*Roof*, tectūm, i.  
*Round*, rōtundūs, ā, ūm.  
*Rule*, rēgērē, rex, rect.  
*Rumor*, rūmōr, ōris.  
*Run*, currērē, cūcurr, cura.  
*Rush*, ruērē, ru, rūt.

## S.

*Safe*, incōlūmīs, ē.  
*Safety*, sālūs, ūtis.  
*Same*, idēm, eādēm, idēm.  
*Satisfy*, sātīārē, āv, āt.  
*Save*, servārē, āv, āt.  
*Say*, dicērē, dix, dict.  
*Scatter*, spargērē, spars, spars.  
*Sceptre*, sceptrūm, i.  
*Scipio*, Scīpiō, onis.  
*Sea*, mārē, is.  
*Second*, sēcundūs, ā, ūm.  
*See*, vidērē, vid, vīs; conspīcērē (iō), spex, spect.  
*Seed*, sēmēn, inīs.  
*Seek*, pētērē, iv or i, it.  
*Seem*, vidērī, vīs.  
*Seize*, arripērē (iō), ipu, ept; dēprē-hendērē, hend, hens.  
*Self*, ipsē, ā, ūm.  
*Sell*, vendērē, dīd, dīt.  
*Senate*, sēnātūs, ūs, (517.)  
*Senator*, sēnātōr, ōris.  
*Send*, mittērē, mīs, miss.  
*Send before*, prae-mittērē, mīs, miss.  
*Sentiment*, sententiā, ae.  
*Separate*, disjūgērē, x, ct.  
*Serve*, servīrē, iv (i), it.  
*Servius*, Serviūs, i.  
*Set forth*, expōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt.  
*Set on fire*, incendērē, d, s.  
*Set out*, prōficiscī, fect.  
*Severe*, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē.  
*Sew*, stīch, suērē, su, sūt.  
*Shame*, pūdōr, ōris.  
*Sharp*, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē.  
*Shave*, tondērē, tōtōnd, tons.  
*Shear*, tōndērē, tōtōnd, tons.  
*Sheep*, ōvis, is.  
*Shepherd*, pastōr, ōris. (520.)  
*Shield*, clīpeūs, i.  
*Shine*, micārē, u; lūcērē, x.  
*Shining*, splēndens, tīs.

*Short*, brēvis, ē.  
*Shoulder*, hūmērūs, i.  
*Show*, monstrārē, āv, āt; dēmon-strārē, āv, āt.  
*Shrub*, frūtex, icīs, m.  
*Shun*, vitārē, āv, āt.  
*Shut*, claudērē, s, s.  
*Silver*, argentūm, i.  
*Simple*, simplex, icīs.  
*Sin*, peccārē, āv, āt.  
*Since*, cūm, quūm.  
*Sing*, cānērē, cēcīn, cant; cantārē, āv, āt.  
*Single*, single one, ūnūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).  
*Siren*, sīrēn, ēnīs.  
*Sister*, sōrōr, ōris.  
*Six*, sex.  
*Size*, māgnītūdō, inīs.  
*Skilful*, skilled in, pērītūs, ā, ūm.  
*Skin*, dēglūbērē, ps, pt.  
*Slave*, servūs, i.  
*Sleep*, s., somnūs, i.  
*Sleep*, dormīrē, iv, it.  
*Slow*, tardūs, ā, ūm.  
*Small*, parvūs, ā, ūm.  
*Smaller*, mīnōr, ūs.  
*Snake*, anguīs, is, m.  
*Snatch*, arripērē (iō), ipu, ept.  
*Snow*, nix, nīvis.  
*So*, sic, adeō, tām; so—as, tām—quām, sicūt.  
*So great*, tantūs, ā, ūm.  
*Socrates*, Sōcrātēs, is.  
*Soldier*, milēs, itīs.  
*Some*, āliquīs, quā, quīd (quōd); some time, āliquīd tempōris.  
*Some time*, some time or other, āli-quandō.  
*Sometimes*, intērīm.  
*Son*, filiūs, i.  
*Son-in-law*, gēnēr, i.  
*Sorrow*, dōlōr, ōris; luctūs, ūs.  
*Soul*, ānimūs, i.  
*Sound*, sōnūs, i.  
*Sow*, spargērē, rs, rs.  
*Space*, intervallūm, i.  
*Spare*, parcērē, pēperc (pars), parcīt (pars).  
*Speak*, lōquī, lōcūtūs.  
*Spear*, hastā, ae.  
*Specious*, spēciosūs, ā, ūm (550)

*Spin*, nērē, nēv, nēt.  
*Sport*, lūdūs, ī.  
*Spouse*, conjux, gīs.  
*Spring*, vēr, vērīs, n.  
*Sprinkle*, aspergērē, rs, rs.  
*Stability*, stābilitās, ātis  
*Stain*, mǎcūlārē, āv, āt.  
*Star*, stellā, ae.  
*State*, civitās, ātis.  
*Storm*, expūgnārē, āv, āt.  
*Stream*, flūmēn, inīs.  
*Strength*, vīs, vis (*pl.*, virēs).  
*Strive for*, stūdērē, u.  
*Strong*, rōbustūs, ā, ūm.  
*Studious*, stūdiōsūs, ā, ūm.  
*Study*, stūdērē, u.  
*Successive*, continuūs, ā, ūm  
*Succor*, succurrērē, rr, rs.  
*Sue for*, pētērē, īv (i), īt.  
*Sulla*, Sullā, ae.  
*Summer*, aestās, ātis.  
*Sun*, sōl, sōlis, m.  
*Supper*, coenā, ae.  
*Supplicate*, exōrārē, āv, āt.  
*Surface*, sūperficiēs, ēi.  
*Surpass*, sūpērārē, āv, āt.  
*Surrender*, dēdērē, dīd, dīt.  
*Surround*, circumdārē, dēd, dāt; cin-  
 gērē, x, et.  
*Sustain*, sustinērē, u, tent.  
*Swear*, jūrārē, āv, āt.  
*Swift*, vēlox, ōcis.  
*Swim*, nārē, āv, āt.  
*Sword*, glādiūs, ī.

## T.

*Take*, cāpērē (iō), cep, capt.  
*Take care*, cāvērē, cāv, caut.  
*Take care of*, cūrārē, āv, āt.  
*Take by storm*, expūgnārē, āv, āt  
 (550).  
*Talent*, ingēniūm, ī.  
*Tarentum*, Tārentūm, ī.  
*Tarquin*, Tarquiniūs, ī.  
*Teach*, docērē, u, doct.  
*Tear in pieces*, dilāniārē, āv, āt.  
*Ten*, dēcēm.  
*Tenth*, dēcimūs, ā, ūm.  
*Terms*, conditiō, ōnis.  
*Terrify*, terrērē, u, īt.  
*Than*, quān.  
*Thanks*, grātia, arēm.

*Thanksgiving*, supplicatiō, ōnis.  
*That* (*pron.*), illē, ā, ūd; is, eā, id  
 istē, ā, ūd.  
*That* (*conj.*), ūt, *with comp.* (469),  
 quō.  
*That not*, quōmīnūs, quīn.  
*The entire*, tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).  
*Theft*, furtūm, ī.  
*There*, ibī.  
*Therefore*, ergō, itāquē, ideo, igitār  
*Thing*, rēs, rei.  
*Think*, pūtārē, āv, āt; *think about*,  
 cōgītārē, āv, āt; *think little of*  
 parvī aestimārē, āv, āt.  
*Third*, tertius, ā, ūm.  
*Thirst*, sitirē, iv, īt.  
*This*, hīc, haec, hōc.  
*Thou, you*, tū, tui.  
*Thousand*, millē.  
*Threaten*, impendērē.  
*Three*, trēs, triā.  
*Through*, pēr.  
*Tibur*, Tibūr, ūris.  
*Till*, cōlērē, u, cult.  
*Time*, tempūs, ōris.  
*Timid*, timidūs, ā, ūm.  
*To*, ad, in (*with acc.*).  
*To death*, c pītīs.  
*Too much*, nimius, ā, ūm.  
*Top, the top*, summūs, ā, ūm; *agre-  
 ing with the noun, as*, summūs  
 mons, *the top of the mountain.*  
*Torture*, exercuciārē, āv, āt.  
*Touch*, tangērē, tētīg, tact.  
*Towards*, ergā (*with acc.*).  
*Tower*, arx, cis; turris, is (*acc.*, em  
 or im, *abl.* ē or ī).  
*Traitor*, prōditōr, ōris.  
*Tranquil*, tranquillūs, ā, ūm.  
*Treachery, treason*, prōditiō, ōnis.  
*Treaty*, foedūs, ēris.  
*Tree*, arbōr, ōris, f.  
*Trojan*, Trojānūs, ā, ūm.  
*True*, vērūs, ā, ūm.  
*Truly*, vērō.  
*Truth*, vērūm, ī.  
*Try*, tentārē, āv, āt.  
*Tullia*, Tulliā, ae.  
*Turn, convert*, convertērē, t, s  
*Turn back*, rēvertērē, t, s  
*Twelve*, duōdēcīm.  
*Twenty*, vigintī.

*Two*, duó, duae, duó.  
*Two hundred*, dúcenti, ae, á.  
*Two years, space of two years*, bien-  
 niúm.

## U.

*Uncertain*, incertús, á, úm (550).  
*Uncover*, ápērīrē, ru, rt.  
*Understand*, intelligērē, lex, lect.  
*Uninjured*, incólumīs, ē.  
*Unknown*, incōgnītús, á, úm.  
*Unlearned*, indoctús, á, úm.  
*Unnecessary*, sūpervacuús, á, úm.  
*Unwilling*, iuvītús, á, úm.  
*Unworthy*, indignús, á, úm.  
*Use*, v., ūti, ūs.  
*Useful*, ūtilis, ē.  
*Useless*, inútilis, ē.  
*Utility*, ūtilitās, ātis.

## V.

*Valuable*, prētiōsús, á, úm.  
*Value*, aestimārē, áv, át.  
*Very (before a noun or pronoun, sometimes)*, ipsē, á, úm.  
*Very fond*, stūdiōsús, a, um.  
*Very much or great*, plūrīmús, á,  
 úm; *very many*, plūrīmī.  
*Victim*, victimā, ae.  
*Victoria*, victōriā, ae (*prop. name*).  
*Victory*, victōriā, ae.  
*Violate*, violārē, áv, át; *rumpērē*,  
 rūp, rupt.  
*Virgin*, virgō, inīs.  
*Virtue*, virtūs, ūtis.  
*Voice*, vox, vōcis.

## W.

*Wage (as war)*, gērērē, gess, gest;  
 inferrē, tūl, lát.  
*Walk*, ambulārē, áv, át.  
*Wall*, mūrús, ī.  
*War*, bellúm, ī.  
*Warn*, admōnērē, u, ít.  
*Wash*, lāvārē, lāv, laut, and lāvāt.  
*Wasp*, crābrō, ōnīs.  
*Waste*, perdērē, dīd, dīt.  
*Watch*, vīgīlārē, áv, át.  
*Water*, aquā, ae.  
*Wax (as moon)*, crescērē, crēv, crēt.  
*Way*, viā, ae; itēr, itīnērīs, n.

*Wealthy*, lōcuplēs, ētis.  
*Weep*, flērē, ēv, ēt.  
*Weep for*, lūgērē, lux.  
*Well*, bēnē.  
*When*, quūm.  
*Whence*, undē.  
*Wherefore*, quārē.  
*Whether*, utrūm; *whether—or, in*  
*double questions*, utrūm—ān, *in*  
*other cases*, seu—seu; sīvē—sivē.  
*While*, dūm; *while walking*, intēr  
 ambulandūm.  
*White*, candidús, á, úm.  
*Who, which, that (rel.)*, quī, quae,  
 quōd.  
*Who, which, what? (interrog.)*, quīs,  
 quae, quid? (*subs.*); quī, quae,  
 quōd? (*adj.*).  
*Whole*, tōtús, á, úm (113, R.).  
*Wicked*, imprōbús, á, úm.  
*Wife*, conjux, gis.  
*Winter*, hiems, īs.  
*Wisdom*, sāpientiā, ae.  
*Wise*, sāpiens, tis.  
*Wish*, vellē, vōlu.  
*With*, cūm.  
*Within*, intrā (*with acc.*).  
*Without*, sīnē (*with abl.*).  
*Witness*, spectārē, áv, át (543).  
*Wolf*, lūpús, ī.  
*Woman*, mūliēr, īs.  
*Wonderful*, mirābilis, ē.  
*Wool*, lānā, ae.  
*Word*, verbúm, ī.  
*Work*, ōpūs, ēris.  
*World*, mundús, ī; orbis terrārūm.  
*Worthy*, dignús, á, úm.  
*Would that*, ūtinām, o sī.  
*Wound*, s., vulnūs, ēris.  
*Wound*, v., vulnērārē, áv, át.  
*Wretched*, mīser, á, úm.  
*Write*, scribērē, ps, pt.  
*Wrong*, v., violārē, áv, ēt.

## Y.

*Year*, annús, ī.  
*Yesterday*, hesternó diē.  
*Yet*, tāmēn.  
*You*, tū, tuī.  
*Your, thy, tuus*, ū, úm; *your, vestēr*,  
 trā, trūm.

## Arnold's Latin Course :

---

### I. FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

Revised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo, 359 pages.

### II. PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Re

vised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo, 356 pages.

### III. CORNELIUS NEPOS. With Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New Edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, &c. 12mo, 350 pages.

---

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them not as dead, but as living tongues; and by imitation and repetition, the means which nature herself points out to the child learning his mother tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put in the hands of the beginners, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synonymes are carefully illustrated, differences of idioms noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded toward attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

*From N. WHEELER, Principal of Worcester County High School.*

"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an *interest* in the study of the language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

*From A. B. RUSSELL, Oakland High School.*

"The style in which the books are got up are not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to beginners."

*From C. M. BLAKE, Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.*

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have just finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time before, but never *understood* it, they say, as they do now."

## Arnold's First Latin Book ;

Remodelled and Rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M. 12mo, 302 pages.

Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes. It has been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all the details of instruction. While it proceeds in common with Arnold on the principle of imitation and repetition, it pursues much more exactly and with a surer step the progressive method, and aims to make the pupil master of every individual subject before he proceeds to a new one, and of each subject by itself before it is combined with others ; so that he is brought gradually and surely to understand the most difficult combinations of the language. An important feature of this book is, that it carries along the Syntax *pari passu* with the Etymology, so that the student is not only all the while becoming familiar with the forms of the language, but is also learning to construct sentences and to understand the mutual relations of their component parts.

Special care has been taken in the exercises to present such idioms and expressions alone as are authorized by the best classic authors, so that the learner may acquire, by example as well as precept, a distinct idea of pure Latinity.

It has been a leading object with the author so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify the subject, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered at the outset in the study of an ancient language.

*From W. E. TOLMAN, Instructor in Providence High School.*

"I have used Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and find it to be a work not so much remodelled and rewritten as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

*From WM. RUSSELL, Editor of the First Series of the Boston Journal of Education.*

"The form which this work has taken under the skilful hand of Mr. H. is marked throughout by a method purely elementary, perfectly simple, gradually progressive, and rigorously exact. Pupils trained on such a manual cannot fail of becoming distinguished, in their subsequent progress, for precision and correctness of knowledge, and for rapid advancement in genuine scholarship."

*From GEORGE CAPEON, Principal of Worcester High School.*

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

*From J. R. BOISE, Professor of Ancient Languages in Michigan University.*

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence toward introducing it into the classical schools of this State."



## Second Latin Book ;

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

*From J. A. SPENCER, D.D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.*

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

*From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.*

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skilfully formed exercises with systematic instruction."

*From J. J. OWEN, D.D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.*

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.*

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

## HARKNESS'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

12mo, 355 pages.

Although this work has been published only a few weeks, it is recommended by and introduced into a large number of Colleges and Classical Schools, among which are the following:

BOWDOIN COLLEGE, Brunswick, Me.  
BATES' COLLEGE, Lewiston, Maine.  
LEWISTON FALLS ACADEMY, Auburn, Me.  
DOVER HIGH SCHOOL, Dover, N. H.  
DARTMOUTH COLLEGE.  
NORWICH UNIVERSITY, Norwich, Vt.  
GLENWOOD LADIES' SEMINARY, Brattleboro, Vt.  
AMHERST COLLEGE, Amherst, Mass.  
TUFTS COLLEGE, Medford, Mass.  
PHILLIPS' ACADEMY, Andover, Mass.  
STATE NORMAL SCHOOL, Framingham, Mass.  
HIGHLAND SCHOOL, Worcester, Mass.  
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, Mass.  
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Springfield, Mass.  
ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL, Roxbury, Mass.  
LAWRENCE ACADEMY, Groton, Mass.  
AUBURNDALE FEMALE SEMINARY, Auburndale, Mass.  
SPENCER ACADEMY, Spencer, Mass.  
JAMAICA PLAIN HIGH SCHOOL, Jamaica Plain, Mass.  
BROWN UNIVERSITY, Providence, R. I.  
UNIVERSITY GRAMMAR SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.  
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.  
FRIENDS' BOARDING SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.  
WARREN HIGH SCHOOL, Warren, R. I.  
PROVIDENCE CONFERENCE SEMINARY, East Greenwich, R. I.  
WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY, Middletown, Ct.  
FREE ACADEMY, Norwich, Ct.  
NEW LONDON ACADEMY, New London, Ct.  
YALE COLLEGE, New Haven, Ct.  
ROCHESTER UNIVERSITY, Rochester, N. Y.  
MADISON UNIVERSITY, Hamilton, N. Y.  
NEW YORK FREE ACADEMY, New York.  
CORTLAND ACADEMY, Homer, N. Y.  
OSWEGO HIGH SCHOOL, Oswego, N. Y.  
HAMILTON COLLEGE, Clinton, N. Y.  
HOBERT'S FREE COLLEGE, Geneva, N. Y.  
CANANDAIGUA ACADEMY, Canandaigua, N. Y.  
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, N. J.  
HAVERFORD COLLEGE, West Haverford, Pa.  
CLASSICAL AND MILITARY SCHOOL, Columbia, Pa.  
SHURTLEFF COLLEGE, Upper Alton, Ill.  
IOWA STATE UNIVERSITY, Iowa City, Iowa.  
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, Ann Arbor, Michigan.



## Germania and Agricola of Caius Cornelius Tacitus :

With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College. 12mo, 193 pages.

Tacitus's account of Germany and life of Agricola are among the most fascinating and instructive Latin classics. The present edition has been prepared expressly for college classes, by one who knows what they need. In it will be found: 1. A Latin text, approved by all the more recent editors. 2. A copious illustration of the grammatical constructions, as well as of the rhetorical and poetical usages peculiar to Tacitus. In a writer so concise it has been deemed necessary to pay particular regard to the connection of thought, and to the particles as the hinges of that connection. 3. Constant comparisons of the writer with the authors of the Augustan age, for the purpose of indicating the changes which had already been wrought in the language of the Roman people. 4. An embodiment in small compass of the most valuable labors of such recent German critics as Grimm, Günther, Gruber, Kiessling, Dronke, Roth, Ruperti, and Walther.

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"I have found the book in daily use with my class of very great service, very practical, and well suited to the wants of students. I am very much pleased with the Life of Tacitus and the Introduction, and indeed with the literary character of the book throughout. We shall make the book a part of our Latin course."

## The History of Tacitus

By W. S. TYLER. With Notes for Colleges. 12mo, 453 pages.

The text of Tacitus is here presented in a form as correct as a comparison of the best editions can make it. Notes are appended for the student's use, which contain not only the grammatical, but likewise all the geographical, archaeological, and historical illustrations that are necessary to render the author intelligible. It has been the constant aim of the editor to carry students beyond the dry details of grammar and lexicography, and introduce them to a familiar acquaintance and lively sympathy with the author and his times. Indexes to the notes, and to the names of persons and places, render reference easy.

*From PROF. HACKETT, of Newton Theological Seminary.*

"The notes appear to me to be even more neat and elegant than those on the 'Germania and Agricola.' They come as near to such notes as I would be glad to write myself on a classic, as almost any thing that I have yet seen."

## The Works of Horace.

With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo, 575 pages.

The text of this edition is mainly that of Orelli, the most important readings of other critics being given in foot-notes. The volume is introduced with a biographical sketch of Horace and a critique on his writings, which enable the student to enter intelligently on his work. Peculiar grammatical constructions, as well as geographical and historical allusions, are explained in notes, which are just full enough to aid the pupil, to excite him to gain a thorough understanding of the author, and awaken in him a taste for philological studies, without taking all labor off his hands. While the chief aim has been to impart a clear idea of Latin Syntax as exhibited in the text, it has also been a cherished object to take advantage of the means so variously and richly furnished by Horace for promoting the poetical taste and literary culture of the student.

*From an article by PROF. BAHR, of the University of Heidelberg, in the Heidelberg Annals of Literature.*

"There are already several American editions of Horace, intended for the use of schools; of one of these, which has passed through many editions, and has also been widely circulated in England, mention has been formerly made in this journal; but that one we may not put upon an equality with the one now before us, inasmuch as this has taken a different standpoint, which may serve as a sign of progress in this department of study. The editor has, it is true, also intended his work for the use of schools, and has sought to adapt it, in all its parts, to such a use; but still, without losing sight of this purpose, he has proceeded throughout with more independence. In the preparation of the Notes, the editor has faithfully observed the principles (laid down in his preface); the explanations of the poet's words commend themselves by a compressed brevity which limits itself to what is most essential, and by a sharp precision of expression; and references to other passages of the poet, and also to grammars, dictionaries, &c., are not wanting."

## Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.

With Notes and a Vocabulary. By NOBLE BUTLER and MINARD STURGIS. 12mo, 397 pages.

The editors have spent a vast amount of time and labor in correcting the text, by a comparison of the most improved German and English editions. It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition hitherto published in this country. In accordance with their chronological order, the "Jugurtha" precedes the "Catiline." The Notes are copious and tersely expressed; they display not only fine scholarship, but (what is quite as necessary in such a book) a practical knowledge of the difficulties which the student encounters in reading this author, and the aids that he requires. The Vocabulary was prepared by the late WILLIAM H. G. BUTLER. It will be found an able and faithful performance.

## Arnold's Greek Course.

Revised, Corrected, and Improved, by the Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D.D.,  
late Professor of Latin and Oriental Languages in Burlington Col-  
lege, N. J.

FIRST GREEK BOOK, on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo, 254 pages.

PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. 12mo,  
237 pages.

SECOND PART TO THE ABOVE. 12mo, 243 pages.

GREEK READING BOOK. Containing the substance of the Practical Introduction  
to Greek Construing, and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious selec-  
tions from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a  
Lexicon. 12mo, 618 pages.

A complete, thorough, practical and easy Greek course is here presented. The  
beginner commences with the "First Book," in which the elementary principles of  
the language are unfolded, not in abstract language, difficult both to comprehend and  
to remember, but as practically applied in sentences. Throughout the whole, the  
pupil sees just where he stands, and is taught to use and apply what he learns. His  
progress is, therefore, as rapid as it is intelligent and pleasant. There is no unneces-  
sary verbiage, nor is the pupil's attention diverted from what is really important by  
a mass of minor details. It is the experience of teachers who use this book, that with  
a given amount of Greek Grammar can be imparted to a pupil in a shorter time and  
with far less trouble than with any other text-book.

The "First Book" may with advantage be followed by the "Introduction to  
Greek Prose Composition." The object of this work is to enable the student, as soon  
as he can decline and conjugate with tolerable facility, to translate simple sentences  
after given examples and with given words; the principles employed being those of  
imitation and very frequent repetition. It is at once a Syntax, a Vocabulary, and an  
Exercise book. The "Second Part" carries the subject further, unfolding the most  
complicated constructions, and the nicest points of Latin Syntax. A Key is provided  
for the teacher's use.

The "Reader," besides extracts judiciously selected from the Greek classics, contains  
valuable instructions to guide the learner in translating and construing, and a complete  
exposition of the particles, their signification and government. It is a fitting sequel to  
the earlier parts of the course, everywhere showing the hand of an acute critic, an  
accomplished scholar, and an experienced teacher.

*From the REV. DR. COLEMAN, Professor of Greek and Latin, Princeton, N. J.*

"I can, from the most satisfactory experience, bear testimony to the excellence of  
your series of Text-Books for Schools. I am in the daily use of Arnold's Latin and  
Greek Exercises, and consider them decidedly superior to any other Elementary Works  
in those Languages."

## Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar

By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo, 208 pages.

In compiling this Grammar, Professor Champlin has drawn upon the best critics and grammarians, and with the results of his research has interwoven much original matter suggested during several years' experience in teaching, and editing Greek authors. His design is to exhibit the essential facts and principles of the language in the clearest, briefest, and most practicable form possible. With this view, all theories and complications belonging to general grammar have been avoided, and only their results used. The amplification and illustration of principles have been carried only so far as is necessary to their comprehension. In this way all the real wants of the Greek student are met, while his attention is not distracted by unnecessary and embarrassing details. Materials for oral exercises are supplied, and a sketch of Greek versification is given in an appendix.

*From the REV. MR. ANDERSON, New Orleans.*

"I believe the author has fully accomplished what he proposes in his preface. To those wishing to study Greek, I am satisfied he has presented a book which will much tend to simplify the study to beginners; and at the same time, without being too voluminous, presents as lucid and full an exposition of the principles of the language as can be contained within so small a compass."

## Kühner's Greek Grammar :

Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo, 620 pages.

Kühner's is universally acknowledged to be the most accurate, comprehensive, clear, and practical grammar of the Greek language now extant. It is the work of one who devoted his life to Greek philology, and spent years of patient labor in perfecting this work. Too full and learned for the beginner, it is just what is needed for the college curriculum, containing all that a book of reference should contain. The student will never appeal to its pages in vain. In fulness of illustration, copiousness of reference, and philosophical analysis of the various forms of language, it is unsurpassed, we might say unequalled.

The present translation is made by two distinguished American scholars, who have revised the whole, verified the references, and appended an original treatise of their own on Greek versification. As now presented to the public, it is believed to be as perfect a grammar of the Greek language as enlightened research and profound scholarship can produce.

## Greek Ollendorff ;

Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar.

By ASAHIEL C. KENDRICK, Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in the University of Rochester. 12mo, 371 pages.

The present work is what its title indicates, strictly an *Ollendorff*, and aims to apply the methods which have proved so successful in the acquisition of the modern languages to the study of Ancient Greek, with such differences as the different genius of the Greek, and the different purposes for which it is studied, suggest. It differs from the modern Ollendorffs in containing Exercises for reciprocal translation, in confining them within a smaller compass, and in a more methodical exposition of the principles of language.

The leading object of the author was to furnish a book which should serve as an *introduction* to the study of Greek, and precede the use of any grammar. It will therefore be found, although not claiming to embrace all the principles of the Grammar, yet complete in itself, and will lead the pupil, by insensible gradations, from the simpler constructions to those which are more complicated and difficult. The exceptions, and the more idiomatic forms, it studiously avoids, aiming only to exhibit the regular and ordinary usages of the language as the proper starting-point for the student's further researches.

In presenting these, the author has aimed to combine the strictest accuracy with the utmost simplicity of statement. His work is therefore adapted to a younger class of pupils than have usually engaged in the study of Greek, and will, it is hoped, win to the acquisition of that noble tongue many in our academies and primary schools who have been repelled by the less simple character of our ordinary text-books.

## Exercises in Greek Composition.

Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R.

BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo, 185 pages.

These Exercises consist of easy sentences, similar to those in the Anabasis, having the same words and constructions, and are designed by frequent repetition to make the learner familiar with the language of Xenophon. Accordingly, the chapters and sections in both are made to correspond. No exercises can be more improving than those in this volume; obliging the student as they do, by analysis and synthesis, to master the constructions employed by one of the purest of Greek writers, and imbuing him with the spirit of one of the greatest historians of all antiquity.

## Xenophon's Anabasis :

With EXPLANATORY Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges in the United States. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo, 393 pages.

A handsome and convenient edition of this great classic, really adapted to the wants of schools, has long been needed; the want is here met by Professor Boise in a manner that leaves nothing to be desired. Decidedly the best German editions, whether text or commentary be considered, have appeared within the last few years; and of these Mr. Boise has made free use; while, at the same time, he has not lost sight of the fact that the classical schools of this country are behind those of Germany, and that simpler and more elementary explanations are therefore often necessary in a work prepared for American schools. Nothing has been put in the notes for the sake of a mere display of learning—pedantry is out of place in a school-book; and nothing has been introduced by way of comment except what can be turned to practical use by the reader.

An historical Introduction, which will enable the pupil to enter on his task intelligently, is prefixed. An abundance of geographical information, embodying the latest discoveries of travellers, is supplied; and the whole is illustrated with Kiepert's excellent map, showing the entire route of the ten thousand on their retreat.

## The First Three Books of Anabasis :

With Explanatory Notes and References to Hadley and Kühner's Greek Grammars, and to Goodwin's Greek Moods and Tenses. A copious Greek-English Vocabulary, and Kiepert's Map of the Route of the Ten Thousand. 12mo, 268 pages.

## Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates :

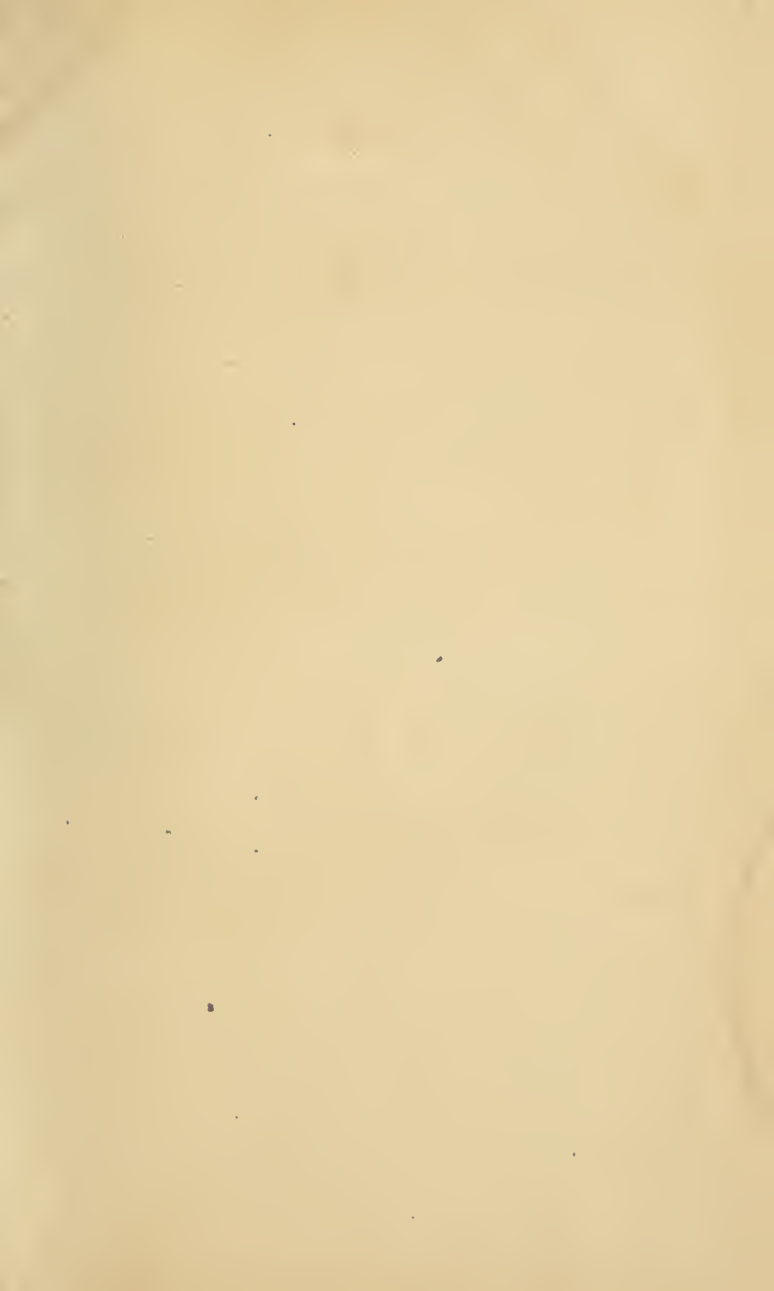
With Notes and an Introduction. By R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Languages in Middlesex College, Vermont. 12mo, 421 pages.

This will be found an exceedingly useful book for College classes. The text is large and distinct, the typography accurate, and the notes judicious and scholarly. Instead of referring the student to a variety of books, few of which are within his reach, the editor has wisely supplied whatever is necessary. An admirably treatise on the Life of Socrates introduces the work, and English and Greek Indexes render it easy to refer to the text and notes.









## Standard Classical Works.

**Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.\*** 12mo. 257 pages.

**Arnold's Second Part to the above.\*** 12mo. 248 pages.

**Arnold's Greek Reading Book.** Containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, Copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Dr. Arnold's Greek Courses have been carefully revised, corrected, and improved by J. A. SPENCER, D. D., making them a thorough, practical, and easy Greek course.

**Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition.**

Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar.** By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 205 pages.

**First Lessons in Greek;\*** or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

**Hadley's Greek Grammar,\*** for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

**Herodotus, Selections from;** Comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON D. D., Professor of Philosophy and English Literature in Dickinson College. 12mo. 155 pages.

**Homer's Iliad,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL.D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 740 pages.

**Homer's Odyssey,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

**Kuhner's Greek Grammar.** Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

**Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.\*** Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Professor of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.

**Owen's Greek Reader:** Containing selections from various authors. Adapted to Scribner's and Kuhner's Grammars. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN. New and Revised Edition. With Map. 1 mo.

## Standard Classical Works

- Plato's Apology and Crito.\*** With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pages.
- Thucydides' History of the Peloponnesian War,** according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.
- Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates.** With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.
- Xenophon's Anabasis.** With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 398 pages.
- Xenophon's Anabasis.** Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.
- Xenophon's Cyropædia,** according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.
- Sophocles' Œdipus Tyrannus.** With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 188 pages.

## Hebrew and Syriac.

- Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar.** Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. Svo. 361 pages.
- Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar.** Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Crestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. Svo. 367 pages.



D. APPLETON & CO.,

413 & 445 BROADWAY, N. Y.,

PUBLISH UPWARD OF

200 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

Descriptive Catalogue

*Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.*

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus\*, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any *Teacher* remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.

